MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 44

The Origin and Deeds of the Goths

Jordanes · Isidore of Seville

De Origine Actibusque Getarum
De Summa Temporum
Historia de Regibus Gothorum

The Origin and Deeds of the Goths

Jordanes' Getica and Romana, with Isidore's History of the Goths, Vandals, and Suevi

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

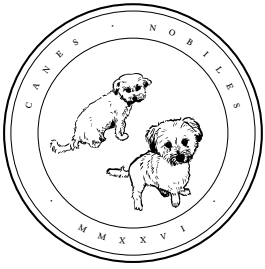


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 44 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Theodor Mommsen's edition of Jordanes (Berlin, 1882) and Faustino Arévalo's of Isidore as Migne reprinted it (Paris, 1850)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

JORDANES · DE ORIGINE ACTIBUSQUE GETARUM

Preface · To Castalius 11
I · The Ocean and Its Islands 13
II · Britain 16
III · Scandza 19
IV · From Scandza to Scythia 24
V · The Lands of Scythia 27
VI · Tanausis Defeats Vesosis 35
VII · The Amazons 37
VIII · The Amazons' Customs 41
IX · Telefus and Eurypylus 42
X · Cyrus, Darius, Xerxes, and Philip 45
XI · Dicineus 49
XII · Comosicus, Coryllus, and the Danube 52
XIII · The Ansis 54
XIV · The Genealogy of the Amals 56
XV · Maximinus the Thracian 58
XVI · Ostrogotha and Marcianople 62
XVII · The Gepids 65
XVIII · Cniva and the Death of Decius 69

JORDANES · DE ORIGINE ACTIBUSQUE GETARUM

(continued)

XIX · Gallus, Volusianus, and Aemilianus 71
XX · Raids in Asia and Thrace 73
XXI · Allies of Rome 75
XXII · Geberich Defeats the Vandals 77
XXIII · Hermanaric 79
XXIV · The Coming of the Huns 81
XXV · The Visigoths Become Arians 86
XXVI · Adrianople 88
XXVII · Theodosius and Gratian 91
XXVIII · Athanaric in Constantinople 93
XXIX · Alaric and Ravenna 95
XXX · Alaric Takes Rome 98
XXXI · Athaulf 102
XXXII · Wallia 104
XXXIII · Gaiseric and the Vandal Kings 107
XXXIV · Theodorid and Attila 112
XXXV · Attila 114
XXXVI · The Gathering for the Catalaunian Plains 117
XXXVII · Sangiban and the Omens 122
XXXVIII · The Battle Lines 124
XXXIX · Attila's Speech 127
XL · The Battle 129
XLI · Thorismund Withdraws 133
XLII · Aquileia and Pope Leo 136
XLIII · Attila Defeated by Thorismund 139
XLIV · Theodoric Defeats the Suevi 142
XLV · Euric and the Fall of the West 145
XLVI · Odoacer 149

JORDANES · DE ORIGINE ACTIBUSQUE GETARUM

(continued)

XLVII · Euric and Alaric II 151
XLVIII · The Ostrogoths Under the Huns 152
XLIX · The Death of Attila 157
L · The Battle of the Nedao 161
LI · The Lesser Goths 166
LII · The Birth of Theodoric 167
LIII · Wars with the Huns, Suevi, and Sciri 170
LIV · The Bolia 173
LV · Theodoric Returns 175
LVI · The Goths Divide 177
LVII · Theodoric Takes Italy 180
LVIII · Theodoric's Alliances 185
LIX · Athalaric and Amalasuntha 188
LX · Vitiges and the End of the Amals 190

JORDANES · DE SUMMA TEMPORUM

1–7 · Preface to Vigilius 199
8–38 · From Adam to the Assyrian Kings 203
39–57 · The Fall of Assyria and the Medes 211
58–84 · The Persians, Alexander, and the Ptolemies 218
85–94 · Augustus, Christ, and Romulus 223
95–107 · The Kings of Rome 228
108–123 · The First Consuls 235
124–137 · Latins, Volsci, Veii, and the Gauls 241
138–149 · The Samnite Wars 246
150–162 · Pyrrhus and Tarentum 251
163–176 · The First Punic War 257

JORDANES · DE SUMMA TEMPORUM

(continued)

177–187 · Ligurians, Gauls, Illyrians, and Hannibal 264
188–199 · Cannae and the Recovery 270
200–211 · Scipio, Macedon, and Numidia 277
212–226 · Spain, the Balkans, and Asia Minor 283
227–240 · Antiochus, Pompey, and the Parthians 290
241–256 · Augustus' Wars and Cleopatra 296
257–273 · Tiberius to Commodus 302
274–295 · Pertinax to Carinus 309
296–312 · Diocletian to Valens 317
313–330 · The Huns, Adrianople, and Theodosius 323
331–345 · Attila, Marcian, Leo, and Zeno 331
346–359 · Theodoric, Zeno, and Anastasius 336
360–373 · Justin, Justinian, and the Vandal War 343
374–388 · The Gothic War and the End 350

ISIDORE OF SEVILLE · HISTORIA DE REGIBUS GOTHORUM

Prologue · In Praise of Spain 361
1–8 · Origins to Ulfilas 364
9–18 · Valens, Alaric, and the Sack of Rome 369
19–29 · Athaulf to Attila 376
30–43 · Thorismund to Theudis 383
44–51 · Theudisclus to Leovigild 392
52–56 · Reccared 397
57–65 · Liuva to Suinthila 400
Recapitulation · In Praise of the Goths 406
The Vandals 410
The Suevi 418

JORDANES

De Origine Actibusque Getarum

The Origin and Deeds of the Goths

Praefatio

PREFACE · TO CASTALIUS

Jordanes writes that Castalius has called him from his chronicle to condense the twelve books of Senator on the origin and deeds of the Getae. He has had the books only for a three days' reading, recalls their sense rather than their words, and has added from Greek and Latin histories.

Volentem me parvo subvectum navigio oram tranquilli
wishing me in-a-small carried boat the-shore of-a-tranquil
litoris stringere et minutos de priscorum, ut quidam ait,
coast to-skirt and small from of-the-ancients as a-certain-one says
stagnis pisciculos legere, in altum, frater Castali, laxari
pools little-fish to-gather into the-deep O-brother Castalius to-be-loosened
vela compellis relictoque opusculo, quod intra manus habeo,
the-sails you-compel and-left the-little-work which within my-hands I-have
id est, de adbreviatione chronicorum, suades, ut nostris
that is about the-abridgment of-the-chronicles you-urge that in-our
verbis duodecem Senatoris volumina de origine actusque
words the-twelve of-Senator volumes about the-origin and-deeds
Getarum ab olim et usque nunc per generationes regesque
of-the-Getae from of-old and up-to now through generations and-kings
descendentem in uno et hoc parvo libello choartem: dura
descending into one and this small little-book I-should-compress hard
satis imperia et tamquam ab eo, qui pondus operis huius
enough commands and as-if by him who the-weight of-work this
scire nollit, inposita. nec illud aspicis, quod tenuis mihi
to-know should-not-wish imposed nor that do-you-see that slender to-me
est spiritus ad inplendam eius tam magnificam dicendi tubam:
is the-breath for filling his so magnificent of-speaking trumpet
super omne autem pondus, quod nec facultas eorundem
above all moreover the-weight that not the-opportunity of-the-same

librorum nobis datur, quatenus eius sensui inserviamus, sed,
books to-us is-given so-that his sense we-may-serve but
ut non mentiar, ad triduanam lectionem dispensatoris eius
that not I-may-lie for a-three-day reading of-the-steward his
beneficio libros ipsos antehac relegi. quorum quamvis
by-the-kindness the-books themselves formerly I-have-reread of-which although
verba non recolo, sensus tamen et res actas credo me
the-words not I-recall the-sense yet and the-deeds done I-believe myself
integre retinere. ad quos et ex nonnullis historiis Grecis ac
wholly to-retain to which also from some histories Greek and
Latinis addedi convenientia, initium finemque et plura
Latin I-have-added fitting-things the-beginning and-the-end and many-things
in medio mea dictione permiscens. quare sine contumelia
in the-middle with-my diction mixing therefore without reproach
quod exigisti suscipe libens, libentissime lege; et si quid
what you-have-demanded receive gladly most-gladly read and if anything
parum dictum est et tu, ut vicinus genti, commemoras,
too-little said is and you as a-neighbor to-the-nation recall
adde, orans pro me, frater carissime. Dominus tecum. Amen.
add praying for me O-brother dearest the-Lord with-you Amen

Caput I

I · THE OCEAN AND ITS ISLANDS

Following Orosius, Jordanes divides the world into Asia, Europe, and Africa, ringed by an impassable Ocean. He names its islands to the east and west, from Taprobane to the Fortunate Isles, the Orkneys, and Thule, and in the north Scandza, from which the Goths came like a swarm of bees.

Maiores nostri, ut refert Orosius, totius terrae circulum
the-ancestors our as relates Orosius of-the-whole of-the-earth the-circle
Oceani limbo circumseptum triquadrum statuerunt
of-the-Ocean by-the-border surrounded three-fold determined
eiusque tres partes Asiam, Eoropam et Africam vocaverunt.
and-its three parts Asia Europe and Africa called
de quo trepertito orbis terrarum spatium innumerabiles
about this tripartite of-the-world of-the-lands extent innumerable
pene scriptores existunt, qui non solum urbium locorumve
almost writers exist who not only of-cities or-of-places
positiones explanant, verum etiam et quod est liquidius,
the-positions explain but also and what is clearer
passuum miliariumque dimetiunt quantitatem, insulas quoque
of-paces and-of-miles they-measure the-quantity the-islands also
marinis fluctibus intermixtas, tam maiores quam etiam
by-the-sea waves interspersed as-well greater as also
minores, quas Cycladas vel Sporadas cognominant, in
lesser which Cyclades or Sporades they-name in
inmenso maris magni pelagu sitas determinant. Oceani
the-immense of-the-sea great expanse placed they-define of-the-Ocean
vero intransmeabiles ulteriores fines non solum describere
indeed the-impassable farther boundaries not only to-describe
quis adgressus est, verum etiam nec cuiquam licuit
anyone attempted has but also nor to-anyone was-it-permitted

transfretare, quia resistente ulva et ventorum spiramine
to-cross because resisting the-sedge and of-the-winds the-breath
quiescente inpermeabilis esse sentitur et nulli cognita nisi
resting impassable to-be it-is-felt and to-none known except
ei qui eam constituit. ceterior vero eius pelagi ripa,
to-him who it established the-hither indeed of-that sea the-shore
quam diximus totius mundi circulum, in modum coronae
which we-have-said of-the-whole world the-circle in the-manner of-a-crown
ambiens fines suos, curiosis hominibus et qui de hac
encircling the-boundaries its to-curious men and who about this
re scribere voluerunt perquaquam innotuit, quia et
matter to-write have-wished everywhere has-become-known because both
terrae circulum ab incolis possidetur et nonnullae insule in
of-the-earth the-circle by inhabitants is-possessed and some islands in
eodem mare habitabiles sunt, ut in orientali plaga et Indico
the-same sea habitable are as in the-eastern region and the-Indian
Oceano Hyppodem, Iamnesiam, Solis perustam quamvis
Ocean Hippodes Iamnesia of-the-Sun burnt although
inhabitabilem, tamen omnino sui spatio in longo latoque
uninhabitable yet altogether by-its extent in length and-breadth
extensam: Taprobanem quoque, in qua (excepto oppida vel
stretched Taprobane also in which besides towns or
possessiones) decem munitissimas urbes decoram: sed et aliam
estates ten most-fortified cities beautiful but also another
omnino gratissimam Silefantinam: nec non et Theron, licet
altogether most-pleasing Silefantina nor not also Theron though
non ab aliquo scriptore dilucidas, tamen suis possessoribus
not by any writer made-clear yet by-their possessors
affatim refertas. habet in parte occidua idem Oceanus
abundantly filled it-has in the-part western the-same Ocean
aliquantas insulas et pene cunctis ob frequentiam euntium
some islands and almost to-all for the-frequency of-those-going

et redeuntium notas. et sunt iuxta fretum Gaditanum haut
and returning known and they-are near the-strait of-Gades not
procul una Beata et alia quae dicitur Fortunata. quamvis
far one the-Blessed and another which is-called the-Fortunate although
nonnulli et illa gemina Galliciae et Lysitaniae promuntoria
some also those twin of-Gallicia and of-Lusitania promontories
in Oceani insulas ponant, in quarum una templum
among of-the-Ocean the-islands place in of-which one the-temple
Herculis, in alia monumentum adhuc conspicitur Scipiones,
of-Hercules in the-other the-monument still is-seen of-Scipio
tamen, quia extremitatem Galiciae terrae continent, ad
yet because the-extremity of-the-Gallician land they-contain to
terram magnam Europae potius quam ad Oceani pertinent
the-land great of-Europe rather than to of-the-Ocean they-belong
insulas. habet tamen et alias insulas interius in suo estu,
the-islands it-has yet also other islands farther-in in its surge
quae dicuntur Baleares, habetque et alia Mevania, nec non
which are-called the-Balearic and-it-has also another Mevania nor not
Orcadas numero xxxiii quamvis non omnes excultas. habet
the-Orkneys in-number thirty-three although not all cultivated it-has
et in ultimo plagae occidentalis aliam insulam nomine
also in the-farthest of-the-region western another island by-name
Thyle, de qua Mantuanus inter alia: ‘tibi serviat ultima
Thule about which the-Mantuan among other-things to-you may-serve farthest
Thyle’. habet quoque is ipse inmensus pelagus in parte artoa,
Thule it-has also it itself immense sea in the-part arctic
id est septentrionali, amplam insulam nomine Scandzam,
that is northern a-large island by-name Scandza
unde nobis sermo, si dominus iubaverit, est adsumpturus,
whence for-us speech if the-Lord shall-have-helped is about-to-take-up
quia gens, cuius originem flagitas, ab huius insulae
because the-nation whose origin you-demand from of-this island

gremio velut examen apium erumpens in terram Europae
the-bosom as a-swarm of-bees bursting-out into the-land of-Europe
advinit: quomodo vero aut qualiter, in subsequentibus, si
arrived how indeed or in-what-way in the-following if
dominus donaverit, explanavimus.
the-Lord shall-have-granted we-shall-explain

Caput II

II · BRITAIN

Jordanes describes Britain from Greek and Latin writers: its triangular shape and size, its sluggish sea, its mists, metals, and pastures. He notes the dark curly-haired Silures and the red-haired Caledonians, their wattled huts shared with cattle, their painted bodies, and their scythed chariots.

Nunc autem de Brittania insula, que in sino Oceani inter
now moreover about Britain the-island which in the-bay of-the-Ocean between
Spanias, Gallias et Germaniam sita est, ut potuero,
the-Spains the-Gauls and Germany placed is as I-shall-have-been-able
paucis absolvam. cuius licet magnitudine olim nemo, ut
in-few-words I-shall-finish of-which although in-its-greatness once no-one as
refert Libius, circumvectus est, multis tamen data est varia
relates Livy sailed-around has to-many yet given is varied
opinio de ea loquendi. quae diu si quidem armis inaccensam
an-opinion about it of-speaking which long if indeed by-arms unapproached
Romanis Iulius Caesar proeliis ad gloriam tantum quesitis
by-the-Romans Julius Caesar in-battles for glory only sought
aperuit: pervia deinceps mercimoniis aliasque ob causas multis
opened passable thereafter by-trade and-other for reasons to-many
facta mortalibus non indiligenti, quae secuta est, aetati
made mortals not careless which followed has to-the-age

certius sui prodidit situm, quem, ut a Grecis Latinisque
more-surely its disclosed position which as from the-Greek and-Latin
autoribus accepimus, persequimur. triquadram eam plures
authors we-have-received we-pursue three-cornered it many
dixere consimilem, inter septentrionalem occidentalemque
have-said like between the-northern and-western
plagam proiectam, uno, qui magnus est, angulo Reni
region projected with-one which great is angle of-the-Rhine
hostia spectantem, dehinc correptam latitudine oblique retro
the-mouths facing thereafter contracted in-breadth obliquely back
abstractam in duos exire alios, geminoque latere longiorem
drawn into two to-go-out other-angles and-with-twin side longer
Galliae praetendi atque Germaniae. in duobus milibus
to-Gaul to-stretch-before and to-Germany in two thousand
trecentis decem stadiis latitudo eius ubi patentior, longitudo
three-hundred ten stadia the-breadth its where more-open the-length
non ultra septem mil. centum triginta duo stadia fertur
not beyond seven thousand one-hundred thirty two stadia is-said
extendi; modo vero dumosa, modo silvestrae iacere planitiae,
to-extend now indeed thorny now woody to-lie plains
montibus etiam nonnullis increscere: mari tardo circumfluam,
with-mountains also some to-rise by-a-sea sluggish surrounded
quod nec remis facile inpellentibus cedat, nec ventorum
which neither to-oars easily driving yields nor of-the-winds
flatibus intumescat, credo, quia remotae longius terrae causas
by-blasts swells I-believe because removed farther the-lands the-causes
motibus negant: quippe illic latius quam usquam aequor
to-motions deny for there more-widely than anywhere the-sea
extenditur. refert autem Strabo Grecorum nobilis scriptor
is-extended relates moreover Strabo of-the-Greeks noble writer
tantas illam exalare nebulas, madefacta humo Oceani
so-great it to-exhale mists moistened the-ground of-the-Ocean

crebris excursibus, ut subtectus sol per illum pene totum
frequent by-incursions that covered the-sun through that almost whole
fediorem, qui serenus est, diem negetur aspectui. noctem
fouler which serene is the-day is-denied to-view the-night
quoque clariorem in extrema eius parte minimamque Cornelius
also brighter in the-farthest its part and-very-short Cornelius
etiam annalium scriptor enarrat, metallis plurimis cupiosam,
also of-the-annals the-writer recounts with-metals many abundant
herbis frequentem et his feraciorem omnibus, que pecora
with-herbs crowded and in-these more-fertile all which cattle
magis quam homines alant: labi vero per eam multa
rather than men nourish to-glide indeed through it many
quam maximae relabique flumina gemmas margaritasque
as greatest-possible and-to-flow-back rivers gems and-pearls
volventia. Silorum colorati vultus; torti pleroque crine et
rolling of-the-Silures colored the-faces curled mostly with-hair and
nigro nascuntur; Calydoniam vero incolentibus rutilae cumae,
black they-are-born Caledonia but for-those-inhabiting red the-hair
corpora magna, sed fluuida: Gallis sive Spanis, ut
the-bodies great but flabby to-the-Gauls or to-the-Spaniards as
quibusque obtenduntur, adsimiles. unde coniectavere nonnulli,
to-each they-are-opposite like whence conjectured some
quod ea ex his accolas contiguo vocatos acceperit.
that it from these inhabitants from-the-neighbors called received
inculti aeque omnes populi regesque populorum; cunctos
uncultivated alike all the-peoples and-kings of-the-peoples all
tamen in Calydoniorum Meatarumque concessisse nomina
yet into of-the-Caledonians and-of-the-Maeatae to-have-yielded the-names
Dio auctor est celeberrimus scriptor annalium. virgeas
Dio the-author is the-most-famous writer of-annals of-wattle
habitant casas, communia tecta cum pecore, silveque illis
they-inhabit huts common roofs with the-cattle and-woods for-them

saepe sunt domus. ob decorem nescio an aliam quam ob
often are home for ornament I-know-not or another than for
rem ferro pingunt corpora. bellum inter se aut imperii
reason with-iron they-paint their-bodies war among themselves either of-power
cupidine, aut amplificandi quae possident, saepius gerunt,
from-desire or of-enlarging what they-possess more-often they-wage
non tantum equitatu vel pedite, verum etiam bigis
not only with-cavalry or infantry but also with-two-horse-chariots
curribusque falcatis, quos more vulgare essedas vocant.
and-chariots scythed which in-manner common essedae they-call
haec pauca de Brittaniae insulae forma dixisse sufficiat.
these few-things about of-Britain the-island the-shape to-have-said may-suffice

Caput III

III · SCANDZA

Citing Ptolemy and Mela, Jordanes places Scandza in the northern Ocean opposite the Vistula. He describes its cold, its forty days of summer light and winter dark, and lists its peoples, from the Screrefennae who live on game and eggs to the Dani, sprung from the tall Suetidi, who drove out the Heruli.

Ad Scandziae insulae situm, quod superius reliquimus,
to of-Scandza the-island the-position which above we-left
redeamus. de hac etenim in secundo sui operis libro
let-us-return about this for in the-second of-his work book
Claudius Ptolomeus, orbis terrae discriptor egregius,
Claudius Ptolemy of-the-world of-the-earth describer excellent
meminit dicens: est in Oceani arctoi salo posita
mentions saying there-is in of-the-Ocean Arctic the-surge placed
insula magna, nomine Scandza, in modum folii cetri,
an-island great by-name Scandza in the-manner of-a-leaf of-citron

lateribus pandis, per longum ducta concludens se. de
with-sides bulging through length drawn closing itself about
qua et Pomponius Mela in maris sinu Codano positam
which also Pomponius Mela in of-the-sea the-bay Codan placed
refert, cuius ripas influit Oceanus. haec a fronte posita est
relates whose banks washes the-Ocean this at the-front placed is
Vistulae fluminis, qui Sarmaticis montibus ortus in
of-the-Vistula river which in-the-Sarmatian mountains having-arisen in
conspectu Scandzae septentrionali Oceano trisulcus inlabitur,
sight of-Scandza into-the-northern Ocean three-channeled glides-in
Germaniam Scythiamque disterminans. haec ergo habet
Germany and-Scythia bounding this therefore has
ab oriente vastissimum lacum in orbis terrae gremio,
on the-east a-most-vast lake in of-the-world of-the-earth the-bosom
unde Vagi fluvius velut quodam ventrae generatus in
whence the-Vagus river as-if from-a-certain womb generated into
Oceanum undosus evolvitur. ab occidente namque inmensu
the-Ocean billowy rolls-out on the-west for by-an-immense
pelago circumdatur, a septentrione quoque innavigabili
sea it-is-surrounded on the-north also by-the-unnavigable
eodem vastissimo concluditur Oceano, ex quo quasi quodam
the-same most-vast it-is-shut-in Ocean from which as-if by-a-certain
brachio exiente, sinu distento, Germanicum mare efficitur.
arm going-out a-gulf stretched the-German sea is-made
ubi etiam parvae quidem, sed plures perhibentur insulae esse
where also small indeed but many are-said islands to-be
dispositae, ad quas si congelato mari ob nimium frigus
arranged to which if frozen the-sea because-of excessive cold
lupi transierint, luminibus feruntur orbari. ita non solum
wolves have-crossed of-their-eyes they-are-said to-be-bereft thus not only
inhospitalis hominibus, verum etiam beluis terra crudelis
inhospitable to-men but also to-beasts the-land cruel

est. in Scandza vero insula, unde nobis sermo est, licet
is in Scandza but the-island whence to-us the-speech is though
multae et diversae maneant nationes, septem tamen eorum
many and diverse remain nations seven yet their
nomina meminit Ptolemaeus. apium ibi turba mellifica
names mentions Ptolemy of-bees there the-swarm honey-making
ob nimium frigore nusquam repperitur. in cuius parte
because-of excessive cold nowhere is-found in whose part
arctoa gens Adogit consistit, quae fertur in aestate media
arctic the-nation Adogit dwells which is-said in summer mid
quadraginta diebus et noctibus luces habere continuas,
forty days and nights lights to-have continuous
itemque brumali tempore eodem dierum noctiumque
and-likewise in-the-wintry time in-the-same of-days and-nights
numero luce clara nescire. ita alternato merore cum gaudio
number light clear not-to-know thus alternated grief with joy
benificio aliis damnoque impar est. et hoc quare? quia
in-benefit to-others and-in-loss unequal is and this why because
prolixioribus diebus solem ad orientem per axis marginem
in-the-longer days the-sun to the-east along of-the-axis the-edge
vident redeuntem, brevioribus vero non sic conspicitur apud
they-see returning in-the-shorter indeed not so it-is-seen among
illos, sed aliter, quia austrinis signis percurrit, et
them but otherwise because through-the-southern signs it-runs and
quod nobis videtur sol ab imo surgere, illos per
what to-us seems the-sun from the-depth to-rise them along
terrae marginem dicitur circuire. aliae vero ibi sunt
of-the-earth the-edge is-said to-go-around others but there are
gentes Screrefennae, que frumentorum non queritant victum,
nations the-Screrefennae who of-grain not seek food
sed carnibus ferarum atque ovis avium vivunt; ubi tanta
but on-the-flesh of-wild-beasts and on-the-eggs of-birds live where so-great

paludibus fetura ponitur, ut et augmentum prestent generi
in-the-marshes a-brood is-laid that both increase it-furnishes to-the-kind
et satietatem ad cupiam genti. alia vero gens ibi
and satiety to abundance for-the-nation another but nation there
moratur Suehans, quae velud Thyringi equis utuntur eximiis.
dwells the-Suehans who like the-Thuringians horses use excellent
hi quoque sunt, qui in usibus Romanorum sappherinas
these also are who for the-uses of-the-Romans sapphire
pelles commercio interveniente per alias innumeras gentes
skins with-trade intervening through other innumerable nations
transmittunt, famosi pellium decora nigridine. hi cum
send-across famous of-skins for-the-beautiful blackness these though
inopes vivunt, ditissime vestiuntur. sequitur deinde diversarum
poor they-live most-richly are-clothed follows then of-diverse
turba nationum, Theustes, Vagoth, Bergio, Hallin, Liothida,
a-throng of-nations Theustes Vagoth Bergio Hallin Liothida
quorum omnium sedes sub uno plani ac fertilis, et
of-whom all the-seats under one of-the-flat and fertile and
propterea inibi aliarum gentium incursionibus infestantur. post
therefore there of-other nations by-the-incursions are-harassed after
hos Ahelmil, Finnaithae, Fervir, Gauthigoth, acre hominum
these the-Ahelmil Finnaithae Fervir Gauthigoth a-keen of-men
genus et at bella prumtissimum. dehinc Mixi, Evagre, Otingis.
race and for wars most-ready thereafter the-Mixi Evagre Otingis
hi omnes excisis rupibus quasi castellis inhabitant ritu
these all in-hewn rocks as-if in-castles dwell in-manner
beluino. sunt et his exteriores Ostrogothae, Raumarici,
beastlike there-are also than-these more-outward the-Ostrogothae Raumarici
Aeragnaricii, Finni mitissimi, Scandzae cultoribus omnibus
Aeragnaricii the-Finns most-gentle of-Scandza than-the-inhabitants all
mitiores; nec non et pares eorum Vinoviloth; Suetidi, cogniti
milder nor not also equal to-them the-Vinoviloth the-Suetidi known

in hac gente reliquis corpore eminentiores: quamvis et
in this nation than-the-rest in-body more-eminent although also
Dani, ex ipsorum stirpe progressi, Herulos propriis
the-Danes from their-own stock having-come-forth the-Heruli from-their-own
sedibus expulerunt, qui inter omnes Scandiae nationes nomen
seats expelled who among all of-Scandza the-nations a-name
sibi ob nimia proceritate affectant praecipuum. sunt
for-themselves for excessive height claim the-foremost there-are
quamquam et horum positura Grannii, Augandzi, Eunixi,
although also of-these the-situation the-Grannii Augandzi Eunixi
Taetel, Rugi, Arochi, Ranii. quibus non ante multos annos
Taetel Rugi Arochi Ranii over-whom not before many years
Roduulf rex fuit, qui contempto proprio regno ad Theodorici
Rodwulf king was who despised his-own kingdom to of-Theodoric
Gothorum regis gremio convolavit et, ut desiderabat, invenit.
of-the-Goths king the-bosom flew-together and as he-desired found
hae itaque gentes, Germanis corpore et animo grandiores,
these and-so nations than-the-Germans in-body and in-spirit greater
pugnabant beluina saevitia.
fought with-beastlike savagery

Caput IV

IV · FROM SCANDZA TO SCYTHIA

Under King Berig the Goths sail from Scandza and land at Gothiscandza, defeating the Ulmerugi and the Vandals. Under Filimer, their fifth king, they move to Scythia; when a bridge breaks, half the army is cut off. Josephus, Jordanes notes, calls them Scythians but omits these beginnings.

Ex hac igitur Scandza insula quasi officina gentium aut certe
from this therefore Scandza island as-if a-workshop of-nations or certainly
velut vagina nationum cum rege suo nomine Berig Gothi
as a-sheath of-nations with king their by-name Berig the-Goths
quondam memorantur egressi: qui ut primum e navibus
once are-recorded to-have-gone-out who as first from the-ships
exientes terras attigerunt, ilico nomen loci dederunt.
going-out the-lands they-touched at-once the-name to-the-place gave
nam odieque illic, ut fertur, Gothiscandza vocatur. unde mox
for today there as is-said Gothiscandza it-is-called whence soon
promoventes ad sedes Ulmerugorum, qui tunc Oceani ripas
advancing to the-seats of-the-Ulmerugi who then of-the-Ocean the-banks
insidebant, castra metati sunt eosque commisso proelio
occupied a-camp measured they-have and-them joined battle
propriis sedibus pepulerunt, eorumque vicinos Vandalos
from-their-own seats drove and-their neighbors the-Vandals
iam tunc subiugantes suis aplicavere victoriis. ubi vero
already then subjugating to-their applied victories when indeed
magna populi numerositate crescente et iam pene quinto
by-great of-the-people the-numerousness increasing and now almost the-fifth
rege regnante post Berig Filimer, filio Gadarigis, consilio
king reigning after Berig Filimer son of-Gadaric in-counsel
sedit, ut exinde cum familiis Gothorum promoveret exercitus.
it-sat that thence with the-families of-the-Goths should-advance the-army

qui aptissimas sedes locaquae dum quereret congrua, pervenit
which most-fit seats and-places while it-sought suitable reached
ad Scythiae terras, quae lingua eorum Oium vocabantur:
to of-Scythia the-lands which in-tongue their Oium were-called
ubi delectatus magna ubertate regionum et exercitus
where delighted by-the-great fertility of-the-regions and of-the-army
mediaetate transposita pons dicitur, unde amnem traiecerat,
half taken-across the-bridge is-said whence the-river it-had-crossed
inreparabiliter corruisse, nec ulterius iam cuidam licuit
irreparably to-have-collapsed nor further now to-anyone was-it-permitted
ire aut redire. nam is locus, ut fertur, tremulis paludibus
to-go or to-return for that place as is-said by-quaking marshes
voragine circumiecta concluditur, quem utraque confusione
by-a-whirlpool thrown-around is-shut-in which by-each confusion
natura reddidit inpervium. verumtamen hodieque illic et
nature has-rendered impassable nevertheless today there both
voces armentorum audiri et indicia hominum depraehendi
the-voices of-herds to-be-heard and the-signs of-men to-be-detected
commeantium attestationem, quamvis a longe audientium,
passing the-testimony although from afar of-those-hearing
credere licet. haec ergo pars Gothorum, quae apud
to-believe it-is-permitted this therefore part of-the-Goths which with
Filemer dicitur in terras Oium emenso amne transposita,
Filimer is-said into the-lands of-Oium crossed the-river taken-across
optatum potiti solum. nec mora ilico ad gentem Spalorum
the-desired having-gained soil nor delay at-once to the-nation of-the-Spali
adveniunt consertoque proelio victoriam adipiscunt, exindeque
they-come and-joined battle victory they-gain and-thence
iam velut victores ad extremam Scythiae partem, que Ponto
now as victors to the-farthest of-Scythia part which to-the-Pontic
mari vicina est, properant. quemadmodum et in priscis eorum
sea near is they-hasten as also in ancient their

carminibus pene storicu ritu in commune recolitur: quod
songs almost in-historical manner in common it-is-recalled which
et Ablavius descriptor Gothorum gentis egregius verissima
also Ablabius the-describer of-the-Gothic nation excellent in-most-true
adtestatur historia. in quam sententiam et nonnulli consensere
attests history to which opinion also some have-agreed
maiorum: Ioseppus quoque annalium relator verissimus dum
of-the-elders Josephus also of-the-annals the-relater most-truthful while
ubique veritatis conservet regulam et origines causarum
everywhere of-truth he-keeps the-rule and the-origins of-causes
a principio revolvat. haec vero quae diximus de gente
from the-beginning unrolls these but which we-have-said about the-nation
Gothorum principia cur omiserit, ignoramus: sed tantu Magog
of-the-Goths beginnings why he-omitted we-do-not-know but only Magog
eorum stirpe comemorans, Scythas eos et natione et vocabulo
of-their stock mentioning Scythians them both by-nation and by-name
asserit appellatos. cuius soli terminos, antequam aliud
he-asserts called of-whose soil the-boundaries before something-else
ad medium deducamus, necesse est, ut iacent, edicere.
to the-middle we-bring necessary it-is how they-lie to-declare

Caput V

V · THE LANDS OF SCYTHIA

Jordanes describes Scythia's boundaries, the Gepids and Dacia, the Venethi, Sclaveni, and Antes, the Aesti, Acatziri, Bulgars, and Huns, and dismisses the tale that the Goths came out of slavery in Britain. The Goths' wise teachers include Zalmoxes and Dicineus; they worship Mars with human sacrifice, and divide into Visigoths and Ostrogoths.

Scythia si quidem Germaniae terre confines eo tenus,
Scythia if indeed of-Germany to-the-land bordering as far
ubi Ister oritur amnis vel stagnus dilatatur Morsianus,
where the-Ister rises the-river or the-lake spreads Morsian
tendens usque ad flumina Tyram, Danastrum et Vagosolam,
stretching all-the-way to the-rivers Tyras Danaster and Vagosola
magnumque illu Danaprum Taurumque montem, non illum
and-great that Danaper and-the-Taurus mountain not that
Asiae, sed proprium, id est Scythicum, per omnem
of-Asia but its-own that is the-Scythian through all
Meotidis aditum, ultraque Meotida per angustias Bosfori
of-Maeotis the-approach and-beyond Maeotis through the-narrows of-the-Bosporus
usque ad Caucasum montem amnemque Araxem ac deinde
all-the-way to the-Caucasus mountain and-the-river Araxes and then
in sinistram partem reflexa post mare Caspium, quae in
to the-left side bent-back behind the-sea Caspian which at
extremis Asiae finibus ab Oceano eoroboro in modum
the-farthest of-Asia borders from the-Ocean northeastern in the-manner
fungi primum tenuis, post haec latissima et rotunda
of-a-mushroom first thin after this very-broad and round
forma exoritur, vergens ad Hunnus, Albanos et Seres usque
in-shape rises tending to the-Huns Albanians and Seres up-to

digreditur. haec, inquam, patria, id est Scythia, longe se
it-extends this I-say fatherland that is Scythia far itself
tendens lateque aperiens, habet ab oriente Seres, in ipso sui
stretching and-widely opening has on the-east the-Seres at very its
principio litus Caspii maris commanentes; ab occidente
beginning the-shore of-the-Caspian sea dwelling on the-west
Germanos et flumen Vistulae; ab arctu, id est septentrionali,
the-Germans and the-river Vistula on the-north that is by-the-northern
circumdatur oceano, a meridiae Persida, Albania, Hiberia,
it-is-surrounded ocean on the-south Persia Albania Iberia
Ponto atque extremo alveo Istri, qui dicitur Danubius
Pontus and the-farthest bed of-the-Ister which is-called the-Danube
ab ostea sua usque ad fontem. in eo vero latere, qua
from mouth its all-the-way to its-source on that but side where
Ponticum litus attingit, oppidis haut obscuris involvitur,
the-Pontic shore it-touches by-towns not obscure it-is-wrapped
Boristhenide, Olbia, Callipolida, Chersona, Theodosia, Careon,
Borysthenis Olbia Callipolis Chersonesus Theodosia Careon
Myrmicion et Trapezunta, quas indomiti Scytharum nationes
Myrmicion and Trapezus which the-untamed of-the-Scythians nations
Grecis permiserunt condere, sibimet commercia prestaturos.
to-the-Greeks permitted to-found to-themselves trade about-to-furnish
in cuius Scythiae medium est locus, qui Asiam Europamque
in whose of-Scythia the-middle is a-place which Asia and-Europe
ab alterutro dividit, Riphei scilicet montes, qui Thanain
from each-other divides the-Riphaean namely mountains which the-Tanais
vastissimum fundunt intrantem Meotida cuius paludis circuitus
most-vast pour entering Maeotis of-which marsh the-circuit
passuum mil. cxliiii, nusquam octo ulnis altius
of-paces thousand one-hundred-forty-four nowhere eight ells deeper
subsidentis. in qua Scythia prima ab occidente gens residet
sinking in which Scythia first from the-west the-nation dwells

Gepidarum, que magnis opinatisque ambitur fluminibus. nam
of-the-Gepids which by-great and-renowned is-surrounded rivers for
Tisia per aquilonem eius chorumque discurrit; ab africo
the-Tisia through the-north its and-northwest runs-about on the-southwest
vero magnus ipse Danubius, ab eoo Flutausis secat, qui
indeed the-great itself Danube on the-east the-Flutausis cuts which
rapidus ac verticosus in Istri fluenta furens divolvitur.
swift and eddying into of-the-Ister the-streams raging rolls-down
introrsus illis Dacia est, ad coronae speciem arduis Alpibus
within them Dacia is to of-a-crown the-likeness with-lofty Alps
emunita, iuxta quorum sinistrum latus, qui in aquilone vergit,
fortified near whose left side which to the-north inclines
ab ortu Vistulae fluminis per inmensa spatia Venetharum
from the-source of-the-Vistula river through immense spaces of-the-Venethi
natio populosa consedit. quorum nomina licet nunc per
the-nation populous has-settled whose names though now through
varias familias et loca mutentur, principaliter tamen Sclaveni
various families and places are-changed principally yet Sclaveni
et Antes nominantur. Sclaveni a civitate Novietunense
and Antes they-are-named the-Sclaveni from the-city Novietunum
et laco qui appellatur Mursiano usque ad Danastrum
and the-lake which is-called Mursian all-the-way to the-Danaster
et in boream Viscla tenus commorantur: hi paludes
and to the-north to-the-Vistula as-far they-dwell these marshes
silvasque pro civitatibus habent. Antes vero, qui sunt
and-forests instead-of cities have the-Antes but who are
eorum fortissimi, qua Ponticum mare curvatur, a Danastro
of-them the-bravest where the-Pontic sea curves from the-Danaster
extenduntur usque ad Danaprum, quae flumina multis
are-extended all-the-way to the-Danaper which rivers by-many
mansionibus ab invicem absunt. ad litus autem Oceani,
stages from each-other are-distant at the-shore moreover of-the-Ocean

ubi tribus faucibus fluenta Vistulae fluminis ebibuntur,
where by-three mouths the-streams of-the-Vistula river are-drunk-up
Vidivarii resident, ex diversis nationibus adgregati; post quos
the-Vidivarii dwell from diverse nations gathered after whom
ripam Oceani item Aesti tenent, pacatum hominum genus
the-shore of-the-Ocean likewise the-Aesti hold a-peaceful of-men race
omnino. quibus in austrum adsidet gens Acatzirorum
altogether to-whom toward the-south sits the-nation of-the-Acatziri
fortissima, frugum ignara, quae pecoribus et venationibus
very-brave of-crops ignorant which on-flocks and hunting
victitat. ultra quos distendunt supra mare Ponticum Bulgarum
lives beyond whom stretch above the-sea Pontic of-the-Bulgars
sedes, quos notissimos peccatorum nostrorum mala fecerunt.
the-seats whom most-notorious of-sins our the-ills have-made
hinc iam Hunni quasi fortissimorum gentium fecundissimus
hence now the-Huns as-if of-the-bravest nations the-most-fertile
cespes bifariam populorum rabiem pullularunt. nam alii
turf in-two of-peoples the-madness sprouted for some
Altziagiri, alii Saviri nuncupantur, qui tamen sedes habent
Altziagiri others Saviri are-named who yet seats have
divisas: iuxta Chersonam Altziagiri, quo Asiae bona avidus
divided near Chersonesus the-Altziagiri where of-Asia the-goods the-greedy
mercator importat, qui aestate campos pervagant effusas
merchant imports who in-summer the-plains roam spread-out
sedes, prout armentorum invitaverint pabula, hieme supra
seats as of-the-herds have-invited the-pastures in-winter above
mare Ponticum se referentes. Hunuguri autem hinc sunt
the-sea Pontic themselves betaking the-Hunuguri moreover from-here are
noti, quia ab ipsis pellium murinarum venit commercium:
known because from them of-skins of-ermine comes the-trade
quos tantorum virorum formidavit audacia. quorum mansione
whom of-so-great men has-feared the-boldness of-whom in-dwelling

prima in Scythiae solo iuxta paludem Meotidem, secundo
first in of-Scythia the-soil near the-marsh Maeotis in-the-second
in Mysiam Thraciamque et Daciam, tertio supra mare
in Moesia and-Thrace and Dacia in-the-third above the-sea
Ponticum rursus in Scythia legimus habitasse: nec eorum
Pontic again in Scythia we-read to-have-dwelt nor their
fabulas alicubi repperimus scriptas, qui eos dicunt in Brittania
fables anywhere have-we-found written who them say in Britain
vel in unaqualibet insularum in servitute redactos et
or in any-one-you-please of-the-islands into servitude brought and
in unius caballi praetio a quodam ereptos. aut certe si
for of-one horse the-price by a-certain-one rescued or certainly if
quis eos aliter dixerit in nostro urbe, quam quod nos
anyone them otherwise shall-have-said in our city than what we
diximus, fuisse exortos, nobis aliquid obstrepebit: nos enim
have-said to-have arisen to-us anything he-shall-object we for
potius lectioni credimus quam fabulis anilibus consentimus.
rather to-reading believe than with-fables of-old-women we-agree
Ut ergo ad nostrum propositum redeamus, in prima
that therefore to our purpose we-may-return in the-first
sede Scythiae iuxta Meotidem commanentes praefati, unde
seat of-Scythia near Maeotis dwelling the-aforesaid of-whom
loquimur, Filimer regem habuisse noscuntur. in secunda, id
we-speak Filimer as-king to-have-had are-known in the-second that
est Daciae, Thraciaeque et Mysiae solo Zalmoxen, quem
is of-Dacia and-of-Thrace and of-Moesia on-the-soil Zalmoxes whom
mirae philosophiae eruditionis fuisse testantur plerique
of-wonderful philosophy of-learning to-have-been testify very-many
scriptores annalium. nam et Zeutam prius habuerunt eruditum,
writers of-annals for also Zeuta first they-had learned
post etiam Dicineum, tertium Zalmoxen, de quo superius
afterward also Dicineus third Zalmoxes about whom above

diximus. nec defuerunt, qui eos sapientiam erudirent.
we-have-said nor were-lacking those-who them in-wisdom should-instruct
unde et pene omnibus barbaris Gothi sapientiores semper
whence also almost than-all the-barbarians the-Goths wiser always
extiterunt Grecisque pene consimiles, ut refert Dio, qui
have-stood and-to-the-Greeks almost very-like as relates Dio who
historias eorum annalesque Greco stilo composuit. qui dicit
the-histories their and-annals in-Greek style composed who says
primum Tarabosteseos, deinde vocatos Pilleatos hos, qui inter
first Tarabostesei then called Pilleati these who among
eos generosi extabant, ex quibus eis et reges et sacerdotes
them noble stood-out from whom for-them both kings and priests
ordinabantur. adeo ergo fuere laudati Gaetae, ut dudum
were-appointed so-much therefore were praised the-Getae that long-ago
Martem, quem poetarum fallacia deum belli pronuntiat, apud
Mars whom of-the-poets the-deceit god of-war proclaims among
eos fuisse dicant exortum. unde et Vergilius: 'gradivumque
them to-have-been they-say born whence also Virgil and-Gradivus
patrem, Geticis qui praesidet arvis'. quem Martem Gothi
father over-the-Getic who presides fields which Mars the-Goths
semper asperrima placavere cultura (nam victimae eius mortes
always with-the-harshest appeased worship for the-victims his the-deaths
fuere captorum), opinantes bellorum praesulem apte humani
were of-captives thinking of-wars the-presider fitly of-human
sanguinis effusione placandum. huic praede primordia
of-blood by-the-shedding to-be-appeased to-him of-the-booty the-first-fruits
vovebantur, huic truncis suspendebantur exubiae, eratque
were-vowed to-him on-trunks were-hung the-spoils and-there-was
illis religionis preter ceteros insinuatus affectus, cum parenti
for-them of-religion beyond the-others instilled affection since to-the-parent
devotio numinis videretur inpendi. tertia vero sede super
the-devotion of-the-divinity seemed to-be-paid in-the-third indeed seat above

mare Ponticum iam humaniores et, ut superius diximus,
the-sea Pontic now more-humane and as above we-have-said
prudentiores effecti, divisi per familias populi, Vesegothae
more-prudent made divided by families the-peoples the-Visigoths
familiae Balthorum, Ostrogothae praeclaris Amalis serviebant.
to-the-family of-the-Balthi the-Ostrogoths to-the-illustrious Amals were-subject
Quorum studium fuit primum inter alias gentes vicinas arcum
whose zeal was first among other nations neighboring the-bow
intendere nervis, Lucano plus storico quam poeta testante:
to-stretch with-strings Lucan more historian than poet testifying
'Armeniosque arcus Geticis intendite nervis'. ante quos etiam
and-Armenian bows with-Getic stretch strings before whom also
cantu maiorum facta modulationibus citharisque canebant,
in-song of-the-ancestors the-deeds with-melodies and-with-lyres they-sang
Eterpamara, Hanale, Fridigerni, Vidigoiae et aliorum, quorum
of-Eterpamara of-Hanala of-Fritigern of-Vidigoia and of-others of-whom
in hac gente magna opinio est, quales vix heroas fuisse
in this nation great the-opinion is such-as scarcely heroes to-have-been
miranda iactat antiquitas. tunc, ut fertur, Vesosis Scythis
wonderful boasts antiquity then as is-said Vesosis on-the-Scythians
lacrimabile sibi potius intulit bellum, eis videlicet, quos
lamentable on-himself rather brought war on-them namely whom
Amazonarum viros prisca tradit auctoritas, de quas et
of-the-Amazons the-husbands ancient hands-down authority about whom also
feminas bellatrices Orosius in primo volumine professa voce
women warriors Orosius in the-first volume with-professed voice
testatur. unde cum Gothis eum tunc dimicasse evidenter
testifies whence with the-Goths him then to-have-fought evidently
probamus, quem cum Amazonarum viris absolute pugnasse
we-prove whom with of-the-Amazons the-husbands absolutely to-have-fought
cognoscimus, qui tunc a Borysthene amne, quem accolae
we-know who then from the-Borysthenes river which the-dwellers

Danaprum vocant, usque ad Thanain fluvium circa sinum
Danaper call all-the-way to the-Tanais river around the-bay
paludis Meotidis consedebant. Thanain vero hunc dico, qui
of-the-marsh Maeotis were-settled the-Tanais but this I-mean which
ex Ripheis montibus deiectus adeo preceps ruit, ut, cum
from the-Riphaean mountains thrown-down so headlong rushes that while
vicina flumina sive Meotis et Bosforus gelu solidentur,
the-neighboring rivers or Maeotis and the-Bosporus by-frost are-solidified
solus amnium confragosis montibus vaporatus, numquam
alone of-rivers by-rugged mountains warmed never
Scythico duriscit algore. hic Asiae Europaeque terminus famosus
by-Scythian hardens cold this of-Asia and-of-Europe the-boundary famous
habetur. nam alter est ille, qui montibus Chrinnorum
is-held for the-other is that which in-the-mountains of-the-Chrinni
oriens, in Caspium mare dilabitur. Danaper autem ortus
rising into the-Caspian sea glides-away the-Danaper moreover having-arisen
grande palude, quasi ex matre profunditur. hic usque
in-a-great marsh as-if from a-mother pours-forth this all-the-way
ad medium sui dulcis est et potabilis, piscesque nimii
to the-middle of-itself sweet is and drinkable and-fish of-excessive
saporis gignit, ossa carentibus chartellagine tantum habentes
flavor it-produces bones lacking cartilage only having
in corporis continentiam. sed ubi fit Ponto vicinior,
in of-the-body the-frame but where it-becomes to-the-Pontus nearer
parvum fontem suscipit, cui Exampheo cognomen est, adeo
a-small spring it-receives to-which Exampaeus the-name is so
amarum, ut, cum sit quadraginta dierum itinere navigabilis,
bitter that though it-be of-forty days by-journey navigable
huius aquis exiguis inmutetur, infectusque ac dissimilis
of-this by-the-waters scanty it-is-changed and-tainted and unlike
sui inter Greca oppida Callipidas et Hypannis in mare
itself between the-Greek towns Callipidae and Hypanis into the-sea

defluat. ad cuius ostia insula est in fronte, Achillis nomine.
flows-down at whose mouth an-island is in front of-Achilles by-name
inter hos terra vastissima, silvis consita, paludibus dubia.
between these a-land most-vast with-forests planted with-marshes uncertain

Caput VI

VI · TANAUSIS DEFEATS VESOSIS

When Vesosis of Egypt attacks the Goths, their king Tanausis defeats him at the Phasis and pursues him to the Nile. Tanausis subdues much of Asia, and some of his soldiers stay behind there, from whom, by Trogus' account, the Parthians descend. The Goths worship Tanausis after his death.

Hic ergo Gothis morantibus Vesosis, Aegyptiorum rex, in
here therefore the-Goths dwelling Vesosis of-the-Egyptians king into
bellum inruit, quibus tunc Tanausis rex erat. quod proelio
war rushed over-whom then Tanausis king was which battle
ad Phasim fluvium, a quo Fasides aves exortae in totum
at the-Phasis river from which the-Phasian birds having-arisen into the-whole
mundum epulis potentum exuberant, Thanausis Gothorum
world at-the-banquets of-the-powerful abound Tanausis of-the-Goths
rex Vesosi Aegyptiorum occurrit, eumque graviter debellans
king Vesosis of-the-Egyptians met and-him heavily conquering
in Aegypto usque persecutus est, et nisi Nili amnis
into Egypt up-to pursued has and unless of-the-Nile river
intransmeabilis obstetissent fluenta vel munitiones, quas
impassable had-stood-in-the-way the-streams or the-fortifications which
dudum sibi ob incursiones Aethiopum Vesosis fieri
long-ago for-himself because-of the-incursions of-the-Ethiopians Vesosis to-be-made
praecepisset, ibi in eius eum patria extinxisset. sed
had-ordered there in his him fatherland he-would-have-destroyed but

dum eum ibi positum non valuisset laedere, revertens pene
when him there placed not he-had-been-able to-hurt returning almost
omnem Asiam subiugavit et sibi tunc caro amico Sorno,
all Asia he-subjugated and to-himself then dear friend Sornus
regi Medorum, ad persolvendum tributum subditos fecit.
king of-the-Medes for paying tribute subject made
ex cuius exercitu victores tunc nonnulli provincias subditas
from whose army as-victors then some the-provinces subjected
contuentes et in omni fertilitate pollentes deserta suorum
beholding and in all fertility abounding deserted of-their
agmina sponte in Asiae partibus residerunt. ex quorum
the-columns of-their-own-accord in of-Asia the-parts settled from whose
nomine vel genere Pompeius Trogus Parthorum dicit extitisse
name or race Pompeius Trogus of-the-Parthians says to-have-arisen
prosapiem. unde etiam hodieque lingua Scythica fugaces
the-stock whence also today in-the-tongue Scythian fugitives
quod est, Parthi dicuntur, suoque generi respondentes inter
which is Parthians they-are-called and-to-their race answering among
omnes pene Asiae nationes soli sagittarii sunt et acerrimi
all almost of-Asia the-nations alone archers they-are and most-fierce
bellatores. de nomine vero, quod diximus eos Parthos,
warriors about the-name indeed which we-have-said them Parthians
fugaces, ita aliquanti aethymologiam traxerunt, ut dicerent
fugitives so some the-etymology have-drawn that they-said
Parthi, quia suos refugerunt parentes. hunc ergo Thanausim
Parthians because their they-fled parents this therefore Tanausis
regem Gothorum mortuum inter numina sui populi coluerunt.
king of-the-Goths dead among the-divinities of-his people they-worshiped

Caput VII

VII · THE AMAZONS

While the men are away, Gothic women repel an attack and choose two queens, Lampeto and Marpesia. Marpesia conquers in Asia, names a rock in the Caucasus, and the women found cities and the temple of Diana at Ephesus. Jordanes digresses on the Caucasus and its many names.

Post cuius decessum et exercitu eius cum successores ipsius
after whose departure and the-army his with the-successors his
in aliis partibus expeditione gerentibus feminae Gothorum a
in other parts the-expedition conducting the-women of-the-Goths by
quadam vicina gente temptantur in praeda. quae doctae a
a-certain neighboring nation are-attacked for plunder who taught by
viris fortiter resisterunt hostesque super se venientes
their-husbands bravely resisted and-the-enemies upon them coming
cum magna verecundia abigerunt. qua patratae victoria
with great shame drove-off by-which accomplished victory
fretaeque maioris audacia invicem se cohortantes arma
and-relying of-greater with-boldness one-another themselves exhorting arms
arripiunt elegentesque duas audentiores Lampeto et Marpesia
they-seize and-choosing two bolder-ones Lampeto and Marpesia
principatui subrogarunt. quae dum curam gerunt, ut
to-the-rule appointed who while the-charge they-bear that
et propria defenderent et aliena vastarent, sortitae
both their-own they-might-defend and others' might-lay-waste having-drawn-lots
Lampeto restitit fines patrios tuendo, Marpesia vero
Lampeto stayed the-borders paternal guarding Marpesia but
feminarum agmine sumpta novum genus exercitui duxit
of-women a-column taken a-new kind of-army led
in Asiam, diversasque gentes bello superans, alios vero
into Asia and-diverse nations by-war overcoming others but

pace concilians, ad Cauchasum venit, ibique certum tempus
by-peace winning to the-Caucasus came and-there a-certain time
demorans loci nomen dedit Saxum Marpesiae, unde et
lingering to-the-place a-name gave the-Rock of-Marpesia whence also
Vergilius: 'ac si dura silex aut stet Marpesia cautes',
Virgil as if hard flint or should-stand Marpesian crag
in eo loco, ubi post haec Alexander Magnus portas
in that place where after these-things Alexander the-Great gates
constituens Pylas Caspias nominavit, quod nunc Lazorum
setting-up Gates Caspian named which now of-the-Lazi
gens custodit pro munitione Romana. hic ergo certum
the-nation guards for a-fortification Roman here therefore a-certain
temporis Amazonas commanentes confortati sunt. unde
of-time the-Amazons dwelling strengthened were whence
egressi et Alem fluvium, quod iuxta Gargaram civitatem
having-gone-out also the-Halys river which near Gargara the-city
praeterfluit, transeuntes, Armeniam, Syriam Ciliciamque,
flows-past crossing Armenia Syria and-Cilicia
Galatiam, Pisidiam omniaque Asiae loca aequa felicitate
Galatia Pisidia and-all of-Asia the-places with-equal good-fortune
domuerunt; Ioniam Eoliamque conversae deditas sibi
they-tamed to-Ionia and-Aeolis turned surrendered to-themselves
provincias effecerunt. ubi diutius dominantes etiam civitates
provinces they-made where longer ruling also cities
castraque suo in nomine dicaverunt. Ephesi quoque templum
and-forts their in name they-dedicated at-Ephesus also a-temple
Dianae ob sagittandi ac venandi studium, quibus se
to-Diana because-of of-shooting and of-hunting the-zeal to-which themselves
artibus tradidissent, effusis opibus mirae pulchritudinis
arts they-had-given lavished wealth of-wonderful beauty
condiderunt. tale ergo Scythiae genitae feminae casu Asiae
they-founded such therefore of-Scythia born women by-chance of-Asia

regna potitae per centum pene annos tenuerunt et sic
the-kingdoms having-gained through a-hundred almost years held and so
demum ad proprias socias in cautes Marpesios, quas superius
at-last to their-own allies on the-crags Marpesian which above
diximus, repedarunt, in montem scilicet Caucasi. cuius
we-mentioned returned to the-mountain namely of-the-Caucasus of-which
montis quia facta iterum mentio est, non ab re arbitror
mountain because made again mention is not off the-point I-think
eius tractum situmque describere, quando maximam partem
its course and-position to-describe since the-greatest part
orbis noscitur circuire iugo continuo. is namque
of-the-world it-is-known to-go-around in-a-ridge continuous it for
ab Indico mare surgens, qua meridiem respicit, sole
from the-Indian sea rising where the-south it-faces by-the-sun
vaporatus ardescit; qua septentrione patet, rigentibus ventis
heated burns where to-the-north it-lies-open to-the-stiffening winds
est obnoxius et pruinis. mox in Syriam curvato angulo
it-is exposed and to-frosts soon into Syria bent at-an-angle
reflexus, licet amnium plurimos emittat, in Vasianensem
turned-back though of-rivers very-many it-sends-forth into the-Vasianensian
tamen regionem Eufratem Tigrimque navigeros ad opinionem
yet region the-Euphrates and-the-Tigris navigable to repute
maximam perennium fontium cupiosis fundit uberibus. qui
greatest of-perennial springs with-abundant it-pours breasts which
amplexantes terras Syrorum Mesopotamiam et appellari
embracing the-lands of-the-Syrians Mesopotamia both to-be-called
faciunt et videri, in sinum rubri maris fluenta deponentes.
make-it and to-seem into the-bay of-the-Red sea the-streams depositing
tunc in boream revertens Scythicas terras iugus antefatus
then to the-north returning the-Scythian lands the-ridge aforesaid
magnis flexibus pervagatur atque ibidem opinatissima flumina
with-great windings wanders-through and there most-renowned rivers

in Caspium mare profundens Araxem, Cysum et Cambisen
into the-Caspian sea pouring-out the-Araxes the-Cyrus and the-Cambyses
continuatoque iugo ad Ripheos usque in montes extenditur.
and-continued in-a-ridge to the-Riphaean up-to into mountains it-is-extended
indeque Scythicis gentibus dorso suo terminum praebens ad
and-thence to-the-Scythian nations with-back its a-boundary furnishing to
Pontum usque discendit, consertisque collibus Histri quoque
the-Pontus up-to it-descends and-joined with-hills of-the-Ister also
fluenta contingit, quo amne scissus dehiscens Scythia
the-streams it-touches by-which river split gaping-open in-Scythia
quoque Taurus vocatur. talis ergo tantusque et pene omnium
also Taurus is-called such therefore and-so-great and almost of-all
montium maximus excelsas suas erigens summitates naturali
mountains the-greatest lofty its raising summits by-natural
constructione praestat gentibus inexpugnanda munimina. nam
construction furnishes to-the-nations impregnable bulwarks for
locatim recisus, qua disrupto iugo vallis hiatu patescit,
in-places cut-off where broken the-ridge a-valley with-a-gap opens
nunc Caspias portas, nunc Armenias, nunc Cilicas, vel
now Caspian gates now Armenian now Cilician or
secundum locum quale fuerit, facit, vix tamen plaustro
according-to the-place as-it shall-have-been it-makes scarcely yet for-a-wagon
meabilis, lateribus in altitudinem utremque desectis, qui
passable with-sides into height on-both-sides cut-away which
pro gentium varietate diverso vocabulo nuncupatur.
according-to of-the-nations the-variety by-a-different word is-named
hunc enim Lammum, mox Propanissimum Indus appellat;
this for Lammus then Propanisimus the-Indian calls
Parthus primum Castram, post Nifatem edicit; Syrus et
the-Parthian first Castra afterward Niphates calls the-Syrian and
Armenus Taurum, Scytha Cauchasum ac Rifeum, iterumque
the-Armenian Taurus the-Scythian Caucasus and Riphaeus and-again

in fine Taurum cognominat; aliaeque conplurimae gentes
at the-end Taurus names and-other very-many nations
huic iugo dedere vocabulo. et quia de eius continuatione
to-this ridge have-given a-name and because of its continuation
pauca libabimus, ad Amazonas, unde divertimus, redeamus.
a-few-things we-shall-sip to the-Amazons whence we-turned-aside let-us-return

Caput VIII

VIII · THE AMAZONS' CUSTOMS

The Amazons meet neighboring men once a year, returning boys to their fathers and training girls for war, or, some say, killing the boys. Hercules and Theseus fight them, and Theseus carries off Hippolyta. Their queen Penthesilea fights at Troy, and they are said to have ruled until Alexander.

Quae veritae, ne eorum prolis rarisceret, vicinis
who fearing lest their offspring should-grow-scarce from-the-neighboring
gentibus concubitum petierunt, facta nundina semel in
nations intercourse sought made a-market-day once in
anno, ita ut futuri temporis eadem die revertentibus
the-year so that of-the-future time on-the-same day to-those-returning
in id ipsum, quidquid partus masculum edidisset, patri
into that very whatever the-birth male had-produced to-the-father
redderet, quidquid vero feminei sexus nasceretur, mater ad
it-should-return whatever but of-female sex was-born the-mother to
arma bellica erudiret: sive, ut quibusdam placet, editis maribus
arms warlike should-train or as to-some it-pleases born males
novercali odio infantis miserandi fata rumpebant. ita
with-stepmotherly hatred of-the-infant pitiable the-fates they-broke so
apud illas detestabile puerperium erat, quod ubique constat
among them detestable childbirth was which everywhere it-is-agreed

esse votivum. quae crudelitas illis terrorem maximum
to-be desired which cruelty to-them terror the-greatest
comulabat opinionis vulgatae. nam quae, rogo, spes esset
heaped of-the-opinion common for what I-ask hope would-be
capto, ubi indulgi vel filio nefas habebatur? contra
for-the-captive where to-be-indulged even to-a-son a-crime was-held against
has, ut fertur, pugnavit Herculis, et Melanis pene plus dolo
these as is-said fought Hercules and Melanippe almost more by-guile
quam virtute subegit. Theseus vero Hippoliten in praeda
than by-valor he-subdued Theseus but Hippolyta as booty
tulit, de qua et genuit Hypolitum. hae quoque Amazones
carried from whom also he-begot Hippolytus these also Amazons
post haec habuere reginam nomine Penthesileam, cuius
after these-things had a-queen by-name Penthesilea of-whom
Troiano bello extant clarissima documenta. nam hae feminae
in-the-Trojan war exist most-famous proofs for these women
usque ad Alexandrum Magnum referuntur tenuisse regimen.
all-the-way to Alexander the-Great are-reported to-have-held rule

Caput IX

IX · TELEFUS AND EURYPYLUS

Dio, Jordanes says, records a Gothic king Telefus, son of Hercules, who ruled Moesia. He fights the Greeks, kills their general Thesander, and, though wounded by Achilles, drives them from his borders. His son Eurypylus, Priam's nephew, comes to help Troy for love of Cassandra and is killed.

Sed ne dicas: de viris Gothorum sermo adsumptus cur
but lest you-say about the-men of-the-Goths the-speech taken-up why
in feminas tamdiu perseverat? audi et virorum insignem
on the-women so-long does-it-persist hear also of-the-men the-distinguished

et laudabilem fortitudinem. Dio storicus et antiquitatum
and praiseworthy bravery Dio the-historian and of-antiquities
diligentissimus inquisitor, qui operi suo Getica titulum dedit
most-diligent investigator who to-work his Getica the-title gave
(quos Getas iam superiori loco Gothos esse probavimus,
whom Getae already in-a-former place Goths to-be we-have-proved
Orosio Paulo dicente) — hic Dio regem illis post
Orosius Paulus saying this Dio a-king to-them after
tempora multa commemorat nomine Telefum. ne vero quis
times many mentions by-name Telefus lest indeed anyone
dicat hoc nomen a lingua Gothica omnino peregrinum
should-say this name from the-tongue Gothic altogether foreign
esse, nemo qui nesciat animadvertat usu pleraque
to-be no-one who does-not-know let-him-notice by-usage most
nomina gentes amplecti, ut Romani Macedonum, Greci
names the-nations to-embrace as the-Romans of-the-Macedonians the-Greeks
Romanorum, Sarmatae Germanorum, Gothi plerumque
of-the-Romans the-Sarmatians of-the-Germans the-Goths mostly
mutuantur Hunnorum. is ergo Telefus, Herculis filius natus
borrow of-the-Huns this therefore Telefus of-Hercules son born
ex Auge, sororis Priami coniugio copulatus, procerus quidem
from Auge of-the-sister of-Priam in-marriage joined tall indeed
corpore, sed plus vigore terribilis, qui paternam fortitudinem
in-body but more in-vigor terrible who paternal bravery
propriis virtutibus aequans Herculis genium formae quoque
with-his-own virtues equaling of-Hercules the-genius of-form also
similitudinem referebat. huius itaque regnum Moesiam
the-likeness recalled his and-so kingdom Moesia
appellavere maiores. quae provincia habet ab oriente ostia
called the-ancestors which province has on the-east the-mouths
fluminis Danubii, a meridie Macedonia, ab occasu Histria, a
of-the-river Danube on the-south Macedonia on the-west Histria on

septentrione Danubium. is ergo antefatus habuit bellum cum
the-north the-Danube he therefore aforesaid had a-war with
Danais, in qua pugna Thesandrum ducem Greciae interemit
the-Danaans in which fight Thesander general of-Greece he-slew
et dum Aiacem infestus invadit Uliximque persequitur, vitibus
and while Ajax hostile he-attacks and-Ulysses pursues by-vines
equo cadente ipse corruit Achillisque iaculo femur
his-horse falling himself fell and-of-Achilles by-the-javelin in-the-thigh
sauciatus diu mederi nequivit; Grecos tamen, quamvis
wounded long to-be-healed he-could-not the-Greeks yet although
iam saucius, e suis finibus proturbavit. Thelepho vero
already wounded from his borders he-drove-out Telefus but
defuncto Euryphylus filius successit in regno, ex Priami
having-died Eurypylus his-son succeeded in the-kingdom from of-Priam
Frygum regi germana progenitus. qui ob Casandrae
of-the-Phrygians to-the-king sister begotten who for of-Cassandra
amorem bello interesse Troiano, ut parentibus soceroque
love in-the-war to-take-part Trojan that to-his-parents and-father-in-law
ferret auxilium, cupiens, mox venisset extinctus est.
he-might-bring help desiring as-soon-as he-had-come killed was

Caput X

X · CYRUS, DARIUS, XERXES, AND PHILIP

Queen Tomyris lets Cyrus cross the Araxes, then destroys his army and founds Tomi. The Goths refuse Darius a bride; he invades with 700,000 men, loses 8,000, and retreats, as Xerxes does after him. Philip of Macedon marries a Gothic princess, and the Goths under Sitalces avenge an attack on Odessus.

Tunc Cyrus, rex Persarum, post grande intervallum et pene
then Cyrus king of-the-Persians after a-great interval and almost
post dcxxx annorum tempore (Pompeio Trogo testante)
after six-hundred-thirty of-years time Pompeius Trogus testifying
Getarum reginae Thomyre sibi exitiabile intulit bellum.
of-the-Getae on-the-queen Tomyris to-himself a-ruinous brought war
qui elatus ex Asiae victoriis Getas nititur subiugare, quibus,
who elated from of-Asia the-victories the-Getae strives to-subjugate over-whom
ut diximus, regina erat Thomyris. quae cum Abraxem amnem
as we-have-said queen was Tomyris who though at-the-Araxes river
Cyri arcere potuisset accessum, transitum tamen permisit,
of-Cyrus to-keep-off she-could the-approach the-crossing yet permitted
elegens armis eum vincere quam locorum beneficio
choosing by-arms him to-conquer than of-the-places by-the-advantage
submovere; quod et factum est. et veniente Cyro prima
to-remove which also done was and coming Cyrus at-first
cessit fortuna Parthis in tantum, ut et filium Thomyris
yielded fortune to-the-Parthians to such-a-degree that both the-son of-Tomyris
et plurimum exercitum trucidarent. sed iterato Marte Getae
and very-much of-the-army they-slaughtered but renewed the-battle the-Getae
cum sua regina Parthos devictos superant atque prosternunt
with their queen the-Parthians conquered overcome and lay-low
opimamque praedam de eis auferunt, ibique primum
and-rich booty from them carry-off and-there first

Gothorum gens sirica vidit tentoria. tunc Thomyris regina
of-the-Goths the-nation silken saw tents then Tomyris the-queen
aucta victoria tantaque praeda de inimicis potita, in
increased by-victory and-so-great booty from the-enemies having-gained into
partem Moesiae, quae nunc a magna Scythia nomen
the-part of-Moesia which now from great Scythia the-name
mutuatum minor Scythia appellatur, transiens, ibi in Ponti
having-borrowed Lesser Scythia is-called crossing there on of-Pontus
Moesiaco litore Thomes civitatem suo de nomine aedificavit.
the-Moesian shore Tomi the-city her from name built
dehinc Darius, rex Persarum, Hystaspis filius, Antyri, regis
thereafter Darius king of-the-Persians of-Hystaspes son of-Antyrus the-king
Gothorum, filiam in matrimonio postulavit, rogans pariter
of-the-Goths the-daughter in marriage demanded asking together
atque deterrens, nisi suam peragerent voluntatem. cuius
and deterring unless his they-should-carry-out will whose
affinitatem Gothi spernentes, legationem eius frustrarunt. qui
kinship the-Goths spurning embassy his frustrated who
repulsus dolore flammatus est et dcc milia armatorum
repulsed by-grief inflamed was and seven-hundred thousand of-armed-men
contra ipsos produxit exercitum, verecundiam suam malo
against them brought-out an-army shame his by-the-ill
publico vindicare contendens; navibusque pene a Chalcedona
public to-avenge striving and-with-ships almost from Chalcedon
usque ad Bizantium in instar pontium tabulatis atque
all-the-way to Byzantium in the-likeness of-bridges with-planks and
consertis Thraciam petit et Moesiam; pontemque rursus in
joined Thrace he-seeks and Moesia and-a-bridge again on
Danubio pari modo constructum duobus mensibus crebris
the-Danube in-equal manner built two months by-frequent
fatigatus in Tapis viii milia perdidit armatorum, timensque,
wearied at the-Tapae eight thousand he-lost of-armed-men and-fearing

ne pons Danubii ab eius adversariis occuparetur, celeri fuga
lest the-bridge of-the-Danube by his adversaries should-be-occupied in-swift flight
in Thracia repedavit, nec Mysiae solum sibi credens tutum
into Thrace returned nor of-Moesia the-soil to-himself believing safe
fore aliquantulum remorandi. post cuius decessum iterum
to-be for-a-little of-staying after whose departure again
Xerses filius eius paternas iniurias ulcisci se aestimans, cum
Xerxes son his paternal injuries to-avenge himself thinking with
sua septingenta et auxiliarium ccc milia armatorum,
his seven-hundred and of-auxiliaries three-hundred thousand of-armed-men
rostratas naves mille ducentas, onerarias tria milia, super
beaked ships thousand two-hundred freighters three thousand against
Gothos ad bellum profectus nec temptare in conflictu
the-Goths for war having-set-out nor to-try in conflict
praevaluit, eorum animositate et constantia superatus. sic
he-prevailed by-their spirit and constancy overcome so
namque ut venerat, absque aliquo certamine suo cum robore
for as he-had-come without any contest his with strength
recessit. Philippus quoque, pater Alexandri Magni, cum
withdrew Philip also father of-Alexander the-Great with
Gothis amicitias copulans Medopam Gudilae regis filiam
the-Goths friendships joining Medopa of-Gudila the-king the-daughter
accepit uxorem, ut tali affinitate roboratus Macedonum
received as-wife that by-such kinship strengthened of-the-Macedonians
regna firmaret. qua tempestate Dio storico dicente
the-kingdoms he-might-make-firm at-which time Dio the-historian saying
Philippus inopia pecuniae passus, Odyssitanam Moesiae
Philip want of-money having-suffered the-Odessitan of-Moesia
civitatem instructis copiis vastare deliberat, quae tunc
city with-equipped forces to-lay-waste deliberates which then
propter vicinam Thomes Gothis erat subiecta. unde et
because-of neighboring Tomi to-the-Goths was subject whence also

sacerdotes Gothorum illi qui pii vocabantur subito patefactis
the-priests of-the-Goths those who pious were-called suddenly thrown-open
portis cum citharis et vestibus candidis obviam egressi
the-gates with lyres and garments white to-meet-them having-gone-out
patriis diis, ut sibi propitii Macedonas repellerent,
to-the-ancestral gods that to-themselves propitious the-Macedonians they-might-repel
voce supplici modulantes. quos Macedones sic fiducialiter
with-voice suppliant chanting whom the-Macedonians so confidently
sibi occurrere contuentes stupiscent et, si dici fas est,
themselves to-meet beholding are-stunned and if to-be-said right it-is
ab inermibus terrentur armati. nec mora soluta acie
by the-unarmed are-terrified the-armed nor delay loosed the-battle-line
quam ad bellandum construxerant, non tantum ab urbis
which for fighting they-had-drawn-up not only from of-the-city
excidio abstinuerunt, verum etiam et quos foris
the-destruction they-abstained but also also those-whom outside
fuerant iure belli adepti, reddiderunt, foedusque inito
they-had-been by-right of-war having-gained they-returned and-a-treaty entered
ad sua reversi sunt. quod dolum post longum tempus
to their returned they-have which guile after long time
reminiscens egregius Gothorum ductor Sithalcus, cl
recalling the-excellent of-the-Goths leader Sitalces one-hundred-fifty
virorum milibus congregatis Atheniensibus intulit bellum
of-men thousands gathered on-the-Athenians brought war
adversus Perdiccam Macedoniae regem, quem Alexander apud
against Perdiccas of-Macedonia king whom Alexander at
Babylloniam ministri insidiis potans interitum Atheniensium
Babylon of-a-servant by-the-plots drinking death of-the-Athenians
principatui hereditario iure reliquerat successorem. magno
to-the-rule by-hereditary right had-left as-successor in-a-great
proelio cum hoc inito Gothi superiores inventi sunt, et
battle with him entered the-Goths superior found were and

sic pro iniuria, qua illi in Moesia dudum fecissent, isti
thus for the-injury which they in Moesia formerly had-done these
in Grecia discurrentes cunctam Macedoniam vastaverunt.
in Greece ranging-over all Macedonia laid-waste

Caput XI

XI · DICINEUS

Under King Buruista, Dicineus comes to the Goths and receives almost royal power. He teaches them ethics, physics, logic, and astronomy, gives them written laws, and makes their nobles priests called Pilleati, the rest Capillati. Caesar and his successors fail to subdue the Goths.

Dehinc regnante Gothis Buruista Dicineus venit in
thereafter reigning over-the-Goths Buruista Dicineus came into
Gothiam, quo tempore Romanorum Sylla potitus est
Gothia at-which time of-the-Romans Sulla gained has
principatum. quem Dicineum suscipiens Buruista dedit ei
the-rule whom Dicineus receiving Buruista gave to-him
pene regiam potestatem; cuius consilio Gothi Germanorum
almost royal power whose by-counsel the-Goths of-the-Germans
terras, quas nunc Franci optinent, populati sunt. Caesar
the-lands which now the-Franks hold ravaged have Caesar
vero, qui sibi primus omnium Romanum vindicavit
but who to-himself first of-all the-Roman claimed
imperium et pene omnem mundum suae dicioni subegit
empire and almost all the-world to-his dominion subjected
omniaque regna perdomuit, adeo ut extra nostro urbe in
and-all kingdoms thoroughly-subdued so that outside our world in
oceani sinu repositas insulas occuparet, et nec nomen
of-the-ocean the-bay placed the-islands he-occupied and not-even the-name

Romanorum auditu qui noverant, eos Romanis tributarios
of-the-Romans by-hearing who had-known them to-the-Romans tributary
faceret, Gothos tamen crebro pertemptans nequivit subicere.
he-made the-Goths yet often trying he-could-not to-subdue
Gaius Tiberius iam tertius regnat Romanis: Gothi tamen
Gaius Tiberius already the-third reigns over-the-Romans the-Goths yet
suo regno incolume perseverant. quibus hoc erat salubre, hoc
their kingdom unharmed persevere to-whom this was salutary this
adcommodum, hoc votivum, ut, quidquid Dicineus eorum
convenient this desired that whatever Dicineus their
consiliarius precepisset, hoc modis omnibus expetendum, hoc
counselor had-enjoined this in-ways all to-be-sought this
utile iudicantes, effectui manciparent. qui cernens eorum animos
useful judging to-effect they-should-deliver who seeing their minds
sibi in omnibus oboedire et naturalem eos habere ingenium,
to-himself in all-things to-obey and natural them to-have wit
omnem pene phylosophiam eos instruxit: erat namque huius
all almost philosophy them taught he-was for of-this
rei magister peritus. nam ethicam eos erudiens barbaricos
thing a-master skilled for in-ethics them instructing barbarous
mores conpescuit; fysicam tradens naturaliter propriis
ways he-restrained physics handing-down by-nature their-own
legibus vivere fecit, quas usque nunc conscriptas belagines
by-laws to-live made-them which up-to now written belagines
nuncupant; logicam instruens rationis eos supra ceteras gentes
they-call logic instructing in-reason them above the-other nations
fecit expertes; practicen ostendens in bonis actibus conversare
he-made skilled practice showing in good deeds to-live
suasit; theoreticen demonstrans signorum duodecem et per
he-persuaded theory demonstrating of-the-signs twelve and through
ea planetarum cursus omnemque astronomiam contemplari
them of-the-planets the-courses and-all astronomy to-contemplate

edocuit, et quomodo lunaris urbis augmentum sustinet
he-taught and how of-the-lunar orb increase it-sustains
aut patitur detrimentum, edixit, solisque globum igneum
or suffers loss he-declared and-of-the-sun the-globe fiery
quantum terreno orbe in mensura excedat, ostendit, aut quibus
how-much the-earthly orb in measure it-exceeds he-showed or by-what
nominibus vel quibus signis in polo caeli vergente et
names or by-what signs in the-pole of-heaven turning and
revergente trecentae quadraginta et sex stellae ab ortu in
returning three-hundred forty and six stars from the-rising to
occasu precipites ruant, exposuit. qualis erat, rogo, voluptas, ut
the-setting headlong rush he-expounded what was I-ask the-pleasure that
viri fortissimi, quando ab armis quantolumcumque vacassent,
men most-brave when from arms however-little they-had-been-free
doctrinis philosophicis inbuebantur? videris unum caeli
in-teachings philosophical were-steeped you-might-see one of-the-heaven
positionem, alium herbarum fruticumque explorare naturas,
the-position another of-herbs and-shrubs to-explore the-natures
istum lunae commoda incommodaque, illum solis labores
this-one of-the-moon the-advantages and-disadvantages that-one of-the-sun the-labors
adtendere et quomodo rotatu caeli raptos retro
to-attend-to and how by-the-rotation of-the-heaven carried back
reduci ad partem occiduam, qui ad orientalem plagam
to-be-brought to the-part western those-which to the-eastern region
ire festinant, ratione accepta quiescere. haec et alia nonnulla
to-go hasten the-reason received to-rest these and other not-a-few
Dicineus Gothis sua peritia tradens mirabilis apud eos
Dicineus to-the-Goths by-his skill handing-down wonderful among them
enituit, ut non solu mediocribus, immo et regibus imperaret.
shone-forth that not only to-the-middling nay also to-kings he-gave-commands
elegit namque ex eis tunc nobilissimos prudentioresque viros,
he-chose for from them then the-noblest and-more-prudent men

quos theologiam instruens, numina quaedam et sacella venerare
whom in-theology instructing divinities certain and shrines to-venerate
suasit fecitque sacerdotes, nomen illis pilleatorum
he-persuaded and-made-them priests the-name to-them of-the-Pilleati
contradens, ut reor, quia opertis capitibus tyaris, quos
handing-over as I-think because with-covered heads with-tiaras which
pilleos alio nomine nuncupamus, litabant: reliquam vero
caps by-another name we-call they-sacrificed the-rest but
gentem capillatos dicere iussit, quod nomen Gothi pro
of-the-nation the-long-haired to-call he-ordered which name the-Goths as
magno suscipientes adhuc odie suis cantionibus reminiscent.
great receiving still today in-their songs recall

Caput XII

XII · COMOSICUS, CORYLLUS, AND THE DANUBE

After Dicineus, Comosicus serves the Goths as king and priest, and Coryllus rules them forty years in Dacia. Jordanes describes old Dacia, ringed by mountains with two passes, its neighbors, and the Danube, the greatest river after the Nile, with its sixty tributaries.

Decedente vero Dicineo pene pari veneratione habuerunt
departing indeed Dicineus almost equal veneration they-held
Comosicum, quia nec inpar erat sollertiae. hic etenim et rex
Comosicus because not unequal he-was in-skill he for both king
illis et pontifex ob suam peritiam habebatur et in summa
to-them and pontiff for his skill was-held and in highest
iustitia populos iudicabat. et hoc rebus excedente humanis
justice the-peoples he-judged and he from-affairs departing human
Coryllus rex Gothorum in regno conscendit et per
Coryllus king of-the-Goths to the-kingdom ascended and through

quadraginta annos in Dacia suis gentibus imperavit. Daciam
forty years in Dacia over-his nations ruled Dacia
dico antiquam, quam nunc Gepidarum populi possidere
I-mean the-ancient which now of-the-Gepids the-peoples to-possess
noscuntur. quae patria in conspectu Moesiae sita trans
are-known which fatherland in sight of-Moesia placed beyond
Danubium corona montium cingitur, duos tantum habens
the-Danube with-a-crown of-mountains is-girded two only having
accessus, unum per Boutas, alterum per Tapas. haec Gotia,
approaches one through the-Boutae the-other through the-Tapae this Gothia
quam Daciam appellavere maiores, quae nunc, ut diximus,
which Dacia called the-ancestors which now as we-have-said
Gepidia dicitur, tunc ab oriente Aroxolani, ab occasu Iazyges, a
Gepidia is-called then on the-east the-Roxolani on the-west the-Iazyges on
septentrione Sarmatae et Basternae, a meridiae amnis Danubii
the-north the-Sarmatians and Bastarnae on the-south the-river Danube
terminabant. nam Iazyges ab Aroxolanis Aluta tantum fluvio
bounded for the-Iazyges from the-Roxolani by-the-Aluta only river
segregantur. et quia Danubii mentio facta est, non ab
are-separated and because of-the-Danube mention made has-been not off
re iudico pauca de tali amne egregio indicare. nam hic
the-point I-judge a-few-things about such a-river excellent to-indicate for this
in Alamannicis arvis exoriens sexaginta a fonte suo usque
in the-Alamannic fields rising sixty from source its all-the-way
ad ostia in Ponto mergentia per mille ducentorum
to the-mouths into the-Pontus sinking through one-thousand two-hundred
passuum milia hinc inde suscipiens flumina in modum
of-paces thousands on-this-side on-that receiving rivers in the-manner
spinae, quem costas ut cratem intexunt, omnino amplissimus
of-a-spine which ribs as a-wickerwork interweave altogether very-large
est. qui lingua Bessorum Hister vocatur, ducentis tantum
is which in-the-tongue of-the-Bessi Hister is-called two-hundred only

pedibus in altum aquam in alveo habet profundam. hic etenim
feet in depth water in its-bed it-has deep this for
amnis inter cetera flumina in magnum omnes superans praeter
river among the-other rivers in greatness all surpassing except
Nilum. haec de Danubio dixisse sufficiat. ad propositum
the-Nile these-things about the-Danube to-have-said may-suffice to the-purpose
vero, unde nos digressimus, iubante domino redeamus.
indeed whence we digressed helping the-Lord let-us-return

Caput XIII

XIII · THE ANSIS

Under Domitian the Goths break their treaty and kill the governor Oppius Sabinus. Domitian sends Fuscus across the Danube, but the Goths destroy his army. Proud of the victory, they call their leaders Ansis, demigods, whose genealogy Jordanes promises to give.

Longum namque post intervallum Domitiano imperatore
long for after an-interval with-Domitian emperor
regnante eiusque avaritiam metuentes foedus, quod dudum
reigning and-his avarice fearing the-treaty which long-ago
cum aliis principibus pepigerant, Gothi solventes, ripam
with other princes they-had-made the-Goths dissolving the-bank
Danubii iam longe possessam ab imperio Romano deletis
of-the-Danube already long possessed by the-empire Roman destroyed
militibus cum eorum ducibus vastaverunt. cui provinciae
the-soldiers with their generals laid-waste over-which province
tunc post Agrippam Oppius praeerat Savinus, Gothis
then after Agrippa Oppius was-set Sabinus over-the-Goths
autem Dorpaneus principatum agebat, quando bello commisso
moreover Dorpaneus the-rule held when war joined

Gothi, Romanos devictos, Oppii Savini caput abscisum, multa
the-Goths the-Romans conquered of-Oppius Sabinus the-head cut-off many
castella et civitates invadentes de parte imperatoris publice
forts and cities invading from the-side of-the-emperor publicly
depraedarunt. qua necessitate suorum Domitianus cum
plundered by-which distress of-his Domitian with
omni virtute sua Illyricum properavit et totius pene rei
all strength his to-Illyricum hastened and of-the-whole almost state
publicae militibus ductore Fusco praelato cum lectissimis
public with-soldiers as-commander Fuscus put-in-front with most-chosen
viris amnem Danubii consertis navibus ad instar pontis
men the-river Danube with-joined ships to the-likeness of-a-bridge
transmeare coegit super exercitum Dorpanei. tum Gothi
to-cross compelled against the-army of-Dorpaneus then the-Goths
haut segnes reperti arma capessunt primoque conflictu mox
not sluggish found arms take-up and-at-the-first encounter soon
Romanos devincunt, Fuscoque duce extincto divitias de
the-Romans conquer and-Fuscus the-general killed the-riches from
castris militum spoliant magnaque potiti per loca
the-camp of-the-soldiers they-plunder and-great having-gained through the-places
victoria iam proceres suos, quorum quasi fortuna vincebant,
victory now nobles their by-whose as-if fortune they-conquered
non puros homines, sed semideos id est Ansis vocaverunt.
not mere men but demigods that is Ansis called
quorum genealogia ut paucis percurram vel quis quo
of-whom the-genealogy that in-few I-may-run-through or who from-what
parente genitus est aut unde origo coepta, ubi finem
parent begotten was or whence the-origin begun where an-end
effecit, absque invidia, qui legis, vera dicentem ausculta.
it-made without envy you-who read the-truth telling hear

Caput XIV

XIV · THE GENEALOGY OF THE AMALS

Jordanes lists the Amal line from Gapt through Amal and Ostrogotha to Theodoric, Amalasuntha and her children, and traces her husband Eutharic's descent from Hermanaric. Matasuntha marries Vitiges and then Germanus, bearing a son. He returns to the Goths' division into Ostrogoths in the east and Visigoths in the west.

Horum ergo heroum, ut ipsi suis in fabulis referunt,
of-these therefore heroes as they-themselves their in tales relate
primus fuit Gapt, qui genuit Hulmul. Hulmul vero genuit
the-first was Gapt who begot Hulmul Hulmul but begot
Augis: at Augis genuit eum, qui dictus est Amal, a
Augis but Augis begot him who called was Amal from
quo et origo Amalorum decurrit: qui Amal genuit
whom also the-origin of-the-Amals runs-down which Amal begot
Hisarna: Hisarnis autem genuit Ostrogotha: Ostrogotha autem
Hisarna Hisarna moreover begot Ostrogotha Ostrogotha moreover
genuit Hunuil: Hunuil item genuit Athal: Athal genuit
begot Hunuil Hunuil likewise begot Athal Athal begot
Achiulf et Oduulf: Achiulf autem genuit Ansila et Ediulf,
Achiulf and Oduulf Achiulf moreover begot Ansila and Ediulf
Vultuulf et Hermenerig: Vultuulf vero genuit Valaravans:
Vultuulf and Hermanaric Vultuulf but begot Valaravans
Valaravans autem genuit Vinitharium: Vinitharius quoque
Valaravans moreover begot Vinitharius Vinitharius also
genuit Vandiliarium: Vandalarius genuit Thiudemer et Valamir
begot Vandalarius Vandalarius begot Thiudimer and Valamir
et Vidimir: Thiudimir genuit Theodericum: Theodericus
and Vidimer Thiudimir begot Theodoric Theodoric
genuit Amalasuentham: Amalasuentha genuit Athalaricum et
begot Amalasuntha Amalasuntha begot Athalaric and

Matesuentham de Eutharico viro suo, cuius affinitas generis
Matasuntha from Eutharic husband her whose kinship of-race
sic ad eam coniuncta est. nam supra dictus Hermanaricus,
thus to her joined was for above said Hermanaric
filius Achiulf, genuit Hunimundum: Hunimundus autem
son of-Achiulf begot Hunimund Hunimund moreover
genuit Thorismundo: Thorismund vero genuit Berimud:
begot Thorismund Thorismund but begot Berimud
Berimud autem genuit Vetericum: Vetericus item genuit
Berimud moreover begot Veteric Veteric likewise begot
Eutharicum, qui coniunctus Amalasuinthae genuit Athalaricum
Eutharic who joined to-Amalasuntha begot Athalaric
et Mathesuentam, mortuoque in puerilibus annis Athalarico
and Matasuntha and-having-died in childish years Athalaric
Mathesuenthae Vitigis est copulatus, de quo non suscepit
to-Matasuntha Vitiges was joined from whom not she-received
liberum; adductique simul a Belesario Constantinopolim:
a-child and-brought together by Belisarius to-Constantinople
et Vitigis rebus excedente humanis Germanus patricius
and Vitiges from-affairs departing human Germanus the-patrician
fratruelis Iustiniani imp. eam in conubio sumens patriciam
cousin of-Justinian the-emperor her in marriage taking a-patrician
ordinariam fecit; de qua et genuit filium item Germanum
ordinary made from whom also he-begot a-son likewise Germanus
nomine. Germano vero defuncto ipsa vidua perseverare
by-name Germanus but having-died she-herself a-widow to-remain
disponit. quomodo autem aut qualiter regnum Amalorum
arranges how moreover or in-what-way the-kingdom of-the-Amals
distructum est, loco suo, si dominus iubaverit, edicimus.
destroyed was in-place its if the-Lord shall-have-helped we-declare

Nunc autem ad id, unde digressum fecimus, redeamus
now moreover to that whence a-digression we-made let-us-return
doceamusque, quomodo ordo gentis, unde agimus, cursus
and-let-us-show how the-order of-the-nation of-which we-treat of-course
sui metam explevit. Ablabius enim storicus refert, quia
its the-goal fulfilled Ablabius for the-historian relates that
ibi super limbum Ponti, ubi eos diximus in Scythia
there above the-border of-the-Pontus where them we-have-said in Scythia
commanere, ibi pars eorum, qui orientali plaga tenebat,
to-dwell there part of-them which the-eastern region held
eisque praeerat Ostrogotha, utrum ab ipsius nomine, an
and-over-them was-set Ostrogotha whether from his name or
a loco, id est orientales, dicti sunt Ostrogothae, residui
from the-place that is eastern called were the-Ostrogoths the-rest
vero Vesegothae, id est a parte occidua.
but Visigoths that is from the-part western

Caput XV

XV · MAXIMINUS THE THRACIAN

Following Symmachus, Jordanes tells how Maximinus, son of a Goth and an Alan, wins Severus' notice by keeping pace on foot with his horse and throwing sixteen camp followers and seven soldiers. He rises through the ranks, refuses to serve Macrinus, and becomes emperor, persecuting Christians before he is killed at Aquileia.

Et quia iam superius diximus eos transito Danubio
and because already above we-have-said them crossed the-Danube
aliquantum temporis in Mysiam Thraciamque vixisse, ex
for-some of-time in Moesia and-Thrace to-have-lived from
eorum reliquiis fuit et Maximinus imp. post Alexandrum
their remnants was also Maximinus the-emperor after Alexander

Mamaeae. nam, ut dicit Symmachus in quinto suae historiae
of-Mamaea for as says Symmachus in the-fifth of-his history
libro, Maximinus, inquiens, Caesar mortuo Alexandro ab
book Maximinus saying Caesar having-died Alexander by
exercitu effectus est imp., ex infimis parentibus in Thracia
the-army made was emperor from lowest parents in Thrace
natus, a patre Gotho nomine Micca, matre Halana, quae
born of a-father Goth by-name Micca of-a-mother Alan who
Ababa dicebatur. is triennio regnans, dum in Christianos
Ababa was-called he for-three-years reigning while against the-Christians
arma commoveret, imperium simul et vitam amisit. nam
arms he-moved the-empire together and life lost for
hic Severo imp. regnante et natalis die filii
he Severus the-emperor reigning and of-the-birth on-the-day of-his-son
celebrante, post prima aetate et rusticana vita de pascuis
celebrating after the-first age and rustic life from the-pastures
in militiam venit. princeps si quidem militares dederat ludos;
into the-army came the-prince if indeed military had-given games
quod cernens Maximinus, quamvis semibarbarus aduliscens,
which seeing Maximinus although half-barbarian a-youth
propositis praemiis patria lingua petit ab imperatore,
set-forth the-prizes in-his-native tongue seeks from the-emperor
ut sibi luctandi cum expertis militibus licentiam daret.
that to-him of-wrestling with experienced soldiers leave he-should-give
Severus, ammodum miratus magnitudinem formae —
Severus greatly having-wondered-at the-greatness of-his-form
erat enim, ut fertur, statura eius procera ultra octo pedes —
he-was for as is-said in-stature his tall beyond eight feet
iussit eum lixis corporis nexu contendere, ne quid
ordered him with-camp-followers of-the-body in-grip to-contend lest any
a rudi homine militaribus viris eveniret iniuriae. tum
from a-rude man to-military men should-happen of-injury then

Maximinus sedecim lixas tanta felicitate prostravit, ut
Maximinus sixteen camp-followers with-such success laid-low that
vincendo singulos nullam sibi requiem per intercapidinem
in-conquering one-by-one no to-himself rest through an-interval
temporis daret. hic captis praemiis iussus in militiam mitti,
of-time he-gave he taken the-prizes ordered into the-army to-be-sent
primaque ei stipendia equestria fuere. tertia post haec
and-the-first to-him pay cavalry were on-the-third after this
die, cum imperator prodiret ad campum, vidit eum exultantem
day when the-emperor went-forth to the-field he-saw him exulting
more barbarico iussitque tribuno, ut eum cohercitum ad
in-manner barbarian and-ordered the-tribune that him restrained to
Romanam inbueret disciplinam. ille vero, ubi de se
the-Roman he-should-train discipline he but when about himself
intellexit principem loqui, accessit ad eum equitantemque
he-understood the-prince to-speak approached to him and-riding
praeire pedibus coepit. tum imperator equo ad lentum
to-go-before on-foot began then the-emperor his-horse to a-slow
cursum calcaribus incitato multos urbes huc atque illuc
course with-spurs urged many circles hither and thither
usque ad suam defatigationem variis deflexibus impedivit
all-the-way to his weariness with-various turnings hindered
ac deinde ait illi: 'num quid vis post cursum,
and then said to-him surely-not anything you-wish after the-running
Thracisce, luctare?' respondit: 'quantum libet, imperator'.
Thracian-boy to-wrestle he-answered as-much-as it-pleases O-emperor
ita Severus, ex equo desiliens, recentissimos militum cum
so Severus from his-horse leaping-down the-freshest of-the-soldiers with
eo decertari iussit. at ille septem valentissimos iuvenes ad
him to-contend ordered and he seven most-powerful youths to
terram elisit, ita ut antea nihil per intervalla respiraret,
the-ground dashed so that before not-at-all through the-intervals he-took-breath

solusque a Caesare et argenteis praemiis et aureo torque
and-alone by Caesar both with-silver prizes and with-a-golden torque
donatus est; iussus deinde inter stipatores degere corporis
presented was ordered then among the-guards to-live of-the-body
principalis. post haec sub Antonino Caracalla ordines duxit
princely after these-things under Antoninus Caracalla ranks he-led
ac saepe famam factis extendens plures militiae grados
and often his-fame by-deeds extending many of-military-service steps
centuriatumque strenuitatis suae praetium tulit. Macrino
and-the-centurionate of-energy his as-the-reward he-bore Macrinus
tamen postea in regno ingresso recusavit militiam
yet afterward into the-kingdom having-entered he-refused service
pene triennio, tribunatusque habens honore numquam se
almost for-three-years and-of-the-tribunate having the-honor never himself
oculis Macrini optulit, indignum ducens eius imperium,
to-the-eyes of-Macrinus offered unworthy deeming of-him the-empire
qui perpetrato facinus fuerat adquisitum. ad Eliogabalum
which by-a-perpetrated crime had-been acquired to Elagabalus
dehinc quasi ad Antonini filium revertens tribunatum suum
thereafter as to of-Antoninus the-son returning the-tribunate his
adiit et post hunc sub Alexandrum Mamaeae contra
he-entered and after him under Alexander of-Mamaea against
Parthos mirabiliter dimicavit. eoque Mogontiaco militari
the-Parthians wonderfully fought and-him at-Mainz in-a-military
tumulto occiso ipse exercitus electione absque senatus
tumult slain himself of-the-army by-the-choice without of-the-senate
consultu effectus est imperator, qui cuncta bona sua in
decree made was emperor who all good-things his in
persecutione Christianorum malo voto foedavit, occisusque
the-persecution of-the-Christians by-an-evil vow defiled and-slain
Aquileia a Puppione, regnum reliquid Philippo. quod
at-Aquileia by Pupienus the-kingdom left to-Philip which

nos idcirco huic nostro opusculo de Symmachi hystoria
we therefore to-this our little-work from of-Symmachus history
mutuavimus, quatenus gentem, unde agimus, ostenderemus
have-borrowed so-that the-nation of-which we-treat we-might-show
ad regni Romani fastigium usque venisse. ceterum
to of-the-kingdom Roman the-summit up-to to-have-come for-the-rest
causa exegit, ad id, unde digressimus, ordine redeamus.
the-cause has-driven to that whence we-digressed in-order let-us-return

Caput XVI

XVI · OSTROGOTHA AND MARCIANOPLE

When Philip stops their pay, the Goths under Ostrogotha ravage Moesia and Thrace, joined by Roman soldiers Decius has dismissed. Their generals besiege Marcianople and are bought off. Jordanes tells how Trajan named the city for his sister Marcia, after a girl's golden vessel sank in a spring there and rose again.

Nam gens ista mirum in modum in ea parte, qua
for nation that wonderful in manner in that part where
versabatur, id est Ponti in litore Scythiae soli, enituit,
it-dwelt that is of-the-Pontus on the-shore of-Scythia of-the-soil shone-forth
sine dubio tanta spatia tenens terrarum, tot sinos maris,
without doubt so-great extents holding of-lands so-many bays of-the-sea
tot fluminum cursus, sub cuius saepe dextera Vandalus
so-many of-rivers courses under whose often right-hand the-Vandal
iacuit, stetit sub praetio Marcomannus, Quadorum principes
lay stood under price the-Marcomannian of-the-Quadi the-princes
in servitute redacti sunt. Philippo namque ante dicto
into servitude brought were Philip for before said
regnante Romanis, qui solus ante Constantinum Christianus
reigning over-the-Romans who alone before Constantine a-Christian

cum Philippo idem filio fuit, cuius et secundo anno
with Philip the-same son was of-whom also in-the-second year
regni Roma millesimum annum explevit, Gothi, ut adsolet,
of-the-reign Rome thousandth year completed the-Goths as is-wont
subtracta sibi stipendia sua aegre ferentes, de
withdrawn from-themselves pay their with-ill-will bearing from
amicis effecti sunt inimici. nam quamvis remoti sub regibus
friends made were enemies for although apart under kings
viverent suis, rei publicae tamen Romanae foederati
they-lived their to-the-state public yet Roman confederate
erant et annua munera percipiebant. quid multa? transiens
they-were and annual gifts received what more passing-over
tunc Ostrogotha cum suis Danubio Moesiam Thraciasque
then Ostrogotha with his-men the-Danube Moesia and-the-Thracias
vastavit. ad quem rebellandum Decius senator a Philippo
laid-waste against whom to-be-fought Decius the-senator by Philip
dirigitur. qui veniens dum Getis nihil praevalet, milites
is-sent who coming when against-the-Getae nothing he-prevails the-soldiers
proprios exemptos a militia fecit vitae privatae degi, quasi
his-own exempted from service made a-life private to-spend as-if
eorum neglectu Gothi Danubium transfretassent, factaque
by-their negligence the-Goths the-Danube had-crossed and-made
ut puta in suis vindicta ad Philippum revertitur.
as you-would-think on his-men vengeance to Philip returns
milites vero videntes se post tot labores militia
the-soldiers but seeing themselves after so-many labors from-the-service
pulsos, indignati ad Ostrogothae regis Gothorum auxilium
driven indignant to of-Ostrogotha king of-the-Goths the-help
confugerunt. qui excipiens eos eorumque verbis accensus mox
fled who receiving them and-by-their words inflamed soon
tricenta milia suorum armata produxit ad bellum adhibitis
three-hundred thousand of-his-men armed brought-out to war joined

sibi Taifalis et Astringis nonnullis, sed et Carporum
to-himself the-Taifali and Astringi some but also of-the-Carpi
trea milia, genus hominum ad bella nimis expeditum, qui
three thousand a-race of-men for wars very ready who
saepe fuere Romanis infesti; quos tamen post haec
often were to-the-Romans hostile whom yet after these-things
imperante Dioclitiano et Maximiano Galerius Maximinus
ruling Diocletian and Maximian Galerius Maximinus
Caesar devicit et rei publicae Romanae subegit. his
the-Caesar conquered and to-the-state public Roman subjected to-these
ergo addens Gothos et Peucinos ab insula Peucis, quae
therefore adding the-Goths and Peucini from the-island Peuce which
in ostia Danubii Ponto mergentia iacet, Argaithum
at the-mouths of-the-Danube into-the-Pontus sinking lies Argaith
et Gunthericum nobilissimos suae gentis doctores praefecit.
and Guntheric the-noblest of-his nation as-leaders he-set-over
qui mox Danubium vadati et de secundo Moesiam
who soon the-Danube having-forded and for the-second-time Moesia
populati, Marcianopolim eiusdem patriae urbem famosam
having-ravaged Marcianople of-the-same fatherland the-city famous
metropolim adgrediuntur, diuque obsessam accepta pecunia
metropolis attack and-long besieged received money
ab his qui inerant reliquerunt. et quia Marcianopolim
from those who were-within left and because Marcianople
nominavimus, libet aliqua de eius situ breviter
we-have-named it-is-pleasing some-things about its site briefly
intimare. nam hanc urbem Traianus imperator hac re, ut
to-make-known for this city Trajan the-emperor for-this reason as
fertur, aedificavit, eo quod Marciae sororis suae puella, dum
is-said built in-that that of-Marcia sister his a-girl while
lavat in flumine illo qui nimii limpiditatis saporisque
she-washes in the-river that which of-excessive clearness and-flavor

in media urbe oritur Potami cognomento, exindeque
in the-middle of-the-city rises Potamus by-name and-thence
vellit aquam haurire, casu vas aureum quod ferebat in
wished water to-draw by-chance a-vessel golden which she-carried into
profundum decidit, metalli pondere praegravatum longeque
the-deep fell of-the-metal by-the-weight weighed-down and-long
post ab imis emersit; quod certe non erat usitatum
after from the-depths emerged which certainly not was usual
aut vacuum sorberi aut certe semel voratum undis
either empty to-be-swallowed or certainly once devoured with-the-waves
respuentibus enatare. his Traianus sub admiratione conpertis
spitting-it-out to-swim-up these Trajan in admiration learned
fontique numinis quoddam inesse credens conditam
and-in-the-spring of-a-divinity something to-be-in believing the-founded
civitatem germanae suae in nomine Marcianopolim nuncupavit.
city of-his-sister his in name Marcianople called

Caput XVII

XVII · THE GEPIDS

The Gepids, named from a Gothic word for slow, descend from the slower of the Goths' three ships. Their king Fastida, swollen by victories over the Burgundians, demands land or war of Ostrogotha. Ostrogotha refuses to yield land and defeats him at Galtis, and the Goths live in peace.

Abhinc ergo, ut dicebamus, post longam obsidionem accepto
from-then therefore as we-were-saying after long siege received
praemio ditatus Geta recessit ad propria. quem cernens
the-reward enriched the-Getan withdrew to his-own whom seeing
Gepidarum natio subito ubique vincentem praedisque
of-the-Gepids the-nation suddenly everywhere conquering and-with-plunder

ditatum, invidia ductus arma in parentibus movit. quomodo
enriched by-envy led arms against kinsmen moved how
vero Getae Gepidasque sint parentes si quaeris, paucis
indeed the-Getae and-Gepids are kinsmen if you-ask in-few
absolvam. meminisse debes me in initio de Scandzae
I-shall-finish to-remember you-ought me at the-beginning from of-Scandza
insulae gremio Gothos dixisse egressos cum Berich
island the-bosom the-Goths to-have-said having-gone-out with Berig
rege suo, tribus tantum navibus vectos ad ripam Oceani
king their in-three only ships carried to the-bank of-the-Ocean
citerioris, id est Gothiscandza. quarum trium una navis, ut
hither that is Gothiscandza of-which three one ship as
adsolet, tardior nancta nomen genti fertur dedisse;
is-wont slower having-proved the-name to-the-nation is-said to-have-given
nam lingua eorum pigra gepanta dicitur. hinc factum est, ut
for in-tongue their slow gepanta is-said hence done it-was that
paulatim et corruptae nomen eis ex convicio nasceretur
little-by-little and corrupted a-name for-them from a-taunt was-born
Gepidas. nam sine dubio ex Gothorum prosapie et hi
Gepids for without doubt from of-the-Goths the-stock also these
trahent originem; sed quia, ut dixi, gepanta pigrum aliquid
draw origin but because as I-said gepanta slow something
tardumque designat, pro gratuito convicio Gepidarum nomen
and-tardy designates for a-gratuitous taunt of-the-Gepids the-name
exortum est, quod nec ipsud credo falsissimum: sunt etenim
arose has which not itself I-believe most-false they-are for
tardioris ingenii et graviores corporum velocitate. hi ergo
of-slower wit and heavier of-bodies in-quickness these therefore
Gepidae tacti invidia, dum Spesis provincia commanerent
Gepids touched by-envy while in-the-Spesian province they-dwelt
in insulam Visclae amnis vadibus circumactam, quam
on the-island of-the-Vistula river by-shallows encircled which

patrio sermone dicebant Gepedoios. nunc eam, ut fertur,
in-their-native speech they-called Gepedoios now it as is-said
insulam gens Vividaria incolit ipsis ad meliores terras
the-island the-nation Vividaria inhabits they to better lands
meantibus. qui Vividarii ex diversis nationibus ac si in
moving who Vividarii from diverse nations as if into
unum asylum collecti sunt et gentem fecisse noscuntur.
one asylum gathered were and a-nation to-have-made are-known
ergo, ut dicebamus, Gepidarum rex Fastida quietam
therefore as we-were-saying of-the-Gepids the-king Fastida quiet
gentem excitans patrios fines per arma dilatavit. nam
the-nation rousing the-paternal borders by arms extended for
Burgundzones pene usque ad internicionem delevit aliasque
the-Burgundians almost all-the-way to annihilation destroyed and-other
nonnullas gentes perdomuit. Gothos quoque male provocans
some nations thoroughly-subdued the-Goths also wickedly provoking
consanguinitatis foedus prius inportuna concertatione violavit
of-kinship the-treaty first by-unseasonable contention violated
superba admodum elatione iactatus, crescenti populo dum
by-proud very elation tossed for-the-growing people while
terras coepit addere, incolas patrios reddidit rariores. is
lands he-began to-add the-inhabitants native he-rendered fewer he
ergo missis legatis ad Ostrogotham, cuius adhuc imperio
therefore sent envoys to Ostrogotha to-whose still rule
tam Ostrogothae quam Vesegothae, id est utrique eiusdem
as-well the-Ostrogoths as the-Visigoths that is both of-the-same
gentes populi, subiacebant, inclusum se montium quaeritans
nation the-peoples were-subject shut-in himself of-mountains complaining
asperitate silvarumque densitate constrictum, unum poscens
by-the-roughness and-of-forests by-the-density hemmed one demanding
e duobus, ut aut bellum sibi aut locorum suorum spatia
of two that either war for-him or of-places his extents

praepararet. tunc Ostrogotha rex Gothorum ut erat solidi
he-should-prepare then Ostrogotha king of-the-Goths as he-was of-steady
animi, respondit legatis bellum se quidem talem horrere
mind answered to-the-envoys war he indeed such to-dread
durumque fore et omnino scelestum armis confligere cum
and-hard to-be and altogether wicked with-arms to-clash with
propinquis, loca vero non cedere. quid multa? Gepidas
kinsmen places indeed not to-yield what more the-Gepids
in bella inruunt, contra quos, ne minor iudicaretur,
into war rush against whom lest less he-should-be-judged
movit et Ostrogotha procinctum, conveniuntque ad oppidum
moved also Ostrogotha his-army and-they-meet at the-town
Galtis, iuxta quod currit fluvius Auha, ibique magna
Galtis near which runs the-river Auha and-there with-great
partium virtute certatum est, quippe quos in se et
of-the-sides valor fought it-was since whom against themselves both
armorum et pugnandi similitudo commoverat; sed causa
of-arms and of-fighting the-likeness had-stirred but the-cause
melior vivacitasque ingenii iubit Gothos. inclinata denique
better and-liveliness of-wit helped the-Goths inclined finally
parte Gepidarum proelium nox diremit. tunc relicta suorum
the-part of-the-Gepids the-battle night broke-off then left of-his
strage Fastida rex Gepidarum properavit ad patriam,
the-slaughter Fastida king of-the-Gepids hastened to his-fatherland
tam pudendis obprobriis humiliatus, quam fuerat elationis
as by-shameful reproaches humbled as he-had-been by-elation
erectus. redeunt victores Gothi Gepidarum discessione
raised return the-victors the-Goths of-the-Gepids with-the-withdrawal
contenti, suaque in patria feliciter in pace versantur, usque
content and-their in fatherland happily in peace dwell all-the-way
dum eorum praevius existeret Ostrogotha.
until their leader was-alive Ostrogotha

Caput XVIII

XVIII · CNIVA AND THE DEATH OF DECIUS

Cniva divides his army, goes against Novae and, driven off by Gallus, against Nicopolis. He routs Decius at Beroea, takes Philippopolis and allies with its commander Priscus. Decius' son is killed by an arrow, and Decius, telling his men one soldier's loss is no loss to the state, attacks in a father's grief and is killed at Abrittus, where his altar is still shown.

Pos cuius decessum Cniva, exercitum dividens in duas
after whose departure Cniva the-army dividing into two
partes, nonnullos ad vastandum Moesiam dirigit, sciens eam
parts some to laying-waste Moesia sends knowing it
neglegentibus principibus defensoribus destitutam; ipse vero
by-negligent princes of-defenders destitute he but
cum lxx milibus ad Eusciam, id est Novas conscendit. unde
with seventy thousand to Euscia that is Novae climbs whence
a Gallo duce remotus Nicopolim accedit, quae iuxta Iatrum
by Gallus the-general removed to-Nicopolis approaches which near the-Iatrus
fluvium est constituta notissima; quam devictis Sarmatis
river is established most-famous which conquered the-Sarmatians
Traianus et fabricavit et appellavit Victoriae civitatem. ubi
Trajan both built and called of-Victory the-city where
Decio superveniente imperatore tandem Cniva in Hemi
Decius coming-up the-emperor at-last Cniva into of-Haemus
partibus, quae non longe aberant, recessit, unde apparatu
the-parts which not far were-distant withdrew whence the-apparatus
disposito Philippopolim ire festinans. cuius secessu Decius
arranged to-Philippopolis to-go hastening of-whose withdrawal Decius
imperator cognoscens et ipsius urbis ferre subsidium
the-emperor learning and to-that-very city to-bring help

gestiens iugum Hemi montis transacto ad Beroam venit.
longing the-ridge of-Haemus mountain crossed to Beroea came
ibique dum equos exercitumque lassum refoveret, ilico Cniva
and-there while the-horses and-the-army weary be-refreshed at-once Cniva
cum Gothis in modum fulminis ruit, vastatoque Romano
with the-Goths in the-manner of-a-thunderbolt rushes and-laid-waste the-Roman
exercitu imperatorem cum pauculis, qui fugere quiverant,
army the-emperor with very-few who to-flee had-been-able
ad Eusciam rursus trans Alpes in Mysia proturbavit, ubi
to Euscia again across the-Alps into Moesia drove where
tunc Gallus dux limitis cum plurima manu bellantium
then Gallus general of-the-frontier with very-large a-band of-warriors
morabatur; collectoque tam exinde quam de Usco exercitu,
stayed and-gathered as-well thence as from Oescus an-army
futuri belli se parat in aciae. Cniva vero diu obsessam
of-the-future war himself he-prepares in the-line Cniva but long besieged
invadit Philippopolim praedaque potitus Prisco duce
invades Philippopolis and-booty having-gained with-Priscus the-general
qui inerat sibi foederavit quasi cum Decio pugnaturum.
who was-within to-himself allied as-if with Decius about-to-fight
venientesque ad conflictum ilico Decii filium sagitta
and-coming to the-conflict at-once of-Decius the-son by-an-arrow
saucium crudeli funere confodiunt. quod pater animadvertens
wounded with-cruel death they-pierce which the-father noticing
licet ad confortandos animos militum fertur dixisse:
though for strengthening the-spirits of-the-soldiers is-reported to-have-said
'nemo tristetur: perditio unius militis non est rei
let-no-one be-sad the-loss of-one soldier not is of-the-state
publicae deminutio', tamen, paterno affectu non ferens,
public the-diminution yet with-paternal affection not bearing-it
hostes invadit, aut mortem aut ultionem fili exposcens,
the-enemies attacks either death or vengeance of-his-son demanding

veniensque ad Abritto Moesiae civitatem circumseptus a
and-coming to Abrittus of-Moesia city surrounded by
Gothis et ipse extinguitur imperii finem vitaeque terminum
the-Goths also himself is-destroyed of-empire an-end and-of-life the-limit
faciens. qui locus hodieque Decii ara dicitur, eo quod
making which place today of-Decius the-altar is-called for-this that
ibi ante pugnam mirabiliter idolis immolasset.
there before the-battle wonderfully to-idols he-had-sacrificed

Caput XIX

XIX · GALLUS, VOLUSIANUS, AND AEMILIANUS

Gallus and Volusianus reign amid a plague like one Jordanes himself has seen, described by Dionysius and Cyprian. Aemilianus seizes power in Moesia while the Goths ravage it, and soon dies. The two emperors make a treaty with the Goths before Gallienus takes power.

Defuncto tunc Decio Gallus et Volusianus regnum potiti
having-died then Decius Gallus and Volusianus the-kingdom gained
sunt Romanorum, quando et pestilens morbus, pene istius
have of-the-Romans when also a-pestilent disease almost of-this
necessitatis consimilis, quod nos ante hos novem annos experti
necessity very-like which we before these nine years experienced
sumus, faciem totius orbis foedavit, supra modum tamen
have the-face of-the-whole world defiled beyond measure yet
Alexandriam totiusque Aegypti loca devastans, Dionysio
Alexandria and-of-whole Egypt the-places laying-waste Dionysius
storico super hanc cladem lacrimaviliter exponente, quod
the-historian about this disaster lamentably setting-forth which
et noster conscribit venerabilis martyr Christi et episcopus
also our writes venerable martyr of-Christ and bishop

Cyprianus in libro, cuius titulus est ‘de mortalitate’. tunc et
Cyprian in the-book whose title is On Mortality then also
Emilianus quidam Gothis saepe ob principum neglegentiam
Aemilianus a-certain the-Goths often because-of of-the-princes negligence
Mysiam devastantibus, ut vidit licere nec a quoquam
Moesia laying-waste when he-saw it-to-be-allowed nor by anyone
sine magno rei publicae dispendio removeri, similiter
without great of-the-state public loss to-be-removed likewise
suae fortunae arbitratus posse venire, tyrannidem in Moesia
to-his fortune thinking to-be-able to-come tyranny in Moesia
arripuit omneque manu militari ascita coepit urbes et populos
seized and-all the-hand military taken-on began cities and peoples
devastare. contra quem intra paucos menses dum multitudo
to-lay-waste against whom within a-few months while the-multitude
apparatus adcresceret, non minimum incomodum rei
of-the-apparatus grew not the-least harm to-the-state
publicae parturivit; qui tamen in ipso pene nefario conatus
public he-brought-forth who yet at very almost wicked of-attempt
sui initio extinctus et vitam et imperium, quod inhiabat,
his the-beginning killed both life and the-empire which he-coveted
amisit: supra dicti vero Gallus et Volusianus imperatores,
lost above said indeed Gallus and Volusianus the-emperors
quamvis vix biennio in imperio perseverantes ab hac luce
although scarcely for-two-years in the-empire persevering from this light
migrarunt, tamen ipsud biennium, quod affuerunt, ubique
departed yet that-very two-years which they-were-present everywhere
pacati, ubique regnaverunt gratiosi, praeter quod unum eorum
peaceful everywhere reigned gracious except that one-thing to-their
fortunae reputatum est, id est generalis morbus, sed hoc ab
fortune imputed was that is the-general disease but this by
imperitis et calumniatoribus, qui vitam solent aliorum dente
the-ignorant and slanderers who the-life are-wont of-others with-tooth

maledico lacerare. hi ergo mox imperio adepti sunt, foedus
slandering to-tear these therefore as-soon-as the-empire gained had a-treaty
cum gente pepigerunt Gothorum. et nec longo intervallo
with the-nation they-made of-the-Goths and not long interval
utrisque regibus occumbentibus Gallienus arripuit principatum.
both kings falling Gallienus seized the-rule

Caput XX

XX · RAIDS IN ASIA AND THRACE

Under the dissolute Gallienus, Gothic leaders cross to Asia, burn the temple of Diana at Ephesus, and destroy Chalcedon. Returning, they lay waste Troy and Ilium again, then linger at the hot springs near Anchialus in Thrace.

Quod in omni lascivia resoluto Respa et Veduco Tharuaroque
who in all wantonness dissolute Respa and Veduc and-Thuruar
duces Gothorum sumptis navibus Asiam transierunt, fretum
generals of-the-Goths taken ships to-Asia crossed the-strait
Ellispontiacum transvecti, ubi multas eius provinciae civitates
of-the-Hellespont carried-across where many of-its province cities
populatas opinatissimum illud Ephesiae Dianae templum, quod
ravaged most-renowned that of-Ephesian Diana temple which
dudum dixeramus Amazonas condidisse, igne succendunt.
formerly we-had-said the-Amazons to-have-founded with-fire they-burn
partibusque Bithiniae delati Chalcedonam subverterunt, quam
and-to-the-parts of-Bithynia carried Chalcedon they-overthrew which
post Cornelius Abitus aliqua parte reparavit, quae hodieque,
afterward Cornelius Avitus in-some part repaired which today
quamvis regiae urbis vicinitate congaudeat, signa tamen
although of-the-royal city in-the-neighborhood it-rejoices the-signs yet

ruinarum suarum aliquanta ad indicium retinet posteritatis.
of-ruins its some for the-indication it-keeps of-posterity
hac ergo felicitate Gothi, qua intraverunt partibus Asiae,
with-this therefore good-fortune the-Goths with-which they-entered in-the-parts of-Asia
praedas spoliaque potiti, Hellispontiacum fretum retranseunt,
the-booty and-spoils having-gained the-Hellespontine strait cross-back
vastantes itinere suo Troiam Iliumque, quae vix a bello illo
laying-waste on-way their Troy and-Ilium which scarcely from war that
Agamemnoniaco quantulum se reparantes rursus hostili
of-Agamemnon a-little themselves repairing again by-the-hostile
mucrone deletae sunt. post Asiae ergo tale excidium Thracia
blade destroyed were after of-Asia therefore such destruction Thrace
eorum experta est feritatem. nam ibi ad radices Emi
their experienced has fierceness for there at the-roots of-Haemus
montis et mari vicinam Anchialos civitatem adgressi mox
mountain and to-the-sea near Anchialus the-city having-attacked soon
adeunt, urbem, quam dudum Sardanaphalus, rex Parthorum,
they-approach the-city which formerly Sardanapalus king of-the-Parthians
inter limbum maris et Emi radices locasset. ibi ergo
between the-border of-the-sea and of-Haemus the-roots had-placed there therefore
multis feruntur mansisse diebus aquarum calidarum delectati
many they-are-said to-have-stayed days of-the-waters warm delighted
lavacris, quae ad duodecimo miliario Anchialitanae civitatis
by-the-baths which at the-twelfth milestone of-the-Anchialitan city
sunt siti, ab imo suae fontis ignei scaturrientes, et inter
are placed from the-depth of-their spring fiery gushing and among
reliqua totius mundi thermarum innumerabilium loca
the-rest of-the-whole world of-hot-baths innumerable the-places
omnino precipua et ad sanitatem infirmorum efficacissima.
altogether foremost and for the-health of-the-sick most-effective

Caput XXI

XXI · ALLIES OF ROME

The Goths help Maximian against the Persians, and Rome finds its armies weak without them. They help Constantine defeat Licinius and build Constantinople, and give him forty thousand men, the foederati, under their kings Ariaric and Aoric, after whom Geberich reigns.

Exinde ergo ad proprias sedes regressi post haec a
thence therefore to their-own seats having-returned after these-things by
Maximiano imperatore rediguntur in auxilio Romanorum
Maximian the-emperor they-are-brought-back in aid of-the-Romans
contra Parthos rogati, ubi omnino datis auxiliariis fideliter
against the-Parthians asked where altogether given auxiliaries faithfully
decertati sunt. sed postquam Caesar Maximinus pene cum
fought they-have but after Caesar Maximinus almost with
eorum solacia Narseum regem Persarum Saporis magni
their support Narses king of-the-Persians of-Shapur the-great
nepotem fugasset eiusque omnes opes simulque
the-grandson had-put-to-flight and-his all wealth and-at-the-same-time
uxores et filios depraedasset Achillemque in Alexandria
wives and children had-plundered and-Achilles at Alexandria
Dioclitianus superasset et Maximianus Herculius in Africa
Diocletian had-overcome and Maximian Herculius in Africa
Quinquegentianos adtrivisset, pacem rei publicae nancti
the-Quinquegentiani had-worn-down peace for-the-state public having-got
coeperunt quasi Gothos neglegere. nam sine ipsos dudum
they-began as-if the-Goths to-neglect for without them formerly
contra quasvis gentes Romanus exercitus difficile decertatus
against any nations the-Roman army with-difficulty fought
est. apparet namque frequenter, quomodo invitabantur sic: ut
has it-appears for frequently how they-were-invited so that

et sub Constantino rogati sunt et contra cognatum eius
also under Constantine asked they-were and against kinsman his
Licinium arma tulerunt eumque devictum et in Thessalonica
Licinius arms bore and-him conquered and in Thessalonica
clausum privatum ab imperio Constantini victoris gladio
shut-up deprived of empire of-Constantine the-victor with-sword
trucidarunt. nam et ut famosissimam et Romae emulam in suo
slaughtered for also that the-most-famous and of-Rome rival in his
nomine conderet civitatem, Gothorum interfuit operatio, qui
name he-might-found city of-the-Goths was-present the-work who
foedus inito cum imperatore quadraginta suorum milia illi
a-treaty entered with the-emperor forty of-their thousand to-him
in solacio contra gentes varias obtulere; quorum et numerus
for support against nations various offered of-whom both the-number
et militia usque ad praesens in re publica nominatur,
and service all-the-way to the-present in the-state public is-named
id est foederati. tunc etenim sub Ariarici et Aorici regum
that is the-federates then for under of-Ariaric and of-Aoric kings
suorum florebant imperio. post quorum decessum successor
their they-flourished the-rule after whose death the-successor
regni extitit Geberich virtutis et nobilitatis eximius.
of-the-kingdom stood-forth Geberich of-valor and nobility outstanding

Caput XXII

XXII · GEBERICH DEFEATS THE VANDALS

Geberich attacks the Vandal king Visimar, of the Asding line, on the Marisia and destroys him with much of his people. The survivors beg land in Pannonia from Constantine, live there sixty years, and later, invited by Stilicho, move into Gaul.

Nam hic Hilderith patre natus, avo Ovida, proavo
for he from-Hilderith father born grandfather Ovida great-grandfather
Nidada, gloriam generis sui factis illustribus exaequavit.
Nidada the-glory of-race his with-deeds illustrious equaled
primitias regni sui mox in Vandalica gente extendere
the-first-fruits of-kingdom his soon upon the-Vandal nation to-extend
cupiens contra Visimar eorum rege qui Asdingorum stirpe,
desiring against Visimar their king who of-the-Asdingi from-the-stock
quod inter eos eminet genusque indicat bellicosissimum,
which among them is-eminent and-a-race indicates most-warlike
Deuxippo storico referente, qui eos ab Oceano ad nostrum
Dexippus the-historian relating who them from the-Ocean to our
limitem vix in anni spatio pervenisse testatur prae
frontier scarcely in of-a-year the-space to-have-arrived testifies because-of
nimia terrarum inmensitate. quo tempore erant in eo loco
excessive of-the-lands immensity at-which time they-were in that place
manentes, ubi nunc Gepidas sedent, iuxta flumina Marisia,
remaining where now the-Gepids sit near the-rivers Marisia
Miliare et Gilpil et Grisia, qui omnes supra dictos excedet.
Miliare and Gilpil and Grisia which all above said exceeds
erat namque illis tunc ab oriente Gothus, ab occidente
there-was for to-them then on the-east the-Goth on the-west
Marcomanus, a septentrione Hermundolus, a meridie Histrum,
the-Marcomannian on the-north the-Hermunduran on the-south the-Ister

qui et Danubius dicitur. hic ergo Vandalis commorantibus
which also Danube is-called here therefore the-Vandals dwelling
bellum indictum est a Geberich rege Gothorum ad litus
war declared was by Geberich king of-the-Goths at the-bank
praedicti amnis Marisiae, ubi nec diu certatum est ex
of-the-aforesaid river Marisia where not long fought it-was from
aequali, sed mox ipse rex Vandalorum Visimar magna
equal-terms but soon himself the-king of-the-Vandals Visimar great
parte cum gentis suae prosternitur. Geberich vero Gothorum
part with of-nation his is-laid-low Geberich but of-the-Goths
ductor eximius superatis depraedatisque Vandalis ad propria
leader outstanding overcome and-plundered the-Vandals to his-own
loca, unde exierat, remeavit. tunc perpauci Vandali, qui
places whence he-had-gone-out returned then very-few Vandals who
evasissent, collecta inbellium suorum manu, infortunata
had-escaped gathered of-the-unwarlike their a-band their-unlucky
patria relinquentes Pannoniam sibi a Constantino
fatherland leaving Pannonia for-themselves from Constantine
principe petierunt ibique per lx annos plus minus sedibus
the-prince sought and-there through sixty years more less seats
locatis imperatorum decretis ut incolae famularunt. unde
placed of-the-emperors by-the-decrees as inhabitants they-served whence
iam post longum ab Stiliconae mag. mil. et ex
then after long by Stilicho master of-the-soldiers and former
consule atque patricio invitati Gallias occupaverunt, ubi
consul and patrician invited the-Gauls they-occupied where
finitimos depraedantes non adeo fixas sedes habuerunt.
the-neighbors plundering not so-very fixed seats they-had

Caput XXIII

XXIII · HERMANARIC

Hermanaric, noblest of the Amals, subdues many northern peoples and is compared to Alexander. He conquers the swift Heruli, the numerous Venethi, who are the Sclaveni and Antes, and the Aesti, ruling all the nations of Scythia and Germany.

Nam Gothorum rege Geberich rebus humanis excedente
for of-the-Goths the-king Geberich from-affairs human departing
post temporis aliquod Hermanaricus nobilissimus Amalorum in
after of-time some Hermanaric the-noblest of-the-Amals in
regno successit, qui multas et bellicosissimas arctoi gentes
the-kingdom succeeded who many and most-warlike northern nations
perdomuit suisque parere legibus fecit. quem merito nonnulli
thoroughly-subdued and-to-his to-obey laws made whom rightly some
Alexandro Magno conparavere maiores. habebat si quidem
to-Alexander the-Great compared the-ancestors he-had if indeed
quos domuerat Golthescytha Thiudos Inaunxis Vasinabroncas
whom he-had-tamed the-Golthescytha Thiudos Inaunxis Vasinabroncae
Merens Mordens Imniscaris Rogas Tadzans Athaul Navego
Merens Mordens Imniscaris Rogas Tadzans Athaul Navego
Bubegenas Coldas. sed cum tantorum servitio clarus
Bubegenae Coldae but though of-so-many by-the-servitude famous
haberetur, non passus est nisi et gentem Herulorum,
he-was-held not he-suffered has unless also the-nation of-the-Heruli
quibus praeerat Halaricus, magna ex parte trucidatam
over-whom was-set Alaric great from part slaughtered
reliquam suae subegeret dicioni. nam praedicta gens, Ablavio
the-rest to-his he-subjected dominion for the-aforesaid nation Ablabius
istorico referente, iuxta Meotida palude inhabitans in locis
the-historian relating near Maeotis marsh dwelling in places

stagnantibus, quas Greci ele vocant, Eluri nominati sunt,
stagnant which the-Greeks hele call Eluri named were
gens quantum velox, eo amplius superbissima. nulla si
a-nation as-much-as swift by-so-much more most-proud none if
quidem erat tunc gens, quae non levem armaturam in acie
indeed was then nation which not light armament in battle-line
sua ex ipsis elegeret. sed quamvis velocitas eorum ab
its from them would-choose but though the-swiftness their from
aliis crebro bellantibus evagaret, Gothorum tamen stabilitate
others often warring wandered of-the-Goths yet to-the-steadiness
subiacuit et tarditati, fecitque causa fortunae, ut et
it-was-subject and to-the-slowness and-made the-cause of-fortune that also
ipsi inter reliquas gentes Getarum regi Hermanarico
they-themselves among the-other nations to-the-Getan king Hermanaric
servirent. post Herulorum cede item Hermanaricus in
should-serve after of-the-Heruli the-slaughter likewise Hermanaric against
Venethos arma commovit, qui, quamvis armis despecti, sed
the-Venethi arms moved who although in-arms despised yet
numerositate pollentes, primum resistere conabantur. sed nihil
in-numerousness powerful first to-resist tried but nothing
valet multitudo inbellium, praesertim ubi et deus permittit
avails a-multitude of-unwarlike especially where both God permits
et multitudo armata advenerit. nam hi, ut in initio
and a-multitude armed has-come for these as at the-beginning
expositionis vel catalogo gentium dicere coepimus, ab una
of-the-exposition or in-the-catalog of-nations to-say we-began from one
stirpe exorti, tria nunc nomina ediderunt, id est Venethi,
stock sprung three now names have-produced that is Venethi
Antes, Sclaveni; qui quamvis nunc, ita facientibus peccatis
Antes Sclaveni who although now thus causing-it sins
nostris, ubique deseviunt, tamen tunc omnes Hermanarici
our everywhere rage yet then all of-Hermanaric

imperiis servierunt. Aestorum quoque similiter nationem,
the-commands served of-the-Aesti also likewise the-nation
qui longissimam ripam Oceani Germanici insident, idem
who the-longest bank of-the-Ocean German occupy the-same
ipse prudentia et virtute subegit omnibusque Scythiae et
himself by-prudence and valor subjected and-over-all of-Scythia and
Germaniae nationibus ac si propriis lavoribus imperavit.
of-Germany the-nations as if his-own labors he-ruled

Caput XXIV

XXIV · THE COMING OF THE HUNS

The Huns are born of witches Filimer drove into the wilderness and of unclean spirits. Following a doe across the Maeotic marsh, they find Scythia and subdue its peoples by their terrible look and cruelty. The Rosomoni wound Hermanaric to avenge their sister, and he dies at 110 as the Huns attack.

Post autem non longi temporis intervallo, ut refert Orosius,
after moreover not of-long time an-interval as relates Orosius
Hunnorum gens omni ferocitate atrocior exarsit in
of-the-Huns the-nation than-all ferocity more-savage blazed against
Gothos. nam hos, ut refert antiquitas, ita extitisse
the-Goths for these as relates antiquity so to-have-arisen
conperimus. Filimer rex Gothorum et Gadarici magni filius
we-have-learned Filimer king of-the-Goths and of-Gadaric the-great son
qui post egressu Scandzae insulae iam quinto loco tenens
who after the-going-out of-Scandza island now in-the-fifth place holding
principatum Getarum, qui et terras Scythicas cum sua gente
the-rule of-the-Getae who also the-lands Scythian with his nation
introisse superius a nobis dictum est, repperit in populo
to-have-entered above by us said has-been found in people

suo quasdam magas mulieres, quas patrio sermone Haliurunnas
his certain witch women whom in-native speech Haliurunnae
is ipse cognominat, easque habens suspectas de medio sui
he himself names and-them holding suspect from the-midst of-himself
proturbat longeque ab exercitu suo fugatas in solitudinem
drives and-far from the-army his put-to-flight into the-wilderness
coegit errare. quas spiritus inmundi per herimum vagantes
compelled to-wander whom spirits unclean through the-desert wandering
dum vidissent et eorum conplexibus in coitu miscuissent,
when they-had-seen and their in-embraces in intercourse had-mingled
genus hoc ferocissimum ediderunt, quae fuit primum inter
race this most-fierce produced which was first among
paludes, minutum tetrum atque exile quasi hominum genus
the-marshes stunted foul and puny as-if of-men a-race
nec alia voce notum nisi quod humani sermonis imaginem
nor by-other voice known except that of-human speech the-likeness
adsignabat. tali igitur Hunni stirpe creati Gothorum finibus
it-bore by-such therefore the-Huns stock created of-the-Goths to-the-borders
advenerunt. quorum natio saeva, ut Priscus istoricus refert,
came whose nation savage as Priscus the-historian relates
Meotida palude ulteriore ripa insidens, venationi tantum
Maeotis marsh on-the-farther bank dwelling in-hunting only
nec alio labore experta, nisi quod, postquam crevisset in
nor in-other labor skilled except that after it-had-grown into
populis, fraudibus et rapinis vicinarum gentium quiete
peoples by-frauds and by-robberies of-the-neighboring nations the-quiet
conturbans. huius ergo gentis, ut adsolet, venatores, dum in
disturbing of-this therefore nation as is-wont hunters while on
interioris Meotidae ripam venationes inquirent, animadvertunt,
of-inner Maeotis the-bank game they-seek notice
quomodo ex inproviso cerva se illis optulit ingressaque
how from the-unforeseen a-doe herself to-them offered and-having-entered

paludem nunc progrediens nunc subsistens index viae se
the-marsh now advancing now stopping as-guide of-the-way herself
tribuit. quam secuti venatores paludem Meotidam, quem
gave whom having-followed the-hunters the-marsh Maeotis which
inpervium ut pelagus aestimant, pedibus transierunt. mox
impassable as the-sea they-think on-foot crossed soon
quoque Scythica terra ignotis apparuit, cerva disparuit.
also the-Scythian land to-the-ignorant appeared the-doe disappeared
quod, credo, spiritus illi, unde progeniem trahunt, ad
which I-believe the-spirits those whence offspring they-draw to
Scytharum invidia id egerunt. illi vero, qui praeter Meotidam
of-the-Scythians envy this did they but who beyond Maeotis
alium mundum esse paenitus ignorabant, admiratione ducti
another world to-be wholly were-ignorant by-admiration led
terrae Scythicae et, ut sunt sollertes, iter illud nullae
of-the-land Scythian and as they-are shrewd the-way that to-no
ante aetati notissimum divinitus sibi ostensum rati,
before age most-known by-divine-will to-themselves shown thinking
ad suos redeunt, rei gestum edocent, Scythiam laudant
to their return of-the-thing done they-inform Scythia they-praise
persuasaque gente sua via, qua cerva indice dedicerant,
and-persuaded nation their by-the-way which with-the-doe as-guide they-had-learned
ad Scythiam properant, et quantoscumque prius in ingressu
to Scythia hasten and as-many-as first in the-entry
Scytharum habuerunt, litavere victoriae, reliquos perdomitos
of-the-Scythians they-took they-sacrificed to-victory the-rest thoroughly-subdued
subegerunt. nam mox ingentem illam paludem transierunt,
they-subjected for as-soon-as huge that marsh they-crossed
ilico Alpidzuros, Alcildzuros, Itimaros, Tuncarsos et Boiscos,
at-once the-Alpidzuri Alcildzuri Itimari Tuncarsi and Boisci
qui ripae istius Scythiae insedebant, quasi quaedam turbo
who the-bank of-that Scythia occupied as-if a-certain whirlwind

gentium rapuerunt. Halanos quoque pugna sibi pares,
of-nations they-snatched the-Alans also in-battle to-themselves equal
sed humanitate, victu formaque dissimiles, frequenti certamine
but in-humanity in-food and-in-form unlike by-frequent combat
fatigantes, subiugaverunt. nam et quos bello forsitan minime
wearying subjugated for also whom in-war perhaps not-at-all
superabant, vultus sui terrore nimium pavorem ingerentes,
they-overcame of-face their by-the-terror excessive dread inspiring
terribilitate fugabant, eo quod erat eis species
by-their-terribleness they-put-to-flight for-this that was in-them an-appearance
pavenda nigridinis et velud quaedam, si dici fas est,
to-be-dreaded of-blackness and like a-certain if to-be-said right it-is
informis offa, non facies, habensque magis puncta quam
shapeless lump not a-face and-having rather points than
lumina. quorum animi fiducia turvus prodet aspectus, qui
eyes of-whom of-the-mind confidence the-grim betrays look who
etiam in pignora sua primo die nata desaeviunt. nam
even against offspring their on-the-first day born rage for
maribus ferro genas secant, ut ante quam lactis nutrimenta
on-the-males with-iron the-cheeks they-cut that before than of-milk the-nourishment
percipiant, vulneris cogantur subire tolerantiam. hinc
they-receive of-the-wound they-may-be-forced to-undergo the-endurance hence
inberbes senescunt et sine venustate efoebi sunt, quia
beardless they-grow-old and without comeliness youths are because
facies ferro sulcata tempestivam pilorum gratiam cicatricis
the-face with-iron furrowed the-seasonable of-hair grace by-the-scar
absumit. exigui quidem forma, sed argutis motibus expediti
consumes small indeed in-form but in-nimble movements quick
et ad equitandum promptissimi, scapulis latis, et ad arcos
and for riding most-ready with-shoulders broad and for bows

sagittasque parati firmis cervicibus et superbia semper erecti.
and-arrows prepared with-firm necks and in-pride always erect
hi vero sub hominum figura vivunt beluina saevitia.
these but under of-men the-shape live with-beastlike savagery
Quod genus expeditissimum multarumque nationum grassatorem
which race most-quick and-of-many nations the-ravager
Getae ut viderunt, paviscunt, suoque cum rege deliberant,
the-Getae when they-saw they-panic and-their with king deliberate
qualiter tali se hoste subducant. nam Hermanaricus,
how from-such themselves an-enemy they-may-withdraw for Hermanaric
rex Gothorum, licet, ut superius retulimus, multarum gentium
king of-the-Goths though as above we-related of-many nations
extiterat triumphator, de Hunnorum tamen adventu dum
had-stood-forth the-triumpher about of-the-Huns yet the-arrival while
cogitat, Rosomonorum gens infida, quae tunc inter alias
he-thinks of-the-Rosomoni the-nation faithless which then among others
illi famulatum exhibebat, tali eum nanciscitur occasione
to-him service rendered by-such him obtains an-occasion
decipere. dum enim quandam mulierem Sunilda nomine
to-deceive while for a-certain woman Sunilda by-name
ex gente memorata pro mariti fraudulento discessu
of the-nation mentioned for of-her-husband fraudulent departure
rex furore commotus equis ferocibus inligatam incitatisque
the-king by-fury moved to-horses fierce bound and-urged
cursibus per diversa divelli praecipisset, fratres eius
in-courses into different-directions to-be-torn-apart had-ordered the-brothers her
Sarus et Ammius, germanae obitum vindicantes, Hermanarici
Sarus and Ammius of-their-sister the-death avenging of-Hermanaric
latus ferro petierunt; quo vulnere saucius egram vitam
the-side with-the-sword sought by-which wound wounded a-sick life
corporis inbecillitate contraxit. quam adversam eius valitudinem
of-the-body by-the-weakness he-drew-out which adverse his health

captans Balamber rex Hunnorum in Ostrogotharum parte
seizing-upon Balamber king of-the-Huns into of-the-Ostrogoths the-part
movit procinctum, a quorum societate iam Vesegothae
moved his-army from whose fellowship already the-Visigoths
quadam inter se intentione seiuncti habebantur. inter
by-a-certain among themselves design separated were-held among
haec Hermanaricus tam vulneris dolore quam etiam
these-things Hermanaric as-much of-the-wound pain as also
Hunnorum incursionibus non ferens grandevus et plenus
of-the-Huns the-incursions not bearing aged and full
dierum centesimo decimo anno vitae suae defunctus est. cuius
of-days in-the-hundredth tenth year of-life his died has whose
mortis occasio dedit Hunnis praevalere in Gothis illis, quos
death the-occasion gave to-the-Huns to-prevail over the-Goths those whom
dixeramus orientali plaga sedere et Ostrogothas nuncupari.
we-had-said in-the-eastern region to-sit and Ostrogoths to-be-named

Caput XXV

XXV · THE VISIGOTHS BECOME ARIANS

The Visigoths ask Valens for land in Thrace or Moesia, promising to become Christians. Valens, an Arian, sends Arian preachers, and the Visigoths, now Arians, spread the heresy to the Ostrogoths and Gepids. They cross the Danube and settle in Dacia, Moesia, and Thrace.

Vesegothae, id est illi alii eorum socii et occidui soli
the-Visigoths that is those other their allies and of-the-western soil
cultores, metu parentum exterriti, quidnam de se
the-tillers by-the-fear of-their-kinsmen terrified what about themselves
propter gentem Hunnorum deliberarent, ambigebant, diuque
because-of the-nation of-the-Huns they-should-decide were-uncertain and-long

cogitantes tandem communi placito legatos in Romania
thinking at-last by-common decision envoys into Romania
direxerunt ad Valentem imperatorem fratrem Valentiniani
sent to Valens the-emperor brother of-Valentinian
imperatoris senioris, ut, partem Thraciae sive Moesiae si
of-the-emperor the-elder that part of-Thrace or of-Moesia if
illis traderet ad colendum, eius se legibus eiusque vivere
to-them he-handed for tilling to-his themselves laws and-to-his to-live
imperiis subderentur. et, ut fides uberior illis haberetur,
commands they-should-subject and that faith fuller to-them might-be-held
promittunt se, si doctores linguae suae donaverit, fieri
they-promise themselves if teachers of-tongue their he-should-give to-become
Christianos. quod Valens conperto mox gratulabundus annuit,
Christians which Valens learned soon rejoicing granted
quod ultro petere voluisset, susceptosque in partibus
which of-his-own-accord to-seek he-would-have-wished and-received in the-parts
Moesiae Getas quasi murum regni sui contra citeras statuit
of-Moesia the-Getae as-if a-wall of-kingdom his against the-other set
gentes. et quia tunc Valens imperator Arrianorum perfidia
nations and because then Valens the-emperor of-the-Arians by-perfidy
saucius nostrarum partium omnes ecclesias obturasset, suae parti
wounded of-our party all the-churches had-closed of-his party
fautores ad illos diriget praedicatores, qui venientes rudibus
supporters to them sends as-preachers who coming to-the-rude
et ignaris ilico perfidiae suae virus infundunt. sic quoque
and ignorant at-once of-perfidy their the-poison pour-in so also
Vesegothae a Valente imperatore Arriani potius quam Christiani
the-Visigoths by Valens the-emperor Arians rather than Christians
effecti. de cetero tam Ostrogothis quam Gepidis parentibus
made of the-rest as-well to-the-Ostrogoths as to-the-Gepids kinsmen
suis pro affectionis gratia euangelizantes huius perfidiae
their for of-affection the-sake preaching of-this perfidy

culturam edocentes, omnem ubique linguae huius nationem
the-worship teaching every everywhere of-tongue this nation
ad culturam huius sectae invitaverunt. ipsi quoque,
to the-worship of-this sect they-invited they-themselves also
ut dictum est, Danubio transmeantes Daciam ripensem,
as said it-has-been the-Danube crossing Dacia Riparian
Moesiam Thraciasque permisso principis insederunt.
Moesia and-the-Thracias by-the-permission of-the-prince occupied

Caput XXVI

XXVI · ADRIANOPLE

Starving, the Goths are forced by Lupicinus and Maximus to sell their children for dog meat. Lupicinus plots to kill Fritigern at a banquet; Fritigern escapes and the Goths rise. They defeat Valens near Adrianople and burn him in a hut, a judgment, Jordanes says, for leading them into heresy.

Quibus evenit, ut adsolet genti, necdum bene loco fundatis,
to-whom befell as is-wont to-a-nation not-yet well in-place established
penuria famis, coeperuntque primates eorum et duces, qui
a-want of-famine and-began the-chiefs their and generals who
regum vice illis praeerant, id est Fritigernus, Alatheus
of-kings in-place over-them were-set that is Fritigern Alatheus
et Safrac, exercitus inopiam condolere negotiationemque a
and Safrac of-the-army the-want to-lament and-trade from
Lupicino Maximoque Romanorum ducum expetere. verum
Lupicinus and-Maximus of-the-Romans generals to-seek but
quid non auri sacra fames compellit adquiescere? coeperunt
what not for-gold the-accursed hunger compels to-agree began
duces avaritia compellente non solum ovium bovumque
the-generals avarice compelling not only of-sheep and-of-oxen

carnes, verum etiam canum et inmundorum animalium
the-flesh but also of-dogs and of-unclean animals
morticina eis pro magno contradere, adeo, ut quemlibet
the-carcasses to-them for great to-sell so that any
mancipium in uno pane aut decem libris carne mercarent.
slave for one loaf or ten pounds of-flesh they-bought
sed iam mancipiis et supellectile deficientibus filios eorum
but now slaves and furniture failing the-sons their
avarus mercator victus necessitate exposcit. haut enim secus
the-greedy merchant of-food by-necessity demands not for otherwise
parentes faciunt salute suorum pignorum providentes:
parents do for-the-safety of-their pledges providing
faciliusque deliberant ingenuitatem perire quam vitam, dum
and-more-easily they-decide freedom to-perish than life while
misericorditer alendus quis venditur quam moriturus servatur.
mercifully to-be-fed one is-sold than about-to-die is-kept
contigit etenim illo sub tempore erumnoso, Lupicinus
it-happened for in-that at time distressful Lupicinus
ut ductor Romanorum Fritigernum Gothorum regulum in
that leader of-the-Romans Fritigern of-the-Goths the-kinglet to
convivio invitaret dolumque ei, ut post exitus docuit,
a-banquet invited and-guile against-him as afterward the-outcome showed
moliretur. sed Fritigernus dolum nescius cum paucorum
was-contriving but Fritigern of-the-guile ignorant with of-a-few
comitatu ad convivium veniens, dum intus in preturio
a-retinue to the-banquet coming while within in the-praetorium
aepularetur, clamorem miserorum morientium audiret: nam
he-feasted the-clamor of-the-wretched dying he-heard for
in alia parte socios eius reclausos dum milites ducis
in another part the-comrades his shut-in while the-soldiers of-the-general
sui iussu trucidare conarentur et vox morientium duriter
their by-order to-slaughter were-trying and the-voice of-the-dying harshly

emissa iam suspectis auribus intonaret, ilico aperto dolo
sent-forth now on-suspicious ears thundered at-once laid-open the-guile
cognoscens Fritigernus evaginato gladio e convivio non sine
recognizing Fritigern unsheathed sword from the-banquet not without
magna temeritate velocitateque egreditur suosque socios ab
great rashness and-speed goes-out and-his comrades from
imminenti morte ereptos ad necem Romanorum instigat.
impending death rescued to the-slaughter of-the-Romans urges
qui nancti occasione votiva elegerunt viri fortissimi in bello
who having-got the-occasion desired chose men most-brave in war
magis quam in fame deficere, et ilico in ducum Lupicini
rather than in famine to-fail and at-once to of-the-generals Lupicinus
et Maximi armantur occisione. illa namque dies Gothorum
and Maximus are-armed the-killing that for day of-the-Goths
famem Romanorumque securitatem ademit, coeperuntque
the-famine and-of-the-Romans the-security took-away and-began
Gothi iam non ut advenae et peregrini, sed ut cives et
the-Goths now not as newcomers and strangers but as citizens and
domini possessoribus imperare totasque partes septentrionales
lords over-the-possessors to-rule and-the-whole parts northern
usque ad Danubium suo iuri tenere. quod conperiens in
all-the-way to the-Danube by-their right to-hold which learning in
Antiochia Valens imperator mox armato exercitu in Thraciarum
Antioch Valens the-emperor soon armed the-army into of-the-Thracias
partes egreditur; ubi lacrimabile bello commisso vincentibus
the-parts goes-out where a-lamentable war joined conquering
Gothis in quodam praedio iuxta Adrianopolim saucius ipse
the-Goths in a-certain estate near Adrianople wounded he-himself
refugiens ignorantibusque, quod imperator in tam vili casula
fleeing and-not-knowing that the-emperor in so mean a-little-hut
delitisceret, Gothis, ignemque, ut adsolet saeviente inimico,
lurked the-Goths and-fire as is-wont raging the-enemy

supposito, cum regali pompa crematus est, haut secus quam
set-under with royal pomp burned was not otherwise than
dei prorsus iudicio, ut ab ipsis igni conbureretur, quos
of-God plainly by-judgment that by them with-fire he-should-be-burned whom
ipse vera fide petentibus in perfidia declinasset ignemque
he-himself the-true faith seeking into perfidy had-turned-aside and-the-fire
caritatis ad gehennae ignem detorsisset. quo tempore
of-charity to of-hell the-fire had-twisted at-which time
Vesegothae Thracias Daciaque ripense post tanti gloria
the-Visigoths the-Thracias and-Dacia Riparian after of-so-great the-glory
tropaei tamquam solum genitalem potiti coeperunt incolere.
of-a-trophy as-if the-soil native having-gained began to-inhabit

Caput XXVII

XXVII · THEODOSIUS AND GRATIAN

Theodosius restores Roman discipline and drives the Goths from Thrace, but falls ill. The Goths divide, Fritigern raiding Thessaly and Greece, Alatheus and Safrac Pannonia. Gratian wins them over with gifts and a treaty.

Sed Theodosio ab Spania Gratianus imperator electo et
but Theodosius from Spain by-Gratian the-emperor chosen and
in orientali principatu loco Valentis patrui subrogato,
in the-eastern rule in-the-place of-Valens his-uncle substituted
militaremque disciplinam mox in meliori statu reposita
and-military discipline soon in a-better state restored
ignavia priorum principum et desidia exclusa Gothus
the-cowardice of-former princes and sloth shut-out the-Goth
ut sensit, pertimuit. nam inperator acri omnino ingenii
when he-perceived feared for the-emperor of-keen altogether wit

virtuteque et consilio clarus dum praeceptorum saeveritate
and-in-valor and counsel famous while of-his-precepts by-the-severity
et liberalitate blanditiaque sua remissum exercitum ad
and by-liberality and-blandishment his the-slack army to
fortia provocaret. at vero ubi milites principe meliore
brave-deeds he-was-rousing but indeed when the-soldiers the-prince better
mutato fiduciam acceperunt, Gothos impetere temptant
changed confidence received the-Goths to-attack they-try
eosque Thraciae finibus pellunt. sed Theodosio principe
and-them of-Thrace from-the-borders drive but Theodosius the-prince
pene tunc usque ad disperationem egrotanti datur iterum
almost then all-the-way to despair falling-sick is-given again
Gothis audacia divisoque exercitu Fritigernus ad Thessaliam
to-the-Goths boldness and-divided the-army Fritigern to Thessaly
praedandam, Epiros et Achaiam digressus est, Alatheus vero
to-be-plundered Epirus and Achaea departed has Alatheus but
et Safrac cum residuis copiis Pannoniam petierunt. quod
and Safrac with the-remaining forces Pannonia sought which
cum Gratianus imperator, qui tunc a Roma in Gallis
when Gratian the-emperor who then from Rome into the-Gauls
ob incursione Vandalorum recesserat, conperisset, quia
because-of the-incursion of-the-Vandals had-withdrawn had-learned that
Theodosio fatali desperatione succumbente Gothi maius
Theodosius by-fatal despair succumbing the-Goths more
saevirent, mox ad eos collecto venit exercitu, nec tamen fretus
were-raging soon to them gathered he-came an-army nor yet trusting
in armis, sed gratia eos muneribusque victurus, pacemque,
in arms but by-favor them and-gifts about-to-conquer and-peace
victualia illis concedens, cum ipsis inito foedere fecit.
provisions to-them granting with them entered a-treaty he-made

Caput XXVIII

XXVIII · ATHANARIC IN CONSTANTINOPLE

Recovered, Theodosius accepts the peace and invites Athanaric to Constantinople, where the king marvels at the city and calls the emperor a god on earth. Athanaric dies there, and Theodosius gives him a royal funeral. His army serves Rome as foederati against Eugenius.

Ubi vero post haec Theodosius convaluit imperator
when indeed after these-things Theodosius recovered the-emperor
repperitque cum Gothis et Romanis Gratiano imperatore
and-found with the-Goths and the-Romans Gratian the-emperor
pepigisse quod ipse optaverat, admodum grato animo
to-have-made-terms which he-himself had-wished with-very grateful mind
ferens et ipse in hac pace consensit, Aithanaricoque
bearing-it and himself in this peace agreed and-Athanaric
rege, qui tunc Fritigerno successerat, datis sibi muneribus
the-king who then to-Fritigern had-succeeded given to-him gifts
sociavit moribusque suis benignissimis ad se eum in
he-allied and-by-manners his most-kindly to himself him into
Constantinopolim accedere invitavit. qui omnino libenter
Constantinople to-come invited who altogether gladly
adquiescens regia urbe ingressus est miransque: 'en', inquid,
agreeing the-royal city entered has and-marveling lo he-says
'cerno, quod saepe incredulus audiebam', famam videlicet
I-see what often unbelieving I-heard the-fame namely
tantae urbis; et huc illuc oculos volvens nunc situm urbis
of-so-great a-city and here there his-eyes turning now the-site of-the-city
commeatuque navium, nunc moenia clara prospectans miratur,
and-the-traffic of-ships now the-walls famous looking-at he-marvels
populosque diversarum gentium quasi fonte in uno e
and-the-peoples of-diverse nations as-if from-a-spring in one from

diversis partibus scaturriente unda, sic quoque milite ordinato
diverse parts gushing the-wave so also the-soldiery arranged
aspiciens: 'deus', inquit, 'sine dubio terrenus est imperator et
beholding a-god he-said without doubt earthly is the-emperor and
quisquis adversus eum manu moverit, ipse sui sanguinis
whoever against him a-hand shall-have-moved he-himself of-his blood
reus existit'. in tali ergo admiratione maioreque a principe
guilty stands in such therefore admiration and-by-greater from the-prince
honore suffultus paucis mensibus interiectis ab hac luce
honor supported a-few months interposed from this light
migravit. quem princeps affectionis gratia pene plus mortuum
departed whom the-prince of-affection for-the-sake almost more dead
quam vivum honorans dignae tradidit sepulturae, ipse quoque
than living honoring to-worthy handed burial himself also
in exequiis feretro eius praeiens. defuncto ergo Aithanarico
in the-obsequies the-bier his going-before having-died therefore Athanaric
cunctus eius exercitus in servitio Theodosii imperatoris
whole his army in the-service of-Theodosius of-the-emperor
perdurans Romano se imperio subdens cum milite velut
continuing to-the-Roman itself empire subjecting with the-soldiery as-it-were
unum corpus effecit militiaque illa dudum sub Constantino
one body made and-the-service that formerly under Constantine
principe foederatorum renovata et ipsi dicti sunt
the-prince of-the-federates renewed and they-themselves called were
foederati. e quibus imperator contra Eugenium tyrannum, qui
federates from whom the-emperor against Eugenius the-tyrant who
occiso Gratiano Gallias occupasset, plus quam viginti milia
slain Gratian the-Gauls had-occupied more than twenty thousand
armatorum fideles sibi et amicos intellegens secum duxit
of-armed-men faithful to-himself and friends understanding with-himself led
victoriaque de praedicto tyranno potitus ultionem exegit.
and-victory over the-aforesaid tyrant having-gained vengeance exacted

Caput XXIX

XXIX · ALARIC AND RAVENNA

When Theodosius' sons stop the Goths' gifts, they make Alaric of the Balthi their king and invade Italy. Jordanes describes Ravenna, ringed by marshes and the Po, with its three parts, Ravenna, Classis, and Caesarea.

Postquam vero Theodosius amator pacis generisque Gothorum
after indeed Theodosius the-lover of-peace and-of-the-race of-the-Goths
rebus excessit humanis coeperuntque eius filii utramque rem
from-affairs departed human and-began his sons both state
publicam luxuriose viventes adnihilare auxiliariisque suis,
public luxuriously living to-bring-to-nothing and-from-auxiliaries their
id est Gothis, consueta dona subtrahere, mox Gothis
that is from-the-Goths the-customary gifts to-withdraw soon in-the-Goths
fastidium eorum increvit, verentesque, ne longa pace eorum
disgust with-them grew and-fearing lest by-long peace their
resolveretur fortitudo, ordinato super se rege Halarico,
should-be-loosened bravery appointed over themselves as-king Alaric
cui erat post Amalos secunda nobilitas Balthorumque
to-whom was after the-Amals the-second nobility and-of-the-Balthi
ex genere origo mirifica, qui dudum ob audacia virtutis
from the-race an-origin wonderful who long-ago for the-boldness of-his-valor
Baltha, id est audax, nomen inter suos acceperat. mox
Baltha that is bold the-name among his had-received as-soon-as
ergo antefatus Halaricus creatus est rex, cum suis deliberans
therefore the-aforesaid Alaric created was king with his deliberating
suasit eos suo labore quaerere regna quam alienis per
persuaded them by-their labor to-seek kingdoms than to-others through
otium subiacere, et sumpto exercitu per Pannonias Stilicone
ease to-be-subject and taken an-army through the-Pannonias Stilicho

et Aureliano consulibus et per Sirmium dextroque latere
and Aurelian being-consuls and through Sirmium and-on-the-right side
quasi viris vacuam intravit Italiam nulloque penitus obsistente
as-if of-men empty entered Italy and-no-one at-all withstanding
ad pontem applicavit Candidiani, qui tertio miliario ab
to the-bridge he-drew-near of-Candidianus which at-the-third milestone from
urbe aberat regia Ravennate. quae urbs inter paludes et
the-city was-distant royal of-Ravenna which city between marshes and
pelago interque Padi fluenta unius tantum patet accessu,
the-sea and-between of-the-Po the-streams by-one only lies-open approach
cuius dudum possessores, ut tradunt maiores, αἰνετοί, id est
whose formerly possessors as hand-down the-ancestors ainetoi that is
laudabiles, dicebantur. haec in sino regni Romani super
praiseworthy were-called this in the-bosom of-the-kingdom Roman over
mare Ionio constituta ut in modum insulae influentium
the-sea Ionian established as in the-manner of-an-island of-inflowing
aquarum redundatione concluditur. habet ab oriente mare, ad
waters by-the-overflow is-shut-in it-has on the-east the-sea to
quam qui recto cursu de Corcyra atque Hellade partibus
which who in-a-straight course from Corcyra and of-Hellas from-the-parts
navigatur, dextrum latus primum Epiros, dehinc Dalmatiam
sails the-right side first Epirus thereafter Dalmatia
Liburniam Histriamque et sic Venetias radens palmula navigat.
Liburnia and-Histria and thus the-Venetias grazing with-the-oar sails
ab occidente vero habet paludes, per quas uno angustissimo
on the-west indeed it-has marshes through which by-one most-narrow
introitu ut porta relicta est. a septentrionale quoque plaga
entrance as a-gate left is on the-northern also region
ramus illi ex Pado est, qui Fossa vocitatur Asconis.
a-branch to-it from the-Po is which Fossa is-called Asconis
a meridie item ipse Padus, quem Italiae soli fluviorum
on the-south likewise itself Po which of-Italy soil of-rivers

regem dicunt, cognomento Eridanus, ab Augusto imperatore
the-king they-call by-surname Eridanus by Augustus the-emperor
latissima fossa demissus, qui septima sui alvei parte
in-a-very-broad trench sent-down which in-the-seventh of-its bed part
per mediam influit civitatem, ad ostia sua amoenissimum
through the-middle flows-into the-city at mouths its a-most-pleasant
portum praebens, classem ducentarum quinquaginta navium
harbor furnishing a-fleet of-two-hundred fifty ships
Dione referente tutissima dudum credebatur recipere statione.
Dio relating in-the-safest formerly was-believed to-receive anchorage
qui nunc, ut Favius ait, quod aliquando portus fuerit,
which now as Favius says that once a-harbor it-had-been
spatiosissimus ortus ostendit arboribus plenus, verum de
most-spacious a-garden shows with-trees full but from
quibus non pendeant vela, sed poma. Trino si quidem urbs
which not hang sails but apples in-triple if indeed the-city
ipsa vocabulo gloriatur trigeminaque positione exultat, id est
itself in-name boasts and-in-threefold position exults that is
prima Ravenna, ultima Classis, media Caesarea inter urbem
first Ravenna last Classis middle Caesarea between the-city
et mare, plena mollitiae harenaque minuta vectationibus apta.
and the-sea full of-softness and-sand fine for-drives fit

Caput XXX

XXX · ALARIC TAKES ROME

Honorius grants the Goths Gaul and Spain, but Stilicho attacks them at Pollentia and is routed. The Goths ravage Italy and sack Rome but spare the churches. Alaric dies in Bruttium while planning to cross to Africa and is buried in the bed of the Busento, his diggers killed.

Verum enim vero cum in eius vicinitate Vesegotharum
but in truth when in its neighborhood of-the-Visigoths
applicuisset exercitus et ad Honorium imperatorem, qui intus
had-drawn-near the-army and to Honorius the-emperor who within
residebat, legationem misisset, quatenus si permitteret, ut
resided an-embassy had-sent so-that if he-should-permit that
Gothi pacati in Italia residerent, sic eos cum Romanorum
the-Goths pacified in Italy should-reside so them with of-the-Romans
populo vivere, ut una gens utraque credere possit: sin autem
the-people to-live that one nation both to-believe could if however
aliter, bellando quis quem valebat expellere, et iam securus
otherwise by-warring whoever whom was-able to-expel and now secure
qui victor existeret imperaret. sed Honorius imperator
he-who victor should-stand should-rule but Honorius the-emperor
utraque pollicitatione formidans suoque cum senatu inito
each promise dreading and-his with senate entered
consilio, quomodo eos fines Italos expelleret, deliberabat.
counsel how them from-the-borders Italian he-might-expel deliberated
cui ad postremum sententia sedit, quatenus provincias longe
to-whom at the-last the-opinion settled so-that the-provinces far
positas, id est Gallias Spaniasque, quas pene iam perdidisset
placed that is the-Gauls and-Spains which almost already he-had-lost
Gizericique eas Vandalorum regis vastaret inruptio, si
and-of-Gaiseric them of-the-Vandals the-king was-laying-waste the-irruption if

valeret, Halaricus sua cum gente sibi tamquam lares
he-were-able Alaric his with nation for-himself as household-gods
proprias vindicaret. donationem sacro oraculo confirmatam
his-own should-claim a-donation by-sacred decree confirmed
consentiunt Gothi hac ordinatione et ad patriam sibi
agree the-Goths to-this arrangement and to the-fatherland to-them
traditam proficiscuntur. post quorum discessu nec quicquam
handed-over set-out after whose departure not anything
mali in Italia perpetrato Stilico patricius et socer Honorii
of-evil in Italy perpetrated Stilicho the-patrician and father-in-law of-Honorius
imperatoris — nam utramque eius filiam, id est Mariam et
of-the-emperor for each his daughter that is Maria and
Thermantiam, sibi princeps unam post unam consocians
Thermantia to-himself the-prince one after another joining
utramque virginem et intactam deus ab hac luce vocavit —
each a-virgin and untouched God from this light called
hic ergo Stilico ad Polentiam civitatem in Alpes Cottiarum
this therefore Stilicho to Pollentia the-city in the-Alps Cottian
locatam dolose accedens, nihilque male suspicantibus Gothis
located deceitfully approaching and-nothing ill suspecting the-Goths
ad necem totius Italiae suamque deformitatem ruit in bello.
to the-ruin of-whole Italy and-his disgrace rushes in war
quem ex inproviso Gothi cernentes primum perterriti sunt,
whom from the-unforeseen the-Goths seeing first terrified were
sed mox recollectis animis et, ut solebant, hortatibus
but soon recollected their-spirits and as they-were-wont by-exhortations
excitati omnem pene exercitum Stiliconis in fuga conversum
roused all almost the-army of-Stilicho into flight turned
usque ad internicionem deiciunt furibundoque animo
all-the-way to annihilation they-cast-down and-with-raging mind
arreptum iter deserunt et in Liguria post se, unde
the-seized journey they-desert and into Liguria behind them whence

iam transierant, revertuntur; eamque praedis spoliisque
already they-had-crossed return and-it with-plunder and-spoils
potiti Emiliam pari tenore devastant Flamminiaeque
having-gained Emilia equal course lay-waste and-of-the-Flaminian
aggerem inter Picenum et Tusciam usque ad urbem
the-causeway between Picenum and Tuscia all-the-way to the-city
Romam discurrentes, quidquid in utrumque latus fuit, in
Rome ranging whatever on each side was for
praeda diripiunt. ad postremum Romae ingressi Halarico
plunder they-tear-away at the-last Rome having-entered Alaric
iubente spoliant tantum, non autem, ut solent gentes, igne
ordering they-despoil only not however as are-wont the-nations fire
supponunt nec locis sanctorum in aliquo paenitus iniuria
they-set-under nor to-the-places of-the-saints in any at-all injury
inrogare patiuntur. exindeque egressi per Campaniam
to-inflict they-allow and-thence having-gone-out through Campania
et Lucania simili clade peracta Brittios accesserunt; ubi
and Lucania like slaughter carried-out to-the-Bruttii they-came where
diu resedentes ad Siciliam et exinde ad Africae terras ire
long staying to Sicily and thence to of-Africa the-lands to-go
deliberant. Bryttiorum si quidem regio in extremis Italiae
they-deliberate of-the-Bruttii if indeed the-region in the-farthest of-Italy
finibus australi interiacens parti — angulus eius Appinini
borders in-the-southern lying part the-corner its of-the-Apennine
montis initium fecit — Adriaeque pelagus velut lingua
mountain the-beginning made and-the-Adriatic sea as a-tongue
porrecta a Tyrreno aestu seiungens nomen quondam
stretched from the-Tyrrhenian surge separating its-name once
a Bryttia sortitus regina. ibi ergo veniens Alaricus rex
from Bruttia having-drawn queen there therefore coming Alaric king
Vesegotharum cum opibus totius Italiae, quas in praeda
of-the-Visigoths with the-wealth of-whole Italy which in plunder

diripuerat, et exinde, ut dictum est, per Siciliam ad
he-had-torn-away and thence as said it-has-been through Sicily to
Africam quietam patriam transire disponens. cuius, quia non
Africa a-quiet fatherland to-cross arranging whose because not
est liberum quodcumque homo sine notu dei disposuerit,
it-is free whatever man without the-nod of-God shall-have-arranged
fretus ille horribilis aliquantas naves submersit, plurimas
the-strait that horrible some ships sank very-many
conturbavit. qua adversitate depulsus Halaricus, dum
threw-into-confusion by-which adversity driven-back Alaric while
secum, quid ageret, deliberaret, subito inmatura morte
with-himself what he-should-do he-deliberated suddenly by-untimely death
praeventus rebus humanis excessit. quem nimia sui
forestalled from-affairs human departed whom with-excessive of-him
dilectione lugentes Busento amne iuxta Consentina civitate de
love mourning the-Busento river near the-Consentine city from
alveo suo derivato — nam hic fluvius a pede montis
bed its diverted for this river from the-foot of-the-mountain
iuxta urbem dilapsus fluit unda salutifera — huius ergo in
near the-city gliding flows with-wave health-giving of-this therefore in
medio alvei collecta captivorum agmina saepulturae locum
the-middle of-the-bed gathered of-captives the-columns of-burial a-place
effodiunt, in cuius foveae gremium Halaricum cum multas
dig-out into whose of-the-pit bosom Alaric with many
opes obruunt, rursusque aquas in suo alveo reducentes,
riches they-overwhelm and-again the-waters into its bed bringing-back
et ne a quoquam quandoque locus cognosceretur, fossores
and lest by anyone ever the-place should-be-known the-diggers
omnes interemerunt, regnumque Vesegotharum Atauulfo
all they-killed and-the-kingdom of-the-Visigoths to-Athaulf
eius consanguineo et forma menteque conspicuo tradent;
his kinsman and in-form and-in-mind conspicuous they-hand-over

nam erat quamvis non adeo proceritate staturae formatus,
for he-was although not so-much in-height of-stature formed
quantum pulchritudine corporis vultuque decorus.
as in-beauty of-body and-in-face handsome

Caput XXXI

XXXI · ATHAULF

Athaulf strips Italy again and marries Placidia, Honorius' sister, at Forum Julii. He moves into Gaul, from which the Vandals and Alans flee into Spain, then follows them there, leaves his treasure at Barcelona, and, often fighting the Vandals in inner Spain, is killed by Euervulf in the third year after subduing Gaul and Spain. Segeric reigns briefly and is killed by his own men.

Qui suscepto regno revertens item ad Romam, si quid
who taken-up the-kingdom returning likewise to Rome if anything
primum remanserat, more locustarum erasit, nec tantum
first had-remained in-the-manner of-locusts he-scraped nor only
privatis divitiis Italiam spolians, immo et publicis, imperatore
of-private riches Italy despoiling nay also of-public the-emperor
Honorio nihil resistere praevalente, cuius et germanam
Honorius not-at-all to-resist prevailing whose also sister
Placidiam Theodosii imperatoris ex altera uxore filiam ab
Placidia of-Theodosius of-the-emperor from the-other wife the-daughter from
urbe captivam abduxit. quam tamen ob generis nobilitatem
the-city captive he-led-away whom yet for of-race the-nobility
formeque pulchritudine et integritate castitatis adtendens
and-of-form the-beauty and the-integrity of-chastity attending
in Foro Iuli Aemiliae civitate suo matrimonio legitime
in the-Forum of-Julius of-Emilia city in-his marriage lawfully
copulavit, ut gentes hac societate conperta quasi adunatam
joined so-that the-nations this alliance learned as-if united

Gothis rem publicam efficacius terrerentur, Honorioque
to-the-Goths the-state public more-effectively might-be-terrified and-Honorius
Augusto quamvis opibus exausto tamen iam quasi cognatum
Augustus although of-wealth exhausted yet now as-if a-kinsman
grato animo derelinquens, Gallias tendit. ubi cum
with-grateful mind leaving for-the-Gauls he-heads where when
advenisset, vicinae gentes perterritae in suis se coeperunt
he-had-come the-neighboring nations terrified in their themselves began
finibus continere, qui dudum crudeliter Gallias infestassent,
borders to-keep who formerly cruelly the-Gauls had-infested
tam Franci, quam Burgondiones. nam Vandali vel Alani, quos
as-well the-Franks as the-Burgundians for the-Vandals or Alans whom
superius diximus permissu principum Romanorum utramque
above we-have-said by-permission of-the-princes Roman both
Pannoniam resedere, nec ibi sibi metu Gothorum
Pannonias to-have-settled nor there to-themselves for-fear of-the-Goths
arbitrantes tutum fore, si reverterentur, ad Gallias transierunt.
judging safe to-be if they-should-return to the-Gauls crossed
sed mox a Galliis, quas ante non multum tempus occupassent,
but soon from the-Gauls which before not much time they-had-occupied
fugientes, Spanias se recluserunt, adhuc memores ex
fleeing into-the-Spains themselves shut still mindful from
relatione maiorum suorum, quid dudum Geberich Gothorum
the-account of-elders their what formerly Geberich of-the-Goths
rex genti suae prestitisset incommodi vel quomodo eos virtute
king to-nation their had-furnished of-harm or how them by-valor
sua patrio solo expulisset. tali ergo casu Galliae Atauulfo
his from-native soil he-had-expelled by-such therefore chance the-Gauls to-Athaulf
patuere venienti. confirmato ergo Gothus regno in Gallis
lay-open coming confirmed therefore the-Goth the-kingdom in the-Gauls
Spanorum casu coepit dolere, eosque deliberans a
of-the-Spaniards at-the-misfortune began to-grieve and-them deliberating from

Vandalorum incursibus eripere, suas opes Barcilona cum certis
of-the-Vandals the-incursions to-rescue his wealth at-Barcelona with certain
fidelibus derelictas plebeque inbelle, interiores Spanias
faithful left and-the-common-people unwarlike the-inner Spains
introibit, ubi saepe cum Vandalis decertans tertio anno,
enters where often with the-Vandals contending in-the-third year
postquam Gallias Spaniasque domuisset, occubuit gladio
after the-Gauls and-Spains he-had-tamed fell by-the-sword
ilia perforata Euervulfi, de cuius solitus erat ridere statura.
his-belly pierced of-Euervulf of whose accustomed he-was to-laugh-at stature
post cuius mortem Segericus rex constituitur, sed et ipse
after whose death Segeric king is-appointed but also himself
suorum fraude peremptus ocius regnum cum vita reliquid.
of-his-men fraud slain very-quickly the-kingdom with life left

Caput XXXII

XXXII · WALLIA

Wallia meets Constantius at the Pyrenees and returns Placidia, promising Rome his aid. Usurpers in Gaul, Constantine and others, are destroyed. Wallia attacks the Vandals in Spain.

Dehinc iam quartus ab Alarico rex constituitur Valia nimis
thereafter now fourth from Alaric king is-appointed Wallia very
destrictus et prudens. contra quem Honorius imperator
strict and prudent against whom Honorius the-emperor
Constantium virum industria militari pollentem multisque
Constantius a-man in-diligence military powerful and-in-many
proeliis gloriosum cum exercitu dirigens, veritus, ne foedus
battles glorious with an-army sending fearing lest the-treaty

dudum cum Atauulfo inito ipse turbaret et aliquas
formerly with Athaulf entered he-himself should-disturb and some
rursus in re publica insidias moliretur vicinas
again against the-state public plots should-contrive the-neighboring
sibi gentes expulsas, simulque desiderans germanam
to-himself nations expelled and-at-the-same-time desiring sister
suam Placidiam subiectionis obprobrio liberare, paciscens
his Placidia of-subjection from-the-disgrace to-free agreeing
cum Constantio, ut, aut bello aut pace vel quo modo
with Constantius that either by-war or by-peace or in-whatever way
si eam potuisset ad suum regnum reducere, ei eam in
if her he-had-been-able to his kingdom to-bring-back to-him her in
matrimonio sociaret. quo placito Constantius obans cum
marriage he-would-join with-which agreement Constantius exulting with
copia armatorum et pene iam regio apparatu Spanias petit.
a-force of-armed-men and almost already royal apparatus the-Spains seeks
cui Vallias rex Gothorum non cum minori procinctu ad
whom Wallia king of-the-Goths not with less army at
claustra Pyrenei occurrit; ubi ab utraque parte legatione
the-barriers of-the-Pyrenees meets where from each side an-embassy
directa ita convenit pacisci, ut Placidiam sororem principis
sent so it-was-agreed to-make-terms that Placidia sister of-the-prince
redderet suaque solacia Romanae rei publicae, ubi
he-should-return and-his support to-the-Roman state public where
usus exegerit, non denegaret. eo namque tempore
need should-have-demanded not he-should-refuse at-that for time
Constantinus quidam apud Gallias invadens imperium filium
Constantine a-certain in the-Gauls seizing the-empire son
suum Constantem ex monacho fecerat Caesarem; sed non
his Constans from a-monk had-made Caesar but not
diu tenens regno praesumpto mox foederatos Gothos
long holding the-kingdom presumed soon the-federate Goths

Romanosque ipse occiditur Arelato, filius vero eius Vienna.
and-Romans he-himself is-killed at-Arles the-son but his at-Vienne
post quos item Iovinus ac Sebastianus pari temeritate rem
after whom likewise Jovinus and Sebastian equal rashness the-state
publicam occupandam existimantes pari exitio perierunt.
public to-be-occupied thinking equal ruin perished
Nam duodecimo anno regni Valiae, quando et Hunni
for in-the-twelfth year of-the-reign of-Wallia when also the-Huns
post pene quinquaginta annorum invasam Pannoniam a
after almost fifty years invaded Pannonia by
Romanis et Gothis expulsi sunt, videns Valia Vandalos
the-Romans and Goths driven-out were seeing Wallia the-Vandals
in suis finibus, id est Spaniae solum, audaci temeritate
in his borders that is of-Spain the-soil with-bold rashness
ab interioribus partibus Galliciae, ubi eos fugaverat
from the-inner parts of-Gallicia where them had-put-to-flight
dudum Atauulfus, egressos et cuncta in praedas vastare,
formerly Athaulf having-gone-out and all-things for plunder to-lay-waste
eo fere tempore, quo Hierius et Ardabures consules
at-that about time when Hierius and Ardabur consuls
processissent, nec mora mox contra eos movit exercitum.
had-proceeded nor delay soon against them moved an-army

Caput XXXIII

XXXIII · GAISERIC AND THE VANDAL KINGS

Invited by Boniface, Gaiseric crosses to Africa. Jordanes describes the lame, cunning king, his law of succession by seniority, the Vandal kings to Gelimer, and Belisarius' reconquest of Africa. Wallia dies, Theodorid succeeds, and the Amal Beremud hides his birth at the Visigothic court.

sed Gyzericus rex Vandalorum iam a Bonifatio in Africam
but Gaiseric king of-the-Vandals already by Boniface into Africa
invitatus, qui Valentiniano principi veniens in offensa non
invited who to-Valentinian the-prince coming into displeasure not
aliter se quam malo rei publicae potuit vindicare. is
otherwise himself than by-the-ill of-the-state public could to-avenge he
ergo suis praecibus eos invitans per traiectum angustiarum,
therefore with-his prayers them inviting across the-crossing of-the-narrows
qui dicitur fretus Gaditanus et vix septem milibus Africam
which is-called the-strait of-Gades and scarcely seven miles Africa
ab Spaniis dividet ostiaque maris Tyrreni in Oceani
from the-Spains divides and-the-mouths of-the-sea Tyrrhenian into of-the-Ocean
estu egeritur, transposuit. erat namque Gyzericus iam
the-surge is-discharged transported-them he-was for Gaiseric already
Romanorum clade in urbe notissimus, statura mediocris
of-the-Romans for-the-disaster in the-city most-known in-stature middling
et equi casu claudicans, animo profundus, sermone
and of-a-horse from-a-fall limping in-mind deep in-speech
rarus, luxoriae contemptor, ira turbidus, habendi cupidus,
sparing of-luxury a-despiser in-anger stormy of-having greedy
ad sollicitandas gentes providentissimus, semina contentionum
for stirring-up nations most-foresighted seeds of-contentions
iacere, odia miscere paratus. tali Africa rem publicam
to-sow hatreds to-mix ready such Africa the-state public

praecibus Bonifatii, ut diximus, invitatus intravit, ubi a
at-the-prayers of-Boniface as we-have-said invited entered where from
divinitate, ut fertur, accepta auctoritate diu regnans, ante
the-divinity as is-said received authority long reigning before
obitum suum filiorum agmine accito ordinavit, ne inter ipsos
death his of-his-sons the-column summoned he-ordered lest among them
de regni ambitione intentio esset, sed ordine quisque
about of-the-kingdom ambition strife should-be but in-order each
et gradu suo, alii si superviveret, id est, seniori suo
and in-rank his to-another if he-should-survive that is to-the-elder his
fieret sequens successor et rursus ei posterior eius.
should-become following successor and again to-him the-later of-him
quod observantes per annorum multorum spatia regnum
which observing through of-years many the-spaces the-kingdom
feliciter possiderunt, nec, ut in reliquis gentibus adsolet,
happily they-possessed nor as in the-other nations is-wont
intestino bello foedati sunt, suoque ordine unus post unum
by-internal war defiled were and-in-their order one after one
regnum excipiens in pace populis imperavit. quorum
the-kingdom receiving in peace over-the-peoples ruled of-whom
ordo iste ac successio fuit: primum Gyzericus, qui pater et
the-order this and succession was first Gaiseric who father and
dominus, sequens Hunericus, tertius Gunthamundus, quartus
lord following Huneric third Gunthamund fourth
Thrasamundus, quintus Ilderich. quem malo gentis suae
Thrasamund fifth Hilderic whom to-the-ill of-nation his
Gelimer inmemor atavi praeceptorum de regno eiectum
Gelimer unmindful of-his-ancestor precepts from the-kingdom cast-out
et interemptum tyrannide praesumpsit. sed non ei cessit
and slain by-tyranny presumed but not to-him it-turned-out
inpune quod fecerat. nam mox Iustiniani imperatoris ultio
unpunished what he-had-done for soon of-Justinian of-the-emperor the-vengeance

in eum apparuit et cum omne genus suum opibusque,
upon him appeared and with all race his and-the-wealth
quibus more praedonis incubabat, Constantinopolim
on-which in-the-manner of-a-robber he-brooded to-Constantinople
delatus per virum gloriosissimum Belesarium mag. mil.
carried by the-man most-glorious Belisarius master of-the-soldiers
Orientalem, exconsolem ordinarium atque patricium, magnum
of-the-East ex-consul ordinary and patrician a-great
in circo populo spectaculum fuit seraque suae paenitudinis
in the-circus to-the-people spectacle was and-late of-his repentance
gerens cum se videret de fastigio regali deiectum,
bearing when himself he-saw from the-summit royal cast-down
privatae vitae, cui noluit famulari, redactus occubuit.
to-the-private life which he-wished-not to-serve brought he-fell
sic Africa, quae in divisione urbis terrarum tertia pars
thus Africa which in the-division of-the-circle of-the-lands the-third part
mundi describitur, centesimo fere anno a Vandalico iugo
of-the-world is-described in-the-hundredth about year from the-Vandal yoke
erepta in libertate revocata est regni Romani, et quae
rescued into the-liberty recalled was of-the-kingdom Roman and which
dudum ignavis dominis ducibusque infidelibus a rei
formerly by-cowardly masters and-generals faithless from of-the-state
publicae Romanae corpus gentilis manus abstulerat, a sollerte
public Roman the-body a-heathen hand had-taken-away by a-skillful
domino et fideli ductore nunc revocata hodieque congaudet.
master and faithful leader now recalled today rejoices
quamvis et post haec aliquantulum intestino proelio
although also after these-things for-a-little by-internal battle
Maurorumque infidelitate adtrita sese lamentaverit, tamen
and-of-the-Moors by-the-faithlessness worn itself it-has-lamented yet
triumphus Iustiniani imperatoris a deo sibi donatus, quod
the-triumph of-Justinian of-the-emperor by God to-him given what

inchoaverat, ad pacem usque perduxit. sed nobis quid opus
he-had-begun to peace up-to brought but for-us what need
est, unde res non exeget, dicere? ad propositum redeamus.
is whence the-matter not demands to-speak to the-purpose let-us-return
Vallia si quidem, rex Gothorum, adeo cum suis in
Wallia if indeed king of-the-Goths so-much with his-men against
Vandalos saeviebat, ut voluisset eos etiam et in Africa
the-Vandals raged that he-would-have-wished them even also in Africa
persequi, nisi eum casus, qui dudum Halarico in Africa
to-pursue had-not him the-chance which formerly to-Alaric to Africa
tendenti contigerat, revocasset. nobilitatus namque intra
heading had-happened recalled ennobled for within
Spanias incruentamque victoriam potitus Tolosam revertitur,
the-Spains and-a-bloodless victory having-gained to-Toulouse returns
Romano imperio fugatis hostibus aliquantas provincias,
to-the-Roman empire put-to-flight the-enemies some provinces
quod promiserat, derelinquens, sibique adversa post longum
as he-had-promised leaving and-to-him adverse after long
valitudine superveniente rebus humanis excessit, eo
health coming-on from-affairs human departed at-that
videlicet tempore, quo Beremud, Thorismundo patre
namely time when Beremud from-Thorismund (his)-father
progenitus, de quo in catalogo Amalorum familiae superius
begotten about whom in the-catalog of-the-Amals family above
diximus, cum filio Vitiricho ab Ostrogothis, qui adhuc
we-have-said with his-son Veteric from the-Ostrogoths who still
in Scythiae terras Hunnorum oppressionibus subiacebant,
in of-Scythia the-lands of-the-Huns to-the-oppressions were-subject
ad Vesegotharum regnum migravit. conscius enim virtutis
to of-the-Visigoths the-kingdom migrated conscious for of-valor
et generis nobilitate facilius sibi credens principatum
and of-race by-the-nobility more-easily to-himself believing the-rule

a parentibus deferre, quem heredem regum constabat esse
by his-kinsmen to-be-conferred whom heir of-kings it-was-agreed to-be
multorum. quis namque de Amalo dubitaret, si vacasset
of-many who for about an-Amal would-doubt if it-had-been-free
elegere? sed nec ipse adeo voluit, quis esset, ostendere.
to-choose but not he-himself so-much wished who he-was to-show
et illi iam post mortem Valliae Theoderidum ei dederant
and they already after the-death of-Wallia Theodorid to-him had-given
successorem. ad quem veniens Beremud animi pondere
as-successor to whom coming Beremud of-mind with-weight
qua valebat eximio generis sui amplitudine commoda
with-which he-was-strong outstanding of-race his the-greatness with-fitting
taciturnitate suppressit, sciens regnantibus semper regali
silence suppressed knowing to-those-reigning always of-royal
stirpe genitos esse suspectos. passus est ergo ignorari,
stock those-born to-be suspect suffered he-has therefore to-be-unknown
ne faceret ordinata confundi. susceptusque cum filio suo
lest he-should-cause the-ordered to-be-confused and-received with son his
a rege Theodorido honorifice nimis, adeo ut nec consilio
by the-king Theodorid honorably very so that neither of-counsel
suo expertem nec convivio faceret alienum, non tamen pro
his without-share nor of-banquet made-him a-stranger not yet for
generis nobilitate, quam ignorabat, sed pro animi fortitudine
of-race the-nobility which he-did-not-know but for of-mind the-bravery
et robore mentis, quam non poterat occultare.
and strength of-intellect which not he-could to-hide

Caput XXXIV

XXXIV · THEODORID AND ATTILA

Theodorid faces the Romans under Aetius and Litorius, but the armies make peace without a battle. Jordanes introduces Attila, quoting Priscus' description of his wooden palace beyond the Tisia, Tibisia, and Dricca.

Quid plurimum? defuncto Vallia, ut superius quod diximus
what more having-died Wallia as above what we-have-said
repetamus, qui parum fuerat felix Gallis, prosperrimus
let-us-repeat who little had-been fortunate to-the-Gauls most-prosperous
feliciorque Theodoridus successit in regno, homo summa
and-more-fortunate Theodorid succeeded in the-kingdom a-man highest
moderatione compositus, animi corporisque utilitate habendus.
moderation composed of-mind and-of-body for-usefulness to-be-held
contra quem Theodosio et Festo consulibus pace rupta
against whom Theodosius and Festus being-consuls the-peace broken
Romani Hunnis auxiliaribus secum iunctis in Galliis arma
the-Romans the-Huns as-auxiliaries with-themselves joined in the-Gauls arms
moverunt. turbaverat namque eos Gothorum foederatorum
moved had-disturbed for them of-the-Goths federates
manus, qui cum Gaina comite Constantinopolim efferasset.
the-band which with Gainas the-count Constantinople had-made-savage
Aetius ergo patricius tunc praeerat militibus, fortissimorum
Aetius therefore the-patrician then was-over the-soldiers of-the-bravest
Moesium stirpe progenitus in Dorostorena civitate a patre
Moesians from-stock begotten in the-Dorostoran city from father
Gaudentio, labores bellicos tolerans, rei publicae Romanae
Gaudentius labors warlike enduring for-the-state public Roman
singulariter natus, qui superbam Suavorum Francorumque
singularly born who the-proud of-the-Suevi and-of-the-Franks

barbariem immensis caedibus servire Romano imperio coegisset.
barbarity with-immense slaughters to-serve the-Roman empire had-compelled
Hunnis quoque auxiliariis Litorio ductante contra Gothos
the-Huns also as-auxiliaries Litorius leading against the-Goths
Romanus exercitus movit procinctum, diuque ex utraque parte
the-Roman army moved its-array and-long on each side
acies ordinatae cum utrique fortes et neuter infirmior
the-battle-lines arranged when both brave and neither weaker
esset, datis dextris in pristina concordia redierunt, foedusque
was given right-hands into former concord they-returned and-the-treaty
firmatum ab alterutrum fida pace peracta recessit uterque.
confirmed by each-other with-faithful peace concluded withdrew each
qua pace Attila, Hunnorum omnium dominus et paene
in-which peace Attila of-the-Huns of-all lord and almost
totius Scythiae gentium solus in mundo regnator, qui erat
of-whole of-Scythia of-the-nations sole in the-world ruler who was
famosa inter omnes gentes claritate mirabilis. ad quem in
with-famous among all nations renown wonderful to whom on
legatione se missum a Theodosio iuniore Priscus istoricus
an-embassy himself sent by Theodosius the-younger Priscus the-historian
tali voce inter alia refert: ingentia si quidem flumina,
with-such voice among other-things relates huge if indeed rivers
id est Tisia Tibisiaque et Dricca transientes venimus
that is the-Tisia and-Tibisia and Dricca crossing we-came
in loco illo, ubi dudum Vidigoia Gothorum fortissimus
into place that where formerly Vidigoia of-the-Goths the-bravest
Sarmatum dolo occubuit; indeque non longe ad vicum,
of-the-Sarmatians by-guile fell and-thence not far to the-village
in quo rex Attila morabatur, accessimus, vicum inquam ad
in which king Attila stayed we-approached a-village I-say to
instar civitatis amplissimae, in quo lignea moenia ex tabulis
the-likeness of-a-city most-ample in which wooden walls of planks

nitentibus fabricata repperimus, quarum compago ita solidum
shining built we-found of-which the-joining so solidity
mentiebatur, ut vix ab intentu possit iunctura tabularum
feigned that scarcely by attention could the-joint of-the-planks
conpraehendi. videres triclinia ambitu prolixiore distenta
to-be-grasped you-would-see dining-halls with-circuit longer stretched
porticusque in omni decore dispositas. area vero curtis
and-porticoes in all beauty arranged the-area indeed of-the-court
ingenti ambitu cingebatur, ut amplitudo ipsa regiam aulam
by-a-huge circuit was-girded that the-greatness itself the-royal hall
ostenderet. hae sedes erant Attilae regis barbariae tota
might-show these seats were of-Attila the-king of-the-barbarian-world whole
tenenti; haec captis civitatibus habitacula praeponebat.
holding these to-captured cities as-dwellings he-preferred

Caput XXXV

XXXV · ATTILA

Attila kills his brother Bleda and gathers half a million men to attack Rome and the Visigoths. Jordanes describes his proud bearing and Hunnish features, his mercy to suppliants, and the sword of Mars a herdsman finds, which Attila takes as a sign of world rule.

Is namque Attila patre genitus Mundzuco, cuius fuere
he for Attila from-father begotten Mundzuc whose were
germani Octar et Roas, qui ante Attilam regnum tenuisse
brothers Octar and Ruas who before Attila the-kingdom to-have-held
narrantur, quamvis non omnino cunctorum quorum ipse. post
are-related although not altogether of-all of-which he after
quorum obitum cum Bleda germano Hunnorum successit in
whose death with Bleda his-brother over-the-Huns succeeded in

regno, et, ut ante expeditionis, quam parabat, par foret,
the-kingdom and that before the-expedition which he-was-preparing equal should-be
augmentum virium parricidio quaerit, tendens ad discrimen
the-increase of-strength by-parricide he-seeks tending to the-ruin
omnium nece suorum. sed librante iustitia detestabili
of-all by-the-murder of-his but weighing justice by-a-detestable
remedio crescens deformes exitus suae crudelitatis invenit.
remedy growing hideous ends of-his cruelty he-found
Bleda enim fratre fraudibus interempto, qui magnae parti
Bleda for his-brother by-frauds slain who over-a-great part
regnabat Hunnorum, universum sibi populum adunavit,
reigned of-the-Huns the-whole to-himself people united
aliarumque gentium, quas tunc in dicione tenebat, numerositate
and-of-other nations which then in dominion he-held the-numerousness
collecta, primas mundi gentes Romanos Vesegothasque
gathered the-first of-the-world nations the-Romans and-Visigoths
subdere praeoptabat. cuius exercitus quingentorum milium
to-subdue he-preferred whose army of-five-hundred thousand
esse numero ferebatur. vir in concussione gentium natus
to-be in-number was-reported a-man for the-shaking of-nations born
in mundo, terrarum omnium metus, qui, nescio qua
in the-world of-the-lands all the-dread who I-know-not by-what
sorte, terrebat cuncta formidabili de se opinione vulgata.
lot terrified all-things with-formidable about himself an-opinion spread
erat namque superbus incessu, huc atque illuc circumferens
he-was for proud in-gait hither and thither casting-around
oculos, ut elati potentia ipso quoque motu corporis
his-eyes that of-one-lifted-up the-power by-very also the-motion of-his-body
appareret; bellorum quidem amator, sed ipse manu temperans,
appeared of-wars indeed a-lover but himself in-hand restrained
consilio validissimus, supplicantium exorabilis, propitius autem
in-counsel most-strong of-suppliants exorable propitious moreover

in fide semel susceptis; forma brevis, lato pectore, capite
in faith once received in-form short with-broad chest with-head
grandiore, minutis oculis, rarus barba, canis aspersus, semo
rather-large with-small eyes thin of-beard with-gray sprinkled flat
nasu, teter colore, origenis suae signa restituens. qui quamvis
of-nose foul in-color of-origin his the-signs restoring who although
huius esset naturae, ut semper magna confideret, addebat
of-this he-was nature that always great-things he-trusted added
ei tamen confidentia gladius Martis inventus, sacer apud
to-him yet confidence the-sword of-Mars found sacred among
Scytharum reges semper habitus, quem Priscus istoricus
of-the-Scythians the-kings always held which Priscus the-historian
tali refert occasione detectum. cum pastor, inquiens, quidam
by-such relates an-occasion discovered when a-shepherd saying a-certain
gregis unam boculam conspiceret claudicantem nec causam
of-the-flock one heifer saw limping nor the-cause
tanti vulneris inveniret, sollicitus vestigia cruoris insequitur
of-so-great a-wound found anxious the-traces of-blood follows
tandemque venit ad gladium, quem depascens herbas incauta
and-at-last comes to the-sword which grazing the-grass incautious
calcaverat, effossumque protinus ad Attilam defert. quo
she-had-trodden and-dug-up at-once to Attila brings with-which
ille munere gratulatus, ut erat magnanimis, arbitratur se
he gift having-rejoiced as he-was magnanimous judges himself
mundi totius principem constitutum et per Martis
of-the-world whole prince appointed and through of-Mars
gladium potestatem sibi concessam esse bellorum.
the-sword the-power to-himself granted to-be of-wars

Caput XXXVI

XXXVI · THE GATHERING FOR THE CATALAUNIAN PLAINS

Gaiseric, fearing Theodorid's vengeance for his mutilated daughter, urges Attila to war. Attila tries to divide Romans and Visigoths, but Valentinian's envoys win Theodorid, who marches with two sons. Aetius gathers Franks, Burgundians, Saxons, and others, and the armies meet on the Catalaunian Plains.

Huius ergo mentem ad vastationem orbis paratam
his therefore mind to the-devastation of-the-world ready
comperiens Gyzericus, rex Vandalorum, quem paulo ante
learning Gaiseric king of-the-Vandals whom a-little before
memoravimus, multis muneribus ad Vesegotharum bella
we-mentioned with-many gifts to of-the-Visigoths wars
precipitat, metuens, ne Theodoridus Vesegotharum rex filiae
drives fearing lest Theodorid of-the-Visigoths king of-daughter
suae ulcisceretur iniuriam, quae Hunerico Gyzerici filio iuncta
his should-avenge the-injury who to-Huneric of-Gaiseric son joined
prius quidem tanto coniugio laetaretur, sed postea, ut erat ille
at-first indeed in-so-great a-marriage rejoiced but afterward as was he
et in sua pignora truculentus, ob suspicionem tantummodo
also toward his pledges truculent for suspicion only
veneni ab ea parati, naribus abscisam truncatamque auribus,
of-poison by her prepared of-her-nose cut-off and-maimed of-her-ears
spolians decore naturali, patri suo ad Gallias remiserat, ut
despoiling of-beauty natural to-father her to the-Gauls had-sent-back that
turpe funus miseranda semper offerret et crudelitas, qua
the-foul death pitiable always it-might-offer and the-cruelty by-which
etiam moverentur externi, vindictam patris efficacius
even would-be-moved strangers the-vengeance of-the-father more-effectively
impetraret. Attila igitur dudum bella concepta Gyzerici
might-obtain Attila therefore long wars conceived of-Gaiseric

redemptione parturiens, legatos in Italia ad Valentinianum
by-bribery bringing-forth envoys into Italy to Valentinian
principem misit, serens Gothorum Romanorumque discordia,
the-prince sent sowing of-the-Goths and-of-the-Romans discord
ut, quos proelio non poterat concutere, odiis internis
that whom in-battle not he-could to-shake by-hatreds internal
elideret, asserens, se rei publicae eius amicitias in
he-might-crush asserting himself of-the-state public his the-friendships in
nullo violare, sed contra Theoderidum Vesegotharum regem
nothing to-violate but against Theodorid of-the-Visigoths king
sibi esse certamen. unde cum excipi libenter optaret,
for-himself to-be the-contest whence since to-be-received gladly he-wished
citera epistula usitatis salutationum blandimentis oppleverat,
the-rest of-the-letter with-the-usual of-salutations blandishments he-had-filled
studens fidem adhibere mendacio. pari etiam modo ad
striving credit to-lend to-the-lie equal also manner to
regem Vesegotharum Theoderidum dirigit scripta, hortans, ut
the-king of-the-Visigoths Theodorid sends writings urging that
a Romanorum societate discederet recoleretque proelia,
from of-the-Romans the-alliance he-should-withdraw and-should-recall the-battles
quae paulo ante contra eum fuerant concitata. sub nimia
which a-little before against him had-been stirred under excessive
feritate homo subtilis ante quam bella gereret arte pugnabat.
fierceness a-man subtle before than wars he-waged by-art fought
tunc Valentinianus imperator ad Vesegothas eorumque regem
then Valentinian the-emperor to the-Visigoths and-their king
Theoderidum in his verbis legationem direxit: ‘prudentiae
Theodorid in these words an-embassy directed of-prudence
vestrae est, fortissimi gentium, adversus orbis conspirare
your it-is O-bravest of-nations against of-the-world to-conspire
tyrannum, qui optat mundi generale habere servitium, qui
the-tyrant who wishes of-the-world general to-have servitude who

causas proelii non requirit, sed, quidquid commiserit,
causes of-battle not requires but whatever he-shall-have-committed
hoc putat esse legitimum. ambitum suum brachio metitur,
this thinks to-be lawful ambition his with-his-arm he-measures
superbiam licentia satiat; qui ius fasque contemnens,
pride with-license he-satisfies who right and-divine-law despising
hostem se exhibet et naturae. cunctorum etenim meretur
an-enemy himself shows also to-the-nature of-all for deserves
hic odium, qui in commune omnium se adprobat
he hatred who in common of-all himself proves
inimicum. recordamini, quaeso, quod certe non potest
an-enemy remember I-pray what certainly not it-can
oblivisci, ab Hunnis non per bella, ubi communis casus
to-be-forgotten by the-Huns not through wars where common chance
est, fusum, sed, quod graviter anget, insidiis appetitum. ut
is poured-out but what grievously distresses by-plots attacked that
de nobis taceamus, potestis hanc inulti ferre superbiam?
about ourselves we-may-be-silent you-can this unavenged to-bear pride
armorum potentes favete propriis doloribus et communes
of-arms powerful favor your-own griefs and common
iungite manus. auxiliamini etiam rei publicae, cuius
join hands help also the-state public of-which
membrum tenetis. quam sit autem nobis expetenda vel
a-member you-hold how-much is moreover by-us to-be-sought or
amplexanda societas, hostis interrogate consilia'. his et
to-be-embraced the-alliance of-the-enemy ask his-counsels these and
similia legati Valentiniani regem permoverunt Theodoridum.
like-things the-envoys of-Valentinian the-king moved Theodorid
quibus ille respondit: 'habetis', inquid, 'Romani, desiderium
to-whom he answered you-have he-says O-Romans desire
vestrum; fecistis Attilam et nobis hostem. sequimur
your you-have-made Attila also to-us an-enemy we-follow

illum quocumque vocaverit, et quamvis infletur de
him wherever he-shall-have-called and although he-be-puffed-up from
diversis gentium victoriis, norunt tamen Gothi confligere
diverse of-nations victories know yet the-Goths to-fight
cum superbis. nullum bellum dixerim grave, nisi quod causa
with the-proud no war I-would-call grave except what the-cause
debilitat, quando nil triste pavet, cui maiestas adriserit'.
weakens since nothing sad he-fears on-whom majesty has-smiled
adclamant responso comites duci, laetus sequitur
shout-applause at-the-answer the-companions to-the-leader joyful follows
vulgus. fit omnibus ambitus pugnae, hostes iam
the-crowd there-becomes in-all a-longing of-battle as-enemies now
Hunni desiderantur. producitur itaque a rege Theodorido
the-Huns are-desired is-brought-forth and-so by the-king Theodorid
Vesegotharum innumerabilis multitudo; qui quattuor filios
of-the-Visigoths an-innumerable multitude who four sons
domi dimissos, id est Friderichum et Eurichum, Retemerim
at-home sent that is Friderich and Euric Retemer
et Himnerith secum tantum Thorismud et Theodericum
and Himnerith with-himself only Thorismund and Theodoric
maiores natu participes laboris adsumit. felix procinctum,
the-greater by-birth sharers of-the-labor takes happy the-army
auxilium tutum, suave collegium habere solacia illorum,
help safe sweet a-fellowship to-have the-consolations of-those
quibus delectat ipsa etiam simul subire discrimina. a
whom it-delights itself also together to-undergo the-dangers on
parte vero Romanorum tanta patricii Aetii providentia
the-side indeed of-the-Romans so-great of-the-patrician Aetius the-foresight
fuit, cui tunc innitebatur res publica Hesperiae plagae,
was on-whom then leaned the-state public of-the-Western region
ut undique bellatoribus congregatis adversus ferocem et
that from-everywhere warriors gathered against the-fierce and

infinitam multitudinem non impar occurreret. hi enim
infinite multitude not unequal he-might-meet these for
adfuerunt auxiliares: Franci, Sarmatae, Armoriciani, Liticiani,
were-present as-auxiliaries the-Franks Sarmatians Armoricans Liticians
Burgundiones, Saxones, Ripari, Olibriones, quondam milites
Burgundians Saxons Riparians Olibriones once soldiers
Romani, tunc vero iam in numero auxiliarium exquisiti,
Roman then indeed already in the-number of-auxiliaries sought-out
aliaeque nonnulli Celticae vel Germanie nationes. convenitur
and-other some Celtic or German nations it-is-met
itaque in campos Catalaunicos, qui et Mauriaci nominantur,
and-so in the-plains Catalaunian which also Mauriacian are-named
centum leuvas, ut Galli vocant, in longum tenentes et
a-hundred leagues as the-Gauls call in length holding and
septuaginta in latum. leuva autem Gallica una mille et
seventy in breadth a-league moreover Gallic one thousand and
quingentorum passuum quantitate metitur. fit ergo area
five-hundred paces in-quantity is-measured becomes therefore the-arena
innumerabilium populorum pars illa terrarum. conseruntur
of-innumerable peoples part that of-the-lands are-joined
acies utraeque fortissimae; nihil subreptionibus agitur,
the-battle-lines both most-brave nothing by-stealth is-done
sed aperto Marte certatur. quae potest digna causa tantorum
but in-open battle it-is-fought what can a-worthy cause of-so-great
motibus invenire? aut quod odium in se cunctos
for-the-motions find or what hatred against each-other all
animavit armari? probatum est humanum genus regibus
animated to-be-armed proved it-is the-human race for-kings
vivere, quando unius mentis insano impetu strages sit
to-live when of-one mind by-the-insane impulse slaughter has-been

facta populorum et arbitrio superbi regis momento defecit
made of-peoples and by-the-will of-a-proud king in-a-moment has-failed
quod tot saeculis natura progenuit.
what in-so-many ages nature has-brought-forth

Caput XXXVII

XXXVII · SANGIBAN AND THE OMENS

Sangiban, king of the Alans, promises to betray Orléans to Attila, so the allies place him in their center. Attila's soothsayers foretell defeat but the death of the enemy's chief commander, and Attila, hoping it means Aetius, joins battle at the ninth hour.

Sed antequam pugnae ipsius ordinem referamus, necessarium
but before of-the-battle itself the-order we-relate necessary
videtur edicere, quae in ipsis bellorum motibus acciderunt,
it-seems to-declare what in very of-the-wars the-movements happened
quia sicut famosum proelium, ita multiplex atque perplexum.
because as famous the-battle so manifold and confused
Sangibanus namque rex Alanorum metu futurorum perterritus
Sangiban for king of-the-Alans by-fear of-things-to-come terrified
Attilae se tradere pollicetur et Aurelianam civitatem
to-Attila himself to-surrender promises and the-Aurelian city
Galliae, ubi tunc consistebat, in eius iura transducere.
of-Gaul where then he-was-stationed into his jurisdiction to-transfer
quod ubi Theodoridus et Aetius agnoverunt, magnis aggeribus
which when Theodorid and Aetius learned with-great earthworks
eandem urbem ante adventum Attilae struunt, suspectumque
the-same city before the-arrival of-Attila they-build and-the-suspect
custodiunt Sangibanum et inter suos auxiliares medium
they-guard Sangiban and among their auxiliaries in-the-middle

statuunt cum propria gente. igitur Attila rex Hunnorum tali
set with his-own nation therefore Attila king of-the-Huns by-such
perculsus eventu diffidens suis copiis metuit inire conflictum.
struck event distrusting his forces fears to-enter conflict
inter que fugam revolvens ipso funere tristiorem,
among which(-things) flight pondering than-very death sadder
statuit per aruspices futura inquirere. qui more solito
he-decided through soothsayers the-future to-inquire who in-manner accustomed
nunc pecorum fibras, nunc quasdam venas in abrasis
now of-cattle the-entrails now certain veins in scraped
ossibus intuentes Hunnis infausta denuntiant; hoc tamen
bones gazing-at to-the-Huns ill-omened-things announce this yet
quantulum praedixere solacii, quod summus hostium ductor
a-little foretold of-consolation that the-highest of-the-enemies leader
de parte adversa occumberet relictamque victoriam sua morte
from the-side opposite should-fall and-the-remaining victory by-his death
triumphum foedaret. cumque Attila necem Aetii, quod eius
the-triumph should-defile and-when Attila the-death of-Aetius because his
motibus obviabat, vel cum sua perditione duceret expetendam,
movements he-opposed even with his ruin he-deemed to-be-sought
tali praesagio sollicitus, ut erat consiliorum in rebus bellicis
by-such a-presage anxious as he-was of-counsels in affairs warlike
exquisitor, circa nonam diei horam proelium sub trepidatione
a-seeker-out around the-ninth of-the-day hour the-battle under trepidation
committit, ut, si secus cederet, nox imminens subveniret.
joins that if otherwise it-should-turn-out night impending might-come-to-aid

Caput XXXVIII

XXXVIII · THE BATTLE LINES

The armies take positions around a hill, the Visigoths on the right, Aetius on the left, the Alans in the center. Attila stands in his center with his Huns, the subject kings around him, among them Valamir and Ardaric. Thorismund and Aetius seize the hill first.

Convenere partes, ut diximus, in campos Catalaunicos. erat
met the-sides as we-have-said in the-plains Catalaunian there-was
autem positio loci declivi tumore in editum collis
moreover the-position of-the-place with-sloping swell to the-height of-a-hill
excrescens. quem uterque cupiens exercitus obtinere, quia
rising which each desiring the-army to-gain because
loci oportunitas non parvum benificium confert, dextram
of-the-place the-advantage not small benefit confers the-right
partem Hunni cum suis, sinistram Romani et Vesegothae
part the-Huns with their the-left the-Romans and Visigoths
cum auxiliariis occuparunt, relictoque de cacumine eius
with the-auxiliaries occupied and-left from the-summit its
iugo certamen ineunt. dextrum itaque cornum cum
the-ridge the-contest enter the-right and-so wing with
Vesegothis Theoderidus tenebat, sinistrum Aetius cum
the-Visigoths Theodorid held the-left Aetius with
Romanis, conlocantes in medio Sanguibanum, quem superius
the-Romans placing in the-middle Sangiban whom above
rettulimus praefuisse Alanis, providentes cautioni militari,
we-related to-have-commanded the-Alans providing for-caution military
ut eum, de cuius animo minus praesumebant, fidelium
that him of whose mind less they-presumed of-faithful-men
turba concluderent. facile namque adsumit pugnandi
with-a-throng they-should-enclose easily for he-takes-up of-fighting

necessitatem, cui fugiendi inponitur difficultas. e diverso
the-necessity on-whom of-fleeing is-imposed the-difficulty from the-opposite
vero fuit Hunnorum acies ordinata, ut in medio Attila
indeed was of-the-Huns the-battle-line arranged that in the-middle Attila
cum suis fortissimis locaretur, sibi potius rex hac
with his bravest might-be-placed for-himself rather the-king by-this
ordinatione prospiciens, quatenus inter gentis suae rubor
arrangement looking-out so-that amid of-nation his the-strength
positus ab imminenti periculo redderetur exceptus.
placed from impending danger he-might-be-rendered withdrawn
cornua vero eius multiplices populi et diversae nationes,
the-wings indeed his manifold peoples and diverse nations
quos dicioni suae subdiderat, ambiebant. inter quos
whom to-dominion his he-had-subjected surrounded among whom
Ostrogotharum praeminebat exercitus Valamire et Theodemire
of-the-Ostrogoths stood-out the-army Valamir and Theodemir
et Videmere germanis ductantibus, ipso etiam rege,
and Vidimer the-brothers leading than-very even the-king
cui tunc serviebant, nobilioribus, quia Amalorum generis
whom then they-served nobler because of-the-Amals race
eos potentia inlustrabat; eratque et Gepidarum agmini
them the-power made-illustrious and-there-was also of-the-Gepids for-the-column
innumerabili rex ille famosissimus Ardaricus, qui ob
innumerable king that most-famous Ardaric who because-of
nimiam suam fidelitatem erga Attila eius consiliis intererat.
excessive his fidelity toward Attila in-his counsels took-part
nam perpendens Attila sagacitate sua, eum et Valamerem,
for weighing Attila by-shrewdness his him and Valamir
Ostrogotharum regem, super ceteros regulos diligebat. erat
of-the-Ostrogoths king above the-other kinglets loved was
namque Valamir secreti tenax, blandus alloquio, dolis gnarus;
for Valamir of-a-secret tenacious bland in-address of-wiles knowing

Ardaricus fide et consilio, ut diximus, clarus. quibus non
Ardaric in-faith and in-counsel as we-have-said famous to-whom not
inmerito contra parentes Vesegothas debuit credere pugnaturis.
undeservedly against kinsmen the-Visigoths he-had to-trust about-to-fight
reliqua autem, si dici fas est, turba regum diversarumque
the-rest moreover if to-be-said right it-is the-throng of-kings and-of-diverse
nationum ductores ac si satellites notibus Attilae attendebant,
nations the-leaders as if attendants to-the-nods of-Attila attended
et ubi oculo annuisset, absque aliqua murmuratione cum
and when with-the-eye he-had-nodded without any murmuring with
timore et tremore unusquisque adstabat, aut certe, quod
fear and trembling each stood-by or certainly what
iussus fuerat, exequebatur. solus Attila rex omnium regum
ordered he-had-been carried-out alone Attila king of-all kings
super omnes et pro omnibus sollicitus erat. fit ergo
over all and for all anxious was there-is therefore
de loci, quem diximus, oportunitate certamen. Attila
about of-the-place which we-have-said the-advantage a-contest Attila
suos diriget, qui cacumen montis invaderent, sed a
his-men directs who the-summit of-the-mountain should-seize but by
Thorismundo et Aetio praevenitur, qui eluctati collis
Thorismund and Aetius he-is-forestalled who having-struggled-up of-the-hill
excelsa ut conscenderent, superiores effecti sunt, venientesque
the-heights that they-might-climb superior made were and-the-coming
Hunnos montis beneficio facile turbaverunt.
Huns of-the-mountain by-the-advantage easily threw-into-confusion

Caput XXXIX

XXXIX · ATTILA'S SPEECH

Attila urges his men to despise the Romans, who huddle behind shields, and to attack the Alans and Visigoths, the sinews of the enemy. Fortune, he says, has given the Huns this battle; the doomed die even at rest. Fired by his words, they charge.

Tunc Attila cum videret exercitum causa praecedente
then Attila when he-saw the-army by-the-cause preceding
turbatum, tali eum ex tempore credidit alloquio
troubled by-such it from the-moment believed by-address
confirmandum. 'post victorias tantarum gentium, post orbem,
to-be-strengthened after the-victories of-so-great nations after the-world
si consistatis, edomitum, ineptum iudicaveram tamquam ignaros
if you-stand tamed foolish I-had-judged as-if ignorant
rei verbis acuere. quaerat hoc aut novus ductor aut
of-the-matter with-words to-sharpen let-him-seek this either a-new leader or
inexpertus exercitus. nec mihi fas est aliquid vulgare dicere,
an-inexperienced army nor for-me right is anything common to-say
nec vobis oportet audire. quid autem aliud vos quam bellare
nor for-you is-it-fitting to-hear what moreover else for-you than to-make-war
consuetum? aut quid viro forti suavius, quam vindicta manu
customary or what for-a-man brave sweeter than vengeance by-hand
querere? magnum munus a natura animos ultione satiare.
to-seek a-great gift from nature the-spirits with-vengeance to-satisfy
adgrediamur igitur hostem alacres: audaciores sunt semper,
let-us-attack therefore the-enemy eager bolder are always
qui inferunt bellum. adunatas dispicite dissonas gentes:
those-who bring war the-united despise discordant nations
indicium pavoris est societate defendi. en ante impetum
a-sign of-fear it-is by-alliance to-be-defended lo before onset

nostrum terroribus iam feruntur, excelsa quaerunt, tumulos
our by-terrors already they-are-carried heights they-seek mounds
capiunt et sera paenitudine in campos monitiones efflagitant.
they-take and with-late repentance in the-plains fortifications they-demand
nota vobis sunt quam sint levia Romanorum arma: primo
known to-you are how are light of-the-Romans the-arms at-the-first
etiam non dico vulnere, sed ipso pulvere gravantur,
even not I-say wound but by-very dust they-are-weighed-down
dum in ordine coeunt et acies testudineque conectunt.
while in order they-close-up and battle-lines and-with-the-tortoise they-connect
vos confligite perstantibus animis, ut soletis, despicientesque
you fight with-persevering spirits as you-are-wont and-despising
eorum aciem Alanos invadite, in Vesegothas incumbite.
their line the-Alans attack upon the-Visigoths press
inde nobis cita victoria quaerere, unde se continet bellum.
thence for-us swift victory to-seek whence itself holds-together the-war
abscisa autem nervis mox membra relabuntur, nec potest
cut moreover the-sinews soon the-limbs fall-back nor can
stare corpus, cui ossa subtraxeris. consurgant animi,
to-stand a-body from-which the-bones you-shall-have-taken let-rise the-spirits
furor solitus intumescat. nunc consilia, Hunni, nunc arma
the-fury accustomed let-swell now counsels O-Huns now arms
depromite: aut vulneratus quis adversarii mortem reposcat
bring-forth either wounded anyone of-his-adversary the-death let-him-demand
aut inlaesus hostium clade satietur. victuros nulla
or unharmed of-the-enemies with-slaughter let-him-be-sated those-about-to-live no
tela conveniunt, morituros et in otio fata praecipitant.
weapons reach those-about-to-die even in ease the-fates hurl-headlong
postremo cur fortuna Hunnos tot gentium victores
lastly why fortune the-Huns of-so-many nations victors
adseret, nisi ad certaminis huius gaudia praeparasset? quis
would-claim unless for of-contest this the-joys she-had-prepared who

denique Meotidarum iter maiores nostros aperuit tot
finally of-Maeotis the-way to-ancestors our opened for-so-many
saeculis clausum secretum? quis adhuc inermibus cedere
ages closed a-secret who still to-the-unarmed to-yield
faciebat armatos? faciem Hunnorum non poterat ferre adunata
made the-armed the-face of-the-Huns not could to-bear the-united
collectio. non fallor eventu: hic campus est, quem
gathering not I-am-deceived in-the-outcome this the-plain is which
nobis tot prospera promiserunt. primus in hoste tela
to-us so-many successes have-promised first against the-enemy weapons
coiciam. si quis potuerit Attila pugnante otio ferre, sepultus
I-shall-hurl if anyone can Attila fighting at-rest to-bear buried
est'. his verbis accensi, in pugna cuncti praecipitantur.
is by-these words inflamed into battle all hurl-themselves

Caput XL

XL · THE BATTLE

A savage battle follows; a brook swells with blood. Theodorid is trampled or killed by a spear. The Visigoths drive Attila into his wagon camp. Lost in the night, Thorismund blunders into the enemy's wagons and is wounded, and Aetius reaches his allies' camp. Next day the victors resolve to besiege Attila, who builds a pyre of saddles to burn himself if they break in.

Et quamvis haberent res ipse formidinem, praesentia
and although had the-things themselves dread the-presence
tamen regis cunctatione merentibus auferebat. manu
yet of-the-king hesitation from-those-grieving took-away hand
manibus congrediuntur; bellum atrox multiplex immane
to-hands they-engage a-war fierce manifold huge
pertinax, cui simile nulla usquam narrat antiquitas, ubi talia
stubborn to-which like none anywhere relates antiquity where such

gesta referantur, ut nihil esset, quod in vita sua conspicere
deeds are-related that nothing there-was which in life his to-behold
potuisset egregius, qui huius miraculi privaretur aspectu.
he-could-have outstanding who of-this marvel should-be-deprived of-the-sight
nam si senioribus credere fas est, rivulus memorati campi
for if to-the-elders to-believe right it-is a-brook of-the-mentioned plain
humili ripa praelabens, peremptorum vulneribus sanguine
with-low bank flowing-by of-the-slain from-the-wounds with-blood
multo provectus est, non auctus imbribus, ut solebat, sed
much swollen was not increased by-rains as it-was-wont but
liquore concitatus insolito torrens factus est cruoris augmento.
by-liquid stirred unusual a-torrent made it-was of-gore by-the-increase
et quos illic coegit in aridam sitim vulnus inflictum,
and those-whom there drove into parching thirst the-wound inflicted
fluenta mixta clade traxerunt: ita constricti sorte miserabili
streams mixed with-slaughter drew so constrained by-lot wretched
sorvebant putantes sanguinem quem fuderant sauciati.
they-sucked thinking blood which they-had-shed the-wounded
hic Theodoridus rex dum adhortans discurrit exercitum,
here Theodorid the-king while exhorting runs-about the-army
equo depulsus pedibusque suorum conculcatus vitam
from-his-horse thrown and-by-the-feet of-his trampled the-life
maturae senectutis conclusit. alii vero dicunt eum interfectum
of-ripe old-age ended others but say him killed
telo Andagis de parte Ostrogotharum, qui tunc Attilanis
by-the-weapon of-Andag of the-side of-the-Ostrogoths who then the-Attilan
sequebantur regimen. hoc fuit, quod Attilae praesagio aruspices
followed rule this was what to-Attila by-presage the-soothsayers
prius dixerant, quamvis ille de Aetio suspicaret. tunc
before had-said although he about Aetius suspected then
Vesegothae dividentes se ab Alanis invadunt Hunnorum
the-Visigoths dividing themselves from the-Alans attack of-the-Huns

caterva et pene Attilam trucidarent, nisi providus prius
the-throng and almost Attila would-have-slaughtered unless foresighted before
fugisset et se suosque ilico intra septa castrorum,
he-had-fled and himself and-his at-once within the-enclosures of-the-camp
quam plaustris vallatum habebat, reclusisset; quamvis fragili
which with-wagons walled he-had had-shut although by-fragile
munimine, eo tamen quaesierunt subsidium vitae, quibus
fortification there yet they-sought the-safeguard of-life whom
paulo ante nullus poterat muralis agger obsistere. Thorismud
a-little before no could mural earthwork to-withstand Thorismund
autem regis Theodoridi filius, qui cum Aetio collem
moreover of-the-king Theodorid the-son who with Aetius the-hill
anticipans hostes de superiore loco proturbaverat, credens
anticipating the-enemies from the-higher place had-driven-off believing
se ad agmina propria pervenire, nocte caeca ad hostium
himself to the-columns his-own to-come in-the-night blind to of-the-enemies
carpenta ignarus incurrit. quem fortiter demicante quidam
the-wagons unwitting ran-into whom bravely fighting a-certain-one
capite vulnerato equo deiecit, suorumque providentia
in-the-head wounded from-his-horse threw-down and-of-his-men by-the-foresight
liberatus a proeliandi intentione desivit. Aetius vero similiter
freed from of-fighting the-purpose he-desisted Aetius but likewise
noctis confusione divisus cum inter hostes medius
of-the-night by-the-confusion separated when among the-enemies in-the-middle
vagaretur, trepidus, ne quid incidisset adversi Gothos,
he-wandered fearful lest anything had-befallen adverse the-Goths
inquiret, tandemque ad socia castra perveniens, relicuum
he-seeks and-at-last to the-allied camp coming the-rest
noctis scutorum defensione transegit. postera die luce orta
of-the-night of-shields with-defense spent on-the-next day light risen
cum tumulatos cadaveribus campos aspicerent nec audere
when piled with-corpses the-plains they-saw nor to-dare

Hunnos erumpere, suam arbitrantes victoriam scientesque
the-Huns to-break-out their judging victory and-knowing
Attilam non nisi magna clade confossum bella confugere,
Attila not unless by-great slaughter pierced from-war to-flee
cum tamen nil ageret vel prostratus abiectum, sed strepens
when yet nothing he-did even laid-low abject but clashing
armis, tubis canebat incursionemque minabatur, velut
with-arms with-trumpets he-sounded and-an-incursion threatened like
leo venabulis praessus speluncae aditus obambulans nec
a-lion by-hunting-spears pressed of-the-cave the-entrance pacing-about nor
audet insurgere nec desinet fremetibus vicina terrere: sic
dares to-rise nor ceases with-roarings the-neighborhood to-terrify so
bellicosissimus rex victores suos turbabat inclusus. conveniunt
the-most-warlike king victors his troubled shut-in meet
itaque Gothi Romanique et quid agerent de superato
and-so the-Goths and-Romans and what they-should-do about overcome
Attila, deliberant. placet eum obsidione fatigari, quia
Attila deliberate it-pleases him by-siege to-be-wearied because
annonae copiam non habebat, quando ab ipsorum sagittariis
of-grain an-abundance not he-had since by their archers
intra septa castrorum locatis crebris ictibus arceretur
within the-enclosures of-the-camp placed with-frequent shots was-kept-off
accessus. fertur autem desperatis rebus praedictum regem
the-approach it-is-said moreover despaired the-things the-aforesaid king
adhuc et suppraemo magnanimem equinis sellis construxisse
still also at-the-last magnanimous from-horse saddles to-have-built
pyram seseque, si adversarii inrumperent, flammis inicere
a-pyre and-himself if the-adversaries should-break-in into-the-flames to-throw
voluisse, ne aut aliquis eius vulnere laetaretur aut in
to-have-wished lest either anyone in-his wound should-rejoice or into
potestate hostium tantarum gentium dominus perveniret.
the-power of-the-enemies of-so-great nations the-lord should-come

Caput XLI

XLI · THORISMUND WITHDRAWS

The Visigoths find Theodorid's body and bury him with songs. Aetius, fearing the Goths' power if the Huns are destroyed, advises Thorismund to go home and secure his throne. 165,000 are said to have died. Attila, seeing the Goths gone, recovers his spirit.

Verum inter has obsidionum moras Vesegothae regem, fili
but amid these of-the-siege delays the-Visigoths the-king the-sons
patrem requirunt, admirantes eius absentiam, dum felicitas
the-father seek wondering-at his absence while good-fortune
fuerit subsecuta. cumque diutius exploratum, ut viris
had followed and-when longer searched as for-men
fortibus mos est, inter densissima cadavera repperissent,
brave the-custom is among the-thickest corpses they-had-found-him
cantibus honoratum inimicis spectantibus abstulerunt. videres
with-songs honored the-enemies looking-on they-carried-off you-would-see
Gothorum globos dissonis vocibus confragosos adhuc inter
of-the-Goths the-bands with-discordant voices harsh still amid
bella furentia funeri reddidisse culturam. fundebantur
the-wars raging to-the-dead to-have-rendered worship were-poured
lacrimae, sed quae viris fortibus inpendi solent. nam mors
tears but such-as to-men brave to-be-paid are-wont for death
erat, sed Hunno teste gloriosa, unde hostium putaretur
it-was but the-Hun as-witness glorious whence of-the-enemies it-might-be-thought
inclinatam fore superbiam, quando tanti regis efferri
bowed would-be the-pride when of-so-great a-king to-be-carried-out
cadaver cum suis insignibus conspiciebant. at Gothi Theodorito
the-corpse with its insignia they-beheld but the-Goths to-Theodorid
adhuc iusta solventes armis insonantibus regiam deferunt
still dues paying with-arms resounding the-royal carry

maiestatem fortissimusque Thorismud bene gloriosos manes
majesty and-the-bravest Thorismund well the-glorious shades
carissimi patris, ut decebat filium, patris exequias prosecutus.
of-his-dearest father as befitted a-son of-the-father obsequies attended
quod postquam peractum est, orbitatis dolore commotus et
which after completed it-was of-bereavement by-grief moved and
virtutis impetu, qua valebat, dum in reliquis Hunnorum
of-valor by-the-impulse in-which he-was-strong while on the-rest of-the-Huns
mortem patris vindicare contendit, Aetium patricium ac
the-death of-his-father to-avenge he-strives Aetius the-patrician as
si seniorem prudentiaeque maturum de hac parte consuluit,
if the-elder and-of-prudence ripe about this matter he-consulted
quid sibi esset in tempore faciendum. ille vero metuens, ne
what for-himself it-was in the-moment to-be-done he but fearing lest
Hunnis funditus interemptis a Gothis Romanum praemeretur
the-Huns utterly destroyed by the-Goths the-Roman should-be-crushed
imperium, praebet hac suasione consilium, ut ad sedes
empire furnishes with-this persuasion counsel that to seats
proprias remearet regnumque, quod pater reliquerat,
his-own he-should-return and-the-kingdom which his-father had-left
arriperet, ne germani eius opibus adsumptis paternis
he-should-seize lest the-brothers his the-wealth taken paternal
Vesegotharum regno pervaderent graviterque dehinc cum
of-the-Visigoths the-kingdom should-overrun and-heavily thereafter with
suis et, quod peius est, miseriterque pugnaret. quod responsum
his and what worse is pitiably he-should-fight which answer
non ambiguae, ut datum est, sed pro sua potius utilitate
not ambiguously as given it-was but for his rather advantage
susceptum relictis Hunnis redit ad Gallias. sic humana
received left the-Huns he-returns to the-Gauls so human
fragilitas dum suspicionibus occurrit, magna plerumque agenda
frailty while suspicions it-meets great mostly to-be-done

rerum occasione intercepit. in hoc etenim famosissimo et
of-things the-occasion intercepts in this for most-famous and
fortissimarum gentium bello ab utrisque partibus clxv
of-the-bravest nations war on both sides one-hundred-sixty-five
milia caesa referuntur, exceptis quindecim milibus Gepidarum
thousand slain are-reported excepted fifteen thousand of-the-Gepids
et Francorum, qui ante congressionem publicam noctu
and of-the-Franks who before the-encounter public by-night
sibi occurrentes mutuis concidere vulneribus, Francis
each-other meeting with-mutual fell wounds the-Franks
pro Romanorum, Gepidas pro Hunnorum parte pugnantibus.
for the-Romans the-Gepids for of-the-Huns the-side fighting
Attila igitur cognita discessione Gothorum, quod de inopinatis
Attila therefore learned the-departure of-the-Goths which about the-unexpected
collegi solet, inimicorum magis aestimans dolum diutius
to-be-inferred is-wont of-the-enemies rather thinking a-guile longer
se intra castra continuit. sed ubi hostium absentia sunt
himself within the-camp kept but when of-the-enemies in-the-absence have
longa silentia consecuta, erigitur mens ad victoriam, gaudia
long silences having-followed is-raised the-mind to victory the-joys
praesumuntur atque potentis regis animus in antiqua fata
are-anticipated and of-the-powerful king the-spirit to (his)-ancient fates
revertitur. Thorismud ergo, patre mortuo in campis statim
returns Thorismund therefore (his)-father having-died in the-plains at-once
Catalaunicis, ubi et pugnaverat, regia maiestate subvectus
Catalaunian where also he-had-fought by-royal majesty raised
Tolosam ingreditur. hic licet fratrum et fortium turba
Toulouse enters here though of-brothers and of-the-brave the-throng
gauderet, ipse tamen sic sua initia moderatus est, ut
rejoiced he-himself yet so his beginnings moderated has that
nullius repperiret de regni sucessione certamen.
of-no-one he-found about of-the-kingdom succession contest

Caput XLII

XLII · AQUILEIA AND POPE LEO

Attila besieges Aquileia, sees storks carrying their young away, and takes the city. The Huns ravage Italy, but his men, fearing Alaric's fate, dissuade Attila from marching on Rome. Pope Leo meets him on the Mincius and he withdraws, threatening to return unless he is sent Honoria.

Attila vero nancta occasione de secessu Vesegotharum,
Attila but having-got the-occasion from the-withdrawal of-the-Visigoths
et, quod saepe optaverat, cernens hostium solutione per
and what often he-had-wished seeing of-the-enemies the-dissolution into
partes, mox iam securus ad oppressionem Romanorum movit
parts soon now secure for the-oppression of-the-Romans moved
procinctum, primaque adgressione Aquileiensem obsidet
his-army and-at-the-first attack the-Aquileian besieges
civitatem, quae est metropolis Venetiarum, in mucrone vel
city which is the-metropolis of-the-Venetias on the-point or
lingua Atriatici posita sinus, cuius ab oriente murus Natissa
tongue of-the-Adriatic placed gulf whose on the-east the-wall the-Natissa
amnis fluens a monte Piccis elambit. ibique cum diu
river flowing from the-mount Piccis laps and-there when long
multumque obsidens nihil paenitus praevaleret, fortissimis
and-much besieging nothing at-all he-prevailed the-bravest
intrinsecus Romanorum militibus resistentibus, exercitu iam
within of-the-Romans soldiers resisting the-army already
murmurante et discedere cupiente, Attila deambulans circa
murmuring and to-depart desiring Attila walking-about around
muros, dum, utrum solveret castra an adhuc remoraretur,
the-walls while whether he-should-break the-camp or still should-stay
deliberat, animadvertit candidas aves, id est ciconias, qui
he-deliberates noticed white birds that is storks which

in fastigia domorum nidificant, de civitate foetos suos
on the-tops of-houses nest from the-city the-young their
trahere atque contra morem per rura forinsecus
to-drag and against custom through the-countryside outside
conportare. et ut erat sagacissimus inquisitor, presensit et
to-carry and as he-was a-most-shrewd inquirer foresaw and
ad suos: 'respicite', inquid, 'aves futurarum rerum providas
to his-men look he-says the-birds of-future things foreseeing
perituram relinquere civitatem casurasque arces periculo
about-to-perish to-leave the-city and-about-to-fall the-citadels danger
imminente deserere. non hoc vacuum, non hoc credatur
impending to-desert not this empty not this let-it-be-believed
incertum; rebus presciis consuetudinem mutat ventura
uncertain in-things foreknowing the-habit changes coming
formido'. quid plura? animos suorum rursus ad oppugnandam
fear what more the-spirits of-his-men again to storming
Aquileiam inflammat. qui machinis constructis omniaque
Aquileia inflames who engines built and-all
genera tormentorum adhibita, nec mora et invadunt civitatem,
kinds of-siege-engines applied nor delay and invade the-city
spoliant, dividunt vastantque crudeliter, ita ut vix eius
despoil divide and-lay-waste cruelly so that scarcely its
vestigia ut appareat reliquerunt. exhinc iam audaciores et
traces that it-may-appear they-left thence now bolder and
necdum Romanorum sanguine satiati per reliquas Venetum
not-yet of-the-Romans with-blood sated through the-remaining of-the-Veneti
civitates Hunni bacchantur. Mediolanum quoque Liguriae
cities the-Huns revel Milan also of-Liguria
metropolim et quondam regiam urbem pari tenore devastant
the-metropolis and once royal city equal course they-lay-waste
nec non et Ticinum aequali sorte deiciunt vicinaque
nor not also Ticinum with-equal lot they-cast-down and-the-neighboring

loca saevientes allidunt demoliuntque pene totam Italiam.
places raging they-dash and-demolish almost whole Italy
cumque ad Romam animus fuisset eius adtentus accedere,
and-when to Rome the-mind had-been his bent to-go
sui eum, ut Priscus istoricus refert, removerunt, non
his-men him as Priscus the-historian relates removed not
urbi, cui inimici erant, consulentes, sed Alarici quondam
for-the-city to-which enemies they-were caring but of-Alaric once
Vesegotharum regis obicientes exemplo, veriti regis sui
of-the-Visigoths king putting-forward the-example fearing of-king their
fortunam, quia ille post fractam Romam non diu supervixerit,
the-fortune because he after broken Rome not long survived
sed protinus rebus humanis excessit. igitur dum eius
but at-once from-affairs human departed therefore while his
animus ancipiti negotio inter ire et non ire fluctuaret
mind in-a-doubtful business between going and not going wavered
secumque deliberans tardaret, placida ei legatio a Roma
and-with-himself deliberating he-delayed a-placid to-him embassy from Rome
advenit. nam Leo papa per se ad eum accedens in
came for Leo the-pope by himself to him approaching in
agro Venetum Ambuleio, ubi Mincius amnis commeantium
the-field of-the-Veneti Ambuleius where the-Mincius river of-travelers
frequentatione transitur. qui mox deposuit exercitatu furore
by-the-frequenting is-crossed who soon laid-aside his-exercised fury
et rediens, quo venerat, iter ultra Danubium promissa pace
and returning where he-had-come the-way beyond the-Danube promised peace
discessit, illud pre omnibus denuntians atque interminando
departed that above all announcing and with-threatening
decernens, graviora se in Italia inlaturum, nisi ad se
deciding heavier-things himself on Italy about-to-bring unless to him
Honoriam Valentiniani principis germanam, filiam Placidiae
Honoria of-Valentinian the-prince the-sister the-daughter of-Placidia

Augustae, cum portione sibi regalium opum debita mitterent.
Augusta with the-portion to-her of-royal wealth owed they-should-send
ferebatur enim, quia haec Honoria, dum propter aulae
it-was-reported for that this Honoria while because-of of-the-court
decus ad castitatem teneretur nutu fratris inclusa,
the-honor to chastity she-was-held at-the-nod of-her-brother shut-in
clam eunucho misso Attilam invitasse, ut contra fratris
secretly a-eunuch sent Attila to-have-invited that against of-her-brother
potentiam eius patrociniis uteretur: prorsus indignum facinus,
the-power his protection she-might-use utterly an-unworthy deed
ut licentiam libidinis malo publico conpararet.
that the-license of-lust by-the-ill public she-should-purchase

Caput XLIII

XLIII · ATTILA DEFEATED BY THORISMUND

Attila demands tribute from Marcian, then turns against the Alans beyond the Loire, but Thorismund arrives first and defeats him. Thorismund is later killed while being bled, defending himself with a stool.

Reversus itaque Attila in sedes suas et quasi otii penitens
having-returned and-so Attila into seats his and as-if of-ease repenting
graviterque ferens a bello cessare, ad Orientis principem
and-heavily bearing from war to-cease to of-the-East the-prince
Marcianum legatos dirigit, provinciarum testans vastationem,
Marcian envoys sends of-the-provinces testifying the-devastation
quod sibi promissum a Theodosio quondam imperatore
because to-him promised by Theodosius once the-emperor
minime persolveretur, et inhumanior solito suis hostibus
not-at-all was-being-paid and more-inhuman than-usual to-his enemies

appareret. haec tamen agens, ut erat versutus et callidus,
he-would-appear these-things yet doing as he-was crafty and cunning
alibi minatus alibi arma sua commovit, et, quod
in-one-place having-threatened in-another arms his moved and what
restabat indignationi, faciem in Vesegothas convertit. sed
remained to-indignation the-face toward the-Visigoths turned but
non eum, quem de Romanis, reportavit eventum. nam per
not that which from the-Romans he-carried-back outcome for by
dissimiles anteriores vias recurrens, Alanorum partem trans
unlike former ways running-back of-the-Alans the-part beyond
flumen Ligeris considentem statuit suae redigere dicioni,
the-river Loire settled he-resolved to-his to-bring-back dominion
quatenus mutata per ipsos belli facie terribilior immineret.
so-that changed through them of-war the-face more-terrible he-might-threaten
igitur ab Dacia et Pannonia provinciis, in quibus tunc
therefore from Dacia and Pannonia provinces in which then
Hunni cum diversis subditis nationibus insidebant, egrediens
the-Huns with diverse subject nations dwelt going-out
Attila in Alanos movit procinctum. sed Thorismud rex
Attila against the-Alans moved his-army but Thorismund king
Vesegotharum, fraudem Attilae non inpari subtilitate
of-the-Visigoths the-fraud of-Attila not with-unequal subtlety
presentiens, ad Alanos tota velocitate prius advenit, ibique
foreseeing to the-Alans with-all speed before arrived and-there
supervenientis Attilae iam motibus preparatus occurrit,
of-the-arriving Attila already for-the-movements prepared met
consertoque proelio pene simili eum tenore, ut prius in
and-joined battle almost with-like him course as before on
campos Catalaunicos, ab spe removit victoriae fugatumque
the-plains Catalaunian from the-hope removed of-victory and-put-to-flight
a partibus suis sine triumpho remittens in sedes proprias
from parts his without triumph sending-back to seats his-own

fugire compulit. sic Attila famosus et multarum victoriarum
to-flee compelled thus Attila famous and of-many victories
dominus dum quaerit famam perditoris abicere et quod
lord while he-seeks the-fame of-the-destroyer to-cast-off and what
prius a Vesegothis pertulerat abolere, geminata sustenuit
before from the-Visigoths he-had-suffered to-abolish redoubled(-it) he-endured
ingloriosusque recessit. Thorismud vero repulsis ab Alanis
and-inglorious withdrew Thorismund but driven-back from the-Alans
Hunnorum catervis sine aliqua suorum lesione Tolosa
of-the-Huns the-throngs without any of-his injury to-Toulouse
migravit suorumque quieta pace conposita tertio anno regni
moved and-of-his quiet peace established in-the-third year of-reign
sui egrotans, dum sanguinem tollit de vena, ab Ascalc suo
his falling-sick while blood he-lets from a-vein by Ascalc his
clienti inimico nuntiante arma subtracta peremptus est. una
client hostile announcing (his)-arms withdrawn slain was with-one
tamen manu, quam liberam habebat, scabillum tenens sanguinis
yet hand which free he-had a-stool holding of-blood
sui extitit ultor, aliquantos insidiantes sibi extinguens.
his stood-forth as-avenger some plotting against-him destroying

Caput XLIV

XLIV · THEODORIC DEFEATS THE SUEVI

Theodoric II faces Rechiar of the Suevi, who claims all Spain and taunts him. With Burgundian allies he defeats the Suevi on the Ulbius and captures and kills Rechiar. His governor Agrivulf rebels and is beheaded, and the Suevi are allowed a king of their own.

Post cuius decessum Theoderidus germanus eius Vesaegotharum
after whose departure Theodoric brother his of-the-Visigoths
in regno succedens, mox Riciarium Suavorum regem
in the-kingdom succeeding soon Rechiar of-the-Suevi king
cognatum suum repperit inimicum. hic etenim Riciarius
kinsman his found an-enemy this for Rechiar
affinitate Theoderidi presumens, universam pene Spaniam
on-the-kinship of-Theodoric presuming whole almost Spain
sibi credidit occupandam, iudicans oportunum tempus
to-himself believed to-be-occupied judging opportune the-time
subreptionis incomposita initia temptare regnantis. quibus
of-stealth the-unsettled beginnings to-try of-the-one-reigning to-whom
antea Gallicia et Lysitania sedes fuere, quae in dextro latere
before Gallicia and Lusitania the-seats were which on the-right side
Spaniae per ripam Oceani porriguntur, habentes ab oriente
of-Spain along the-shore of-the-Ocean are-stretched having on the-east
Austrogonia, ab occidente in promuntorio sacrum Scipionis
Austrogonia on the-west on the-promontory the-sacred of-Scipio
Romani ducis monumentum, a septentrione Oceanum, a
the-Roman general the-monument on the-north the-Ocean on
meridie Lysitaniam et fluvium Tagum, qui harenis suis
the-south Lusitania and the-river Tagus which with-sands its
permiscens auri metalla trahit cum limi vilitate divitias.
mixing of-gold the-metals drags with of-mud the-cheapness riches

exinde ergo exiens Riciarius rex Suavorum nititur totas
thence therefore going-out Rechiar king of-the-Suevi strives all
Spanias occupare. cui Theodoridus cognatus suus, ut erat
the-Spains to-occupy to-whom Theodoric kinsman his as he-was
moderatus, legatos mittens, pacifice dixit, ut non solum
moderate envoys sending peaceably said that not only
recederet a finibus alienis, verum etiam nec temptare
he-should-withdraw from borders others' but also not to-try
presumeret, odium sibi tali ambitione adquirens. ille
he-should-presume hatred for-himself by-such ambition acquiring he
vero animo pretumido ait: 'si hic murmuras et me venire
but with-mind very-swollen said if here you-murmur and me to-come
causaris, Tolosam, ubi tu sedes. veniam; ibi, si vales,
you-complain to-Toulouse where you sit I-shall-come there if you-are-able
resiste'. his auditis aegre tulit Theodoridus compacatusque
resist these heard ill bore Theodoric and-having-made-peace
cum citeris gentibus arma movit in Suavos, Burgundzonum
with the-other nations arms moved against the-Suevi of-the-Burgundians
quoque Gnudiuchum et Hilpericum reges auxiliarios habens
also Gundioc and Hilperic the-kings as-auxiliaries having
sibique devotos. ventum est ad certamen iuxta flumen
and-to-himself devoted come it-was to the-contest near the-river
Ulbium, qui inter Asturicam Hiberiamque pretermeat,
Ulbius which between Asturica and-Iberia flows-past
consertoque proelio Theoderidus cum Vesegothis, qui ex iusta
and-joined battle Theodoric with the-Visigoths who on the-just
parte pugnabat, victor efficitur, Suavorum gente pene cuncta
side fought victor is-made of-the-Suevi the-nation almost all
usque ad internicione prosternens. quorum rex Riciarius
all-the-way to annihilation laying-low of-whom the-king Rechiar
relicta infesta hoste fugiens in nave conscendit adversaque
left the-hostile enemy fleeing into a-ship climbed and-by-an-adverse

procella Tyrreni hoste repercussus Vesegotharum est
storm of-the-Tyrrhenian enemy beaten-back of-the-Visigoths was
manibus redditus. miserabilis non differt mortem, cum
into-the-hands returned the-wretched not puts-off death when
elementa mutaverit. Theoderidus vero victor existens subactis
the-elements he-has-changed Theodoric but victor being the-subdued
pepercit nec ultra certamine saevire permisit, preponens
spared nor further by-combat to-rage permitted setting-over
Suavis, quos subegerat, clientem proprium nomine Agrivulfum.
the-Suevi whom he-had-subdued client his-own by-name Agrivulf
qui in brevi animu praevaricatione Suavorum suasionibus
who in short (his)-mind by-prevarication of-the-Suevi by-persuasions
commutans neglexit imperata conplere, potius tyrranica
changing neglected the-commands to-fulfill rather with-tyrannical
elatione superbiens credensque se ea virtute provinciam
elation being-proud and-believing himself by-that valor the-province
obtinere, qua dudum cum domino suo ea subigisset. vir
to-hold by-which formerly with lord his it he-had-subdued a-man
si quidem erat Varnorum stirpe genitus, longe a Gothici
if indeed he-was of-the-Varni from-the-stock begotten far from of-Gothic
sanguinis nobilitate seiunctus, idcirco nec libertatem studens
blood the-nobility separated therefore neither liberty pursuing
nec patrono fidem reservans. quo conperto Theodoridus mox
nor to-his-patron faith keeping which learned Theodoric soon
contra eum, qui eum de regno pervaso deicerent,
against him men-who him from the-kingdom invaded should-cast-down
destinavit. qui venientes sine mora in primo eum certamine
appointed who coming without delay in the-first him contest
superantes congruam factorum eius ab eo exigerunt ultionem.
overcoming fitting of-deeds his from him exacted vengeance
captus namque et suorum solacio destitutus capite
taken for and of-his of-the-support destitute in-the-head

plectitur, sensitque tandem iratum, qui propitium dominum
he-is-punished and-felt at-last angry who propitious the-lord
crediderat contemnendum. tunc Suavi rectoris sui interitum
he-had-believed to-be-despised then the-Suevi of-ruler their the-death
contuentes locorum sacerdotes ad Theoderidum supplices
beholding of-the-places the-priests to Theodoric as-suppliants
direxerunt. quos ille pontificali reverentia suscipiens non
sent whom he with-pontifical reverence receiving not
solum inpunitatem Suavorum indulsit, sed ut sibi de
only impunity to-the-Suevi granted but that for-themselves from
suo genere principem constituerent, flexus pietate concessit.
their race a-prince they-should-appoint bent by-piety he-allowed
quod et factum est, et Rimismundum sibi Suavi
which also done was and Remismund for-themselves the-Suevi
regulum ordinaverunt. his peractis paceque cuncta
as-kinglet appointed these-things completed and-by-peace all-things
munitis, tertio decimo regni sui anno Theoderidus occubuit.
fortified in-the-third tenth of-reign his year Theodoric fell

Caput XLV

XLV · EURIC AND THE FALL OF THE WEST

Euric succeeds amid changing emperors: Maximus, Majorian, Severus, Anthemius. Euric defeats the Breton king Riotimus and takes Clermont; Ecdicius flees. Nepos is deposed by Orestes, who makes his son Augustulus emperor.

Cui frater Eurichus praecupida festinatione succedens sceva
whom his-brother Euric with-overeager haste succeeding by-sinister
suspicione pulsatus est. nam dum haec circa Vesegotharum
suspicion struck was for while these-things around of-the-Visigoths

gente et alia nonnulla geruntur, Valentinianus imperator
the-nation and other some are-done Valentinian the-emperor
dolo Maximi occisus est et ipse Maximus tyrrannico
by-the-guile of-Maximus slain was and himself Maximus in-tyrannical
more regnum invasit. quod audiens Gyzericus rex Vandalorum
manner the-kingdom invaded which hearing Gaiseric king of-the-Vandals
ab Africa armata classe in Italiam venit Romaeque
from Africa with-armed fleet into Italy came and-Rome
ingressus cuncta devastat. Maximus vero fugiens a quodam
having-entered all-things lays-waste Maximus but fleeing by a-certain
Urso, milite Romano, interemptus est. post quem iussu
Ursus a-soldier Roman slain was after whom by-order
Marciani imperatoris Orientalis Maiurianus Occidentale suscepit
of-Marcian of-the-emperor of-the-East Majorian the-Western took-up
imperium gubernandum. sed et ipse non diu regnans, dum
empire to-be-governed but also himself not long reigning when
contra Alanos, qui Gallias infestabant, movisset procinctum,
against the-Alans who the-Gauls were-infesting he-had-moved his-army
Dertona iuxta fluvium Hyra cognomento occiditur. cuius
at-Dertona near the-river Hyra by-name is-killed whose
locum Severus invasit, qui tertio anno imperii sui Romae
place Severus invaded who in-the-third year of-empire his at-Rome
obiit. quod cernens Leo imperator, qui in Orientali regno
died which seeing Leo the-emperor who in the-Eastern kingdom
Marciano successerat, Anthemium patricium suum ordinans
Marcian had-succeeded Anthemius patrician his appointing
Romae principem distinavit. qui veniens ilico Recimerem
at-Rome as-prince destined who coming at-once Ricimer
generum suum contra Alanos direxit, virum egregium et
son-in-law his against the-Alans directed a-man excellent and
pene tunc in Italia ad exercitum singularem. qui et
almost then in Italy for the-army singular who both

multitudine Alanorum et regem eorum Beorgum in primo
the-multitude of-the-Alans and king their Beorgor in the-first
statim certamine superatos internicioni prostravit. Euricus
at-once contest overcome to-annihilation laid-low Euric
ergo, Vesegotharum rex, crebram mutationem Romanorum
therefore of-the-Visigoths king the-frequent change of-the-Roman
principum cernens Gallias suo iure nisus est occupare. quod
princes seeing the-Gauls by-his right striven has to-occupy which
conperiens Anthemius imperator Brittonum solacia postulavit.
learning Anthemius the-emperor of-the-Britons the-support demanded
quorum rex Riotimus cum duodecim milia veniens in
of-whom the-king Riotimus with twelve thousand coming into
Beturigas civitate Oceano e navibus egresso susceptus
of-the-Bituriges city from-the-Ocean from the-ships having-gone-out received
est. ad quos rex Vesegotharum Eurichus innumerum ductans
was to whom the-king of-the-Visigoths Euric an-innumerable leading
advenit exercitum diuque pugnans Riutimum Brittonum rege,
came army and-long fighting Riotimus of-the-Britons king
antequam Romani in eius societate coniungerentur, effugavit.
before the-Romans in his alliance were-joined put-to-flight
qui amplam partem exercitus amissam cum quibus potuit
who an-ample part of-the-army lost with whom he-could
fugiens ad Burgundzonum gentem vicinam Romanisque in eo
fleeing to of-the-Burgundians the-nation neighboring and-to-the-Romans at that
tempore foederatam advenit. Eurichus vero rex Vesegotharum
time allied came Euric but king of-the-Visigoths
Arevernam Galliae civitatem occupavit Anthemio principe
the-Arvernian of-Gaul city occupied Anthemius the-prince
iam defuncto: qui cum Ricemere genero suo intestino bello
already having-died who with Ricimer son-in-law his in-internal war
saeviens Romam trivisset, ipseque a genero peremptus
raging Rome had-worn-down and-himself by his-son-in-law slain

regnum reliquid Olybrio. quo tempore in Constantinopolim
the-kingdom left to-Olybrius at-which time in Constantinople
Aspar primus patriciorum et Gothorum genere clarus cum
Aspar first of-the-patricians and of-the-Goths by-race famous with
Ardabure et Patriciolo filiis, illo quidem olim patricio, hoc
Ardabur and Patriciolus his-sons that-one indeed formerly patrician this-one
autem Caesare generoque Leonis principis appellato, spadonum
moreover Caesar and-son-in-law of-Leo the-prince called of-eunuchs
ensibus in palatio vulneratus interiit. et necdum Olybrio
by-swords in the-palace wounded perished and not-yet Olybrius
octavo mense in regno ingresso obeunte Glycerius apud
in-the-eighth month into the-kingdom having-entered dying Glycerius at
Ravennam plus presumptione quam electione Caesar effectus.
Ravenna more by-presumption than by-election Caesar made
quem anno vix expleto Nepus Marcellini quondam
whom in-the-year scarcely completed Nepos of-Marcellinus once
patricii sororis filius a regno deiciens in Porto Romano
patrician of-the-sister the-son from the-kingdom casting-down at Portus Romanus
episcopum ordinavit. tantas varietates mutationesque Eurichus
bishop appointed so-great varieties and-changes Euric
cernens, ut diximus superius, Arevernam occupans civitatem,
seeing as we-have-said above the-Arvernian occupying city
ubi tunc Romanorum dux praeerat Ecdicius nobilissimus
where then of-the-Romans general was-over Ecdicius a-most-noble
senator et dudum Aviti imperatoris, qui ad paucos dies
senator and formerly of-Avitus of-the-emperor who for a-few days
regnum invaserat, filius (nam hic ante Olybrium paucos dies
the-kingdom had-invaded the-son for this-one before Olybrius a-few days
tenens imperium ultro secessit Placentia, ibique episcopus
holding the-empire of-his-own-accord withdrew to-Placentia and-there bishop
est ordinatus). huius ergo filius Ecdicius, diu certans cum
was appointed of-this therefore son Ecdicius long contending with

Vesegothis nec valens antestare, relicta patria maximeque
the-Visigoths nor able to-withstand left his-fatherland and-especially
urbem Arevernate hosti, ad tutiora se loca collegit. quod
the-city Arvernian to-the-enemy to safer himself places betook which
audiens Nepus imperator praecepit Ecdicium relictis Galliis
hearing Nepos the-emperor ordered Ecdicius left the-Gauls
ad se venire loco eius Orestem mag. mil. ordinatum.
to himself to-come in-place his Orestes master of-the-soldiers appointed
qui Orestes suscepto exercitu et contra hostes egrediens
who Orestes taken-up the-army and against the-enemies going-out
a Roma Ravenna pervenit ibique remoratus Augustulum
from Rome to-Ravenna came and-there having-stayed Augustulus
filium suum imperatorem effecit. quo conperto Nepus fugit
son his emperor made which learned Nepos fled
Dalmatias ibique defecit privatus a regno, ubi iam
to-the-Dalmatias and-there failed deprived of the-kingdom where already
Glycerius dudum imperator episcopatum Salonitanum habebat.
Glycerius formerly emperor the-bishopric of-Salona held

Caput XLVI

XLVI · ODOACER

Odoacer, king of the Torcilingi, invades Italy, kills Orestes and exiles Augustulus to Campania. So the Western empire, begun by Augustus 709 years after Rome's founding, ends in its 522nd year, and Odoacer rules Italy until Theodoric comes.

Augustulo vero a patre Oreste in Ravenna imperatore
Augustulus but by his-father Orestes at Ravenna emperor
ordinato non multum post Odoacer Torcilingorum rex habens
appointed not much after Odoacer of-the-Torcilingi king having

secum Sciros, Herulos diversarumque gentium auxiliarios
with-himself the-Sciri Heruli and-of-diverse nations auxiliaries
Italiam occupavit et Orestem interfectum Augustulum filium
Italy occupied and Orestes killed Augustulus son
eius de regno pulsum in Lucullano Campaniae castello exilii
his from the-kingdom driven in the-Lucullan of-Campania castle of-exile
poena damnavit. sic quoque Hesperium Romanae gentis
by-the-penalty condemned so also the-Western of-the-Roman nation
imperium, quod septingentesimo nono urbis conditae anno
empire which in-the-seven-hundredth ninth of-the-city founded year
primus Augustorum Octavianus Augustus tenere coepit, cum
first of-the-Augusti Octavian Augustus to-hold began with
hoc Augustulo periit anno decessorum prodecessorumue
this Augustulus perished in-the-year of-the-predecessors or-forerunners
regni quingentesimo vicesimo secundo, Gothorum dehinc
of-the-reign five-hundredth twentieth second of-the-Goths thereafter
regibus Romam Italiamque tenentibus. interea Odoacer rex
the-kings Rome and-Italy holding meanwhile Odoacer king
gentium omnem Italiam subiugatam, ut terrorem suum
of-the-nations all Italy subjugated that terror his
Romanis iniceret, mox initio regni sui Bracilam
on-the-Romans he-might-throw soon at-the-beginning of-reign his Bracila
comitem apud Ravennam occidit regnoque suo confortato
the-count at Ravenna killed and-kingdom his strengthened
pene per tredecem annos usque ad Theodorici praesentiam,
almost through thirteen years all-the-way to of-Theodoric the-presence
de quo in subsequentibus dicturi sumus, obtenuit.
about whom in the-following about-to-speak we-are held

Caput XLVII

XLVII · EURIC AND ALARIC II

Bribed by Gaiseric, Euric takes Arles and Marseilles, holds Spain and Gaul and subdues the Burgundians. He dies at Arles, and his son Alaric, ninth in line from Alaric the Great, succeeds.

Interim tamen ad eum ordinem, unde digressi sumus,
meanwhile yet to that order whence digressed we-have
redeamus, et quomodo Euricus rex Vesegotharum Romani
let-us-return and how Euric king of-the-Visigoths of-the-Roman
regni vacillationem cernens Arelatum et Massiliam propriae
kingdom the-tottering seeing Arles and Marseilles to-his-own
subdidit dicioni. Gyzericus etenim Vandalorum rex suis
subjected dominion Gaiseric for of-the-Vandals king with-his
eum muneribus ad ista committenda inlicuit, quatenus
him gifts to these-things to-be-committed enticed so-that
ipse Leonis vel Zenonis insidias, quas contra eum
he-himself of-Leo or of-Zeno the-plots which against him
direxerant, praecaveret, egitque, ut Orientalem
they-had-directed might-forestall and-he-brought-it-about that the-Eastern
imperium Ostrogothas, Hesperium Vesegothae vastarent, ut
empire the-Ostrogoths the-Western the-Visigoths should-lay-waste that
in utramque rem publicam hostibus decernentibus ipse in
in both state public the-enemies fighting he-himself in
Africa quietus regnaret. quod Eurichus grato suscipiens
Africa quiet might-reign which Euric with-grateful receiving
animo, totas Spanias Galliasque sibi iam iure proprio
mind all the-Spains and-Gauls to-himself already by-right his-own
tenens, simul quoque et Burgunzones subegit Arelatoque
holding together also also the-Burgundians subdued and-at-Arles

degens nono decimo anno regni sui vita privatus est. huic
living in-the-ninth tenth year of-reign his of-life deprived was him
successit proprius filius Alarichus, qui nonus in numero ab
succeeded his-own son Alaric who the-ninth in number from
illo Alarico magno regnum adeptus est Vesegotharum. nam
that Alaric the-great the-kingdom gained has of-the-Visigoths for
pari tenore, ut de Augustis superius diximus, et in Alaricis
by-equal course as about the-Augusti above we-have-said also in the-Alarics
provenisse cognoscitur, et in eos saepe regna deficiunt, a
to-have-come-about is-known and in them often kingdoms fail from
quorum nominibus inchoarunt. quod nos interim praetermisso
whose names they-began which we meanwhile passed-over
sic ut promisimus omnem Gothorum texamus originem.
so as we-promised the-whole of-the-Goths let-us-weave origin

Caput XLVIII

XLVIII · THE OSTROGOTHS UNDER THE HUNS

Under the Huns, Vinitharius crucifies the Antes' king Boz but is killed by Balamber. Hunimund and Thorismund follow, and after Thorismund dies the Ostrogoths, mourning him, choose no king for forty years. Vandalarius' sons Valamir, Thiudimir, and Vidimer share the kingdom and serve Attila.

Et quia, dum utrique gentes, tam Ostrogothae quam etiam
and because while both nations as-well the-Ostrogoths as also
Vesegothae, in uno essent, ut valui, maiorum sequens dicta
the-Visigoths in one were as I-was-able of-the-elders following the-sayings
revolvi divisosque Vesegothas ab Ostrogothis ad liquidum
I-have-unrolled and-the-divided Visigoths from the-Ostrogoths to clearness
sum prosecutus, necesse nobis est iterum ad antiquas eorum
I-have followed-up necessary for-us it-is again to ancient their

Scythicas sedes redire et Ostrogotharum genealogia actusque
Scythian seats to-return and of-the-Ostrogoths the-genealogy and-deeds
pari tenore exponere. quos constat morte Hermanarici regis
equal course to-set-out who it-is-agreed by-the-death of-Hermanaric king
sui, decessione a Vesegothis divisos, Hunnorum subditos
their by-the-departure from the-Visigoths divided of-the-Huns subject
dicioni, in eadem patria remorasse, Vinithario tamen
to-the-dominion in the-same fatherland to-have-remained Vinitharius yet
Amalo principatus sui insignia retinente. qui avi
the-Amal of-rule his the-insignia retaining who of-his-grandfather
Vultulfi virtute imitatus, quamvis Hermanarici felicitate
Vultuulf the-valor having-imitated although of-Hermanaric in-good-fortune
inferior, tamen aegre ferens Hunnorum imperio subiacere,
inferior yet ill bearing of-the-Huns to-the-rule to-be-subject
paululum se subtrahens ab illis suaque dum nititur
a-little himself withdrawing from them and-his while he-strives
ostendere virtute, in Antorum fines movit procinctum,
to-show valor into of-the-Antes the-borders moved his-army
eosque dum adgreditur prima congressione superatus,
and-them while he-attacks at-the-first encounter overcome
deinde fortiter egit regemque eorum Boz nomine cum filiis
then bravely acted and-the-king their Boz by-name with sons
suis et lxx primatibus in exemplum terroris adfixit, ut
his and seventy chiefs for an-example of-terror crucified that
dediticiis metum cadavera pendentium geminarent. sed
to-the-surrendered the-fear the-corpses of-the-hanging might-double but
dum tali libertate vix anni spatio imperasset, non
while with-such liberty scarcely of-a-year the-space he-had-ruled not
est passus Balamber, rex Hunnorum, sed ascito ad se
has suffered(-it) Balamber king of-the-Huns but summoned to himself
Gesimundo, Hunnimundi magni filio, qui iuramenti sui et
Gesimund of-Hunimund the-great the-son who of-oath his and

fidei memor cum ampla parte Gothorum Hunnorum imperio
of-faith mindful with an-ample part of-the-Goths of-the-Huns to-the-rule
subiacebat, renovatoque cum eo foedere super Vinitharium
was-subject and-renewed with him the-treaty against Vinitharius
duxit exercitum; diuque certati primo et secundo certamine
led an-army and-long fought in-the-first and in-the-second contest
Vinitharius vincit. nec valet aliquis commemorare, quanta
Vinitharius conquers nor is-able anyone to-relate how-great
strage de Hunnorum Venetharius fecit exercitu. tertio vero
slaughter of of-the-Huns Vinitharius made the-army in-the-third indeed
proelio subreptionis auxilio ad fluvium nomine Erac, dum
battle of-surprise with-the-help at the-river by-name Erac when
utrique ad se venissent, Balamber sagitta missa caput
both to each-other had-come Balamber an-arrow sent the-head
Venetharii saucians interemit neptemque eius Vadamercam
of-Vinitharius wounding slew and-the-niece his Vadamerca
sibi in coniugio copulans iam omnem in pace Gothorum
to-himself in marriage joining now all in peace of-the-Goths
populum subactum possedit, ita tamen, ut genti Gothorum
the-people subdued possessed so yet that to-the-nation of-the-Goths
semperum proprius regulus, quamvis Hunnorum consilio,
always its-own kinglet although of-the-Huns by-the-counsel
imperaret. et mox defuncto Venethario rexit eos Hunimundus,
should-rule and soon having-died Vinitharius ruled them Hunimund
filius quondam regis potentissimi Hermanarici, acer in bello
son once of-the-king most-powerful Hermanaric keen in war
totoque corpore pulchritudine pollens, qui post haec contra
and-in-whole body in-beauty excelling who after these-things against
Suavorum gente feliciter dimicavit. eoque defuncto successit
of-the-Suevi the-nation successfully fought and-him having-died succeeded
Thorismud filius eius flore iuventutis ornatus, qui
Thorismund son his with-the-flower of-youth adorned who

secundo principatus sui anno contra Gepidas movit exercitum
in-the-second of-rule his year against the-Gepids moved an-army
magnaque de illis potitus victoria casu equi dicitur
and-great over them having-gained a-victory by-the-fall of-his-horse is-said
interemptus. quo defuncto sic eum luxerunt Ostrogothae, ut
to-have-been-killed whom having-died so him mourned the-Ostrogoths that
quadraginta per annos in eius locum rex alius non succederet,
forty through years in his place king another not should-succeed
quatenus et illius memoriae semperum haberent in ore et
so-that both his memory always they-might-have in mouth and
tempus accederet, quo Valamer habitum repararet virilem, qui
the-time might-approach when Valamir the-bearing should-recover manly who
erat ex consubrino eius genitus Vandalario; quia filius eius,
was from the-cousin his begotten Vandalarius because son his
ut superius diximus, Beremud iam contempta Ostrogotharum
as above we-have-said Beremud already despised of-the-Ostrogoths
gente propter Hunnorum dominio ad partes Hesperias
the-nation because-of of-the-Huns the-dominion to the-parts Western
Vesegotharum fuisset gente secutus, de quo et ortus est
of-the-Visigoths had the-nation followed from whom also sprung has
Vetericus. Veterici quoque filius natus est Eutharicus, qui,
Veteric of-Veteric also the-son born was Eutharic who
iunctus Amalasuenthae filiae Theodorici, item Amalorum
joined to-Amalasuntha the-daughter of-Theodoric likewise of-the-Amals
stirpe iam divisa coniunxit et genuit Athalaricum et
the-stock already divided joined and begot Athalaric and
Mathesuentam. sed quia Athalaricus in annis puerilibus
Matasuntha but because Athalaric in years childish
defunctus est, Mathesuenta Constantinopolim allata de
died has Matasuntha to-Constantinople brought from

secundo viro, id est Germano fratruele Iustiniani imperatoris,
a-second husband that is Germanus cousin of-Justinian of-the-emperor
genuit postumum filium, quem nominavit Germanum.
bore a-posthumous son whom she-named Germanus
Sed nobis, ut ordo, quem coepimus, decurrat, ad Vandalarii
but for-us that the-order which we-began may-run-down to of-Vandalarius
sobulem, quae trino flore pululabat, redeundum est. hic
the-offspring which with-threefold flower sprouted to-be-returned it-is this
enim Vandalarius, fratruelis Hermanarici et supra scripti
for Vandalarius cousin of-Hermanaric and above of-written
Thorismudi consubrinus, tribus editis liberis in gente Amala
Thorismund cousin three born children in the-nation Amal
gloriatus est, id est Valamir Thiudimir Vidimir. ex quibus
boasted has that is Valamir Thiudimir Vidimer of whom
per successione parentum Valamir in regno conscendit
by succession of-parents Valamir to the-kingdom ascended
adhuc Hunnis eos inter alias gentes generaliter optinentibus.
still the-Huns them among other nations generally holding
eratque tunc in tribus his germanis contemplatio grata,
and-there-was then in three these brothers a-contemplation pleasing
quando mirabilis Thiudimer pro fratris Valamir militabat
when the-wonderful Thiudimir for of-his-brother Valamir served
imperio, Valamir vero pro altero iubebat ornando, Vidimer
the-rule Valamir but for the-other ordered adorning Vidimer
servire fratribus aestimabat. sic eis mutua affectione
to-serve his-brothers deemed so them with-mutual affection
se tuentibus nulli paenitus deerat regnum, quod
themselves protecting to-none at-all was-lacking the-kingdom which
utrique in sua pace tenebant. ita tamen, ut saepe dictum
both in their peace they-held so yet as often said
est, imperabant, ut ipsi Attilae Hunnorum regis
it-has-been they-ruled that they-themselves of-Attila of-the-Huns king

imperio deservirent: quibus nec contra parentes Vesegothas
to-the-rule were-devoted to-whom nor against kinsmen the-Visigoths
licuisset recusare certamen, sed necessitas domini,
would-it-have-been-permitted to-refuse contest but the-necessity of-the-lord
etiam parricidium si iubet, implendum est. nec aliter ab
even parricide if he-orders to-be-fulfilled is nor otherwise from
Hunnorum dominio divelli potuit gens aliqua Scythica,
of-the-Huns the-dominion to-be-torn-away could nation any Scythian
nisi optata cunctis nationibus in commune et Romanis
unless desired by-all nations in common and by-the-Romans
mors Attilae proveniret, quae tam fuit vilis, ut vita mirabilis.
the-death of-Attila should-come which as was mean as the-life wonderful

Caput XLIX

XLIX · THE DEATH OF ATTILA

On his wedding night with Ildico, Attila dies of a nosebleed in his sleep. The Huns gash their faces, ride around his body chanting his deeds, feast at a strava, and bury him in three coffins of gold, silver, and iron, killing those who dug the grave.

Qui, ut Priscus istoricus refert, exitus sui tempore puellam
who as Priscus the-historian relates of-death his at-the-time a-girl
Ildico nomine decoram valde sibi in matrimonio post
Ildico by-name beautiful very to-himself in marriage after
innumerabiles uxores, ut mos erat gentis illius, socians
innumerable wives as the-custom was of-nation that joining
eiusque in nuptiis hilaritate nimia resolutus, vino somnoque
and-her at the-wedding by-hilarity excessive loosened with-wine and-with-sleep
gravatus resupinus iaceret, redundans sanguis, qui ei solite
weighed-down on-his-back lay overflowing the-blood which to-him usually

de naribus effluebat, dum consuetis meatibus impeditur,
from the-nostrils flowed while by-its-accustomed passages it-is-hindered
itinere ferali faucibus illapsus extinxit. ita glorioso
by-way deadly into-the-throat slipping extinguished-him so to-the-glorious
per bella regi temulentia pudendos exitos dedit. sequenti
through wars king drunkenness shameful ends gave on-the-following
vero luce cum magna pars diei fuisset exempta, ministri
indeed day when great part of-the-day had-been taken-away the-servants
regii triste aliquid suspicantes post clamores maximos fores
royal sad something suspecting after shouts very-great the-doors
effringunt inveniuntque Attilae sine ullo vulnere necem
break-open and-find of-Attila without any wound the-death
sanguinis effusione peractam puellamque demisso vultu sub
of-blood by-the-effusion accomplished and-the-girl with-lowered face under
velamine lacrimantem. tunc, ut gentis illius mos est, crinium
a-veil weeping then as of-nation that the-custom is of-the-hair
parte truncata informes facies cavis turpavere vulneribus,
part cut-off misshapen their-faces with-hollow they-disfigured wounds
ut proeliator eximius non femineis lamentationibus et
that the-warrior outstanding not with-womanly laments and
lacrimis, sed sanguine lugeretur virile. de quo id accessit
tears but with-blood might-be-mourned manly about whom this was-added
mirabile, ut Marciano principi Orientis de tam feroci hoste
wonderful that to-Marcian the-prince of-the-East about so fierce an-enemy
sollicito in somnis divinitas adsistens arcum Attilae in eadem
anxious in sleep divinity standing-by the-bow of-Attila in the-same
nocte fractum ostenderet, quasi quod gens ipsa eo telo
night broken showed as-if because the-nation itself on-that weapon
multum praesumat. hoc Priscus istoricus vera se dicit
much relies this Priscus the-historian true himself says
adtestatione probare. nam in tantum magnis imperiis Attila
by-attestation to-prove for so much to-great empires Attila

terribilis habitus est, ut eius mortem in locum muneris
terrible held was that his death in place of-a-gift
superna regnantibus indicarent. cuius manes quibus
the-heavenly-powers to-those-reigning indicated whose shades with-what-things
a sua gente honoratae sunt, pauca de multis dicere non
by his nation honored were a-few-things of many to-say not
omittamus. in mediis si quidem campis et intra tenturia sirica
let-us-omit in the-middle if indeed plains and within tents silken
cadavere conlocato spectaculum admirandum et sollemniter
the-corpse placed a-spectacle to-be-admired and solemnly
exhibetur. nam de tota gente Hunnorum lectissimi equites
is-shown for from the-whole nation of-the-Huns the-most-chosen horsemen
in eo loco, quo erat positus, in modum circensium cursibus
in that place where he-was placed in the-manner of-circus-games in-courses
ambientes, facta eius cantu funereo tali ordine referebant.
going-around the-deeds his in-song funereal in-such order related
'praecipuus Hunnorum rex Attila, patre genitus Mundzuco,
the-foremost of-the-Huns king Attila from-father begotten Mundzuc
fortissimarum gentium dominus, qui inaudita ante se
of-the-bravest nations lord who with-unheard-of before him
potentia solus Scythica et Germanica regna possedit nec non
power alone the-Scythian and German kingdoms possessed nor not
utraque Romani urbis imperia captis civitatibus terruit et, ne
both of-the-Roman city empires captured cities terrified and lest
praedae reliqua subderentur, placatus praecibus annuum vectigal
to-plunder the-rest should-be-subjected appeased by-prayers an-annual tribute
accepit: cumque haec omnia proventu felicitatis egerit,
received and-when these-things all by-the-outcome of-good-fortune he-had-done
non vulnere hostium, non fraude suorum, sed gente
not by-wound of-the-enemies not by-the-fraud of-his but his-nation
incolume inter gaudia laetus sine sensu doloris occubuit. quis
unharmed amid joys glad without feeling of-pain fell who

ergo hunc exitum putet, quem nullus aestimat vindicandum?'
therefore this end can-think which no-one deems to-be-avenged
postquam talibus lamentis est defletus, stravam super
after with-such laments he-was bewailed a-strava over
tumulum eius quam appellant ipsi ingenti commessatione
tomb his which they-call they-themselves with-huge revelry
concelebrant, et contraria invicem sibi copulantes luctu
they-celebrate and contraries in-turn to-each-other joining with-grief
funereo mixto gaudio explicabant, noctuque secreto cadaver
funereal mixed joy they-unfolded and-by-night secretly the-corpse
terra reconditum copercula primum auro, secundum
in-the-earth hidden the-coffins the-first with-gold the-second
argento, tertium ferri rigore communiunt, significantes
with-silver the-third of-iron with-the-strength they-fortify signifying
tali argumento potentissimo regi omnia convenisse: ferrum,
by-such a-token to-the-most-powerful king all-things to-have-befitted iron
quod gentes edomuit, aurum et argentum, quod ornatum
because the-nations he-tamed gold and silver because the-adornment
rei publicae utriusque acceperit. addunt arma hostium
of-the-state public of-both he-had-received they-add arms of-enemies
caedibus adquisita, faleras vario gemmarum fulgore
by-the-slaughters acquired trappings with-varied of-gems brilliance
praetiosas et diversi generis insignia, quibus colitur aulicum
precious and of-diverse kind insignia by-which is-adorned the-courtly
decus. et, ut tantis divitiis humana curiositas arceretur,
splendor and that from-so-great riches human curiosity might-be-kept-off
operi deputatos detestabili mercede trucidarunt, emersitque
to-the-work those-assigned with-a-detestable reward they-slaughtered and-there-arose
momentanea mors sepelientibus cum sepulto.
a-momentary death for-those-burying with the-buried

Caput L

L · THE BATTLE OF THE NEDAO

Attila's sons quarrel over the nations, and Ardaric leads the Gepids in revolt; at the Nedao Ellac is killed and the Huns are broken. The Gepids take Dacia, the Goths Pannonia, and other peoples settle in the empire. Jordanes names his own family and his service as a notary.

Talibus peractis, ut solent animi iuvenum ambitu potentiae
such-things done as are-wont the-spirits of-young-men by-ambition of-power
concitari, inter successores Attilae de regno orta contentio
to-be-stirred among the-successors of-Attila about the-kingdom arose contention
est, et dum inconsulti imperare cupiunt cuncti, omnes simul
has and while unadvisedly to-rule they-desire all all together
imperium perdiderunt. sic frequenter regna gravat copia
the-empire lost so frequently kingdoms burdens an-abundance
quam inopia successorum. nam fili Attilae, quorum per
than a-want of-successors for the-sons of-Attila of-whom through
licentiam libidinis pene populus fuit, gentes sibi
the-license of-lust almost a-people there-was the-nations to-themselves
dividi aequa sorte poscebant, ut ad instar familiae
to-be-divided by-equal lot demanded that to the-likeness of-a-household
bellicosi reges cum populis mitterentur in sortem. quod ut
warlike kings with peoples should-be-cast into lot which when
Gepidarum rex conperit Ardarichus, indignatus de tot
of-the-Gepids the-king learned Ardaric indignant about so-many
gentibus velut vilissimorum mancipiorum condicione tractari,
nations as of-the-meanest slaves in-condition to-be-treated
contra filios Attilae primus insurgit inlatumque serviendi
against the-sons of-Attila first rises and-the-inflicted of-serving
pudore secuta felicitate detersit, nec solum suam gentem,
shame with-following good-fortune wiped-away nor only his nation

sed et ceteras qui pariter praemebantur sua discessione
but also the-others who together were-oppressed by-his withdrawal
absolvit, quia facile omnes adpetunt, quod pro cunctorum
he-freed because easily all seek what for of-all
utilitate temptatur. in mutuum igitur armantur exitium
the-advantage is-attempted to mutual therefore they-are-armed destruction
bellumque committitur in Pannonia iuxta flumen, cui nomen
and-war is-joined in Pannonia near the-river to-which the-name
est Nedao. illic concursus factus est gentium variarum, quas
is Nedao there a-clash made was of-nations various which
Attila in sua tenuerat dicione. dividuntur regna cum populis,
Attila in his had-held dominion are-divided kingdoms with peoples
fiuntque ex uno corpore membra diversa, nec quae unius
and-become from one body limbs diverse nor which of-one
passioni conpaterentur, sed quae exciso capite in invicem
with-the-suffering might-suffer-together but which cut-off the-head against one-another
insanirent; quae numquam contra se pares invenerant, nisi
might-rage who never against themselves equals had-found unless
ipsi mutuis se vulneribus sauciantes se ipsos
they-themselves with-mutual themselves wounds wounding themselves themselves
discerperent fortissimae nationes. nam ibi admirandum reor
should-tear the-bravest nations for there to-be-admired I-think
fuisse spectaculum, ubi cernere erat contis pugnantem
to-have-been a-spectacle where to-see it-was-possible with-pikes fighting
Gothum, ense furentem Gepida, in vulnere suo Rugum
the-Goth with-sword raging the-Gepid against wound his the-Rugian
tela frangentem, Suavum pede, Hunnum sagitta praesumere,
weapons breaking the-Suevian on-foot the-Hun with-arrow to-rely-on
Alanum gravi, Herulum levi armatura aciem strui.
the-Alan with-heavy the-Herulian with-light armament the-line to-be-drawn-up
post multos ergo gravesque conflictos favit Gepidis inopinata
after many therefore and-heavy conflicts favored the-Gepids an-unexpected

victoria. nam xxx fere milia tam Hunnorum quam aliarum
victory for thirty about thousand as-well of-the-Huns as of-other
gentium, quae Hunnis ferebant auxilium, Ardarici gladius
nations which to-the-Huns brought help of-Ardaric the-sword
conspiratioque peremit. in quo proelio filius Attilae maior
and-conspiracy slew in which battle the-son of-Attila greater
natu nomine Ellac occiditur, quem tantum parens super
by-birth by-name Ellac is-killed whom so-much his-father above
citeros amasse perhibebatur, ut eum cunctis diversisque
the-others to-have-loved was-said that him to-all and-diverse
liberis suis in regno preferret; sed non fuit vota
children his in the-kingdom he-preferred but not was to-the-wishes
patris fortuna consentiens. nam post multas hostium
of-the-father fortune agreeing for after many of-the-enemies
cedes sic viriliter eum constat peremptum, ut tam gloriosum
slaughters so manfully him it-is-agreed slain that so glorious
superstis pater optasset interitum. reliqui vero germani
surviving his-father would-have-wished a-death the-rest but brothers
eius eo occiso fugantur iuxta litus Pontici maris, ubi
his him slain are-put-to-flight near the-shore of-the-Pontic sea where
prius Gothos sedisse descripsimus. cesserunt itaque Hunni,
before the-Goths to-have-settled we-described yielded and-so the-Huns
quibus cedere putabatur universitas. adeo discidium perniciosa
to-whom to-yield it-was-thought the-whole so-much dissension a-ruinous
res est, ut divisi corruerent, qui adunatis viribus territabant.
thing is that divided they-fell who with-united forces terrified
haec causa Ardarici regis Gepidarum felix affuit diversis
this cause of-Ardaric king of-the-Gepids happy was-present to-diverse
nationibus, qui Hunnorum regimini inviti famulabantur,
nations who of-the-Huns to-the-rule unwilling served
eorumque diu maestissimos animos ad helaritatem libertatis
and-their long most-sad minds to the-cheerfulness of-liberty

votivam erexit; venientesque multi per legatos suos ad
desired raised and-coming many through envoys their to
solum Romanum et a principe tunc Marciano gratissime
the-soil Roman and by the-prince then Marcian most-gratefully
suscepti distributas sedes, quas incolerent, acceperunt.
received distributed seats which they-might-inhabit received
Nam Gepidi Hunnorum sibi sedes viribus vindicantes
for the-Gepids of-the-Huns for-themselves the-seats by-forces claiming
totius Daciae fines velut victores potiti nihil aliud a
of-whole Dacia the-borders as victors having-gained nothing other from
Romano imperio, nisi pacem et annua sollemnia, ut strenui
the-Roman empire than peace and annual solemn-gifts as vigorous
viri, amica pactione postulaverunt. quod et libens tunc annuit
men by-friendly agreement demanded which also gladly then granted
imperator et usque nunc consuetum donum gens ipsa
the-emperor and up-to now the-customary gift the-nation itself
a Romano suscipit principe. Gothi vero cernentes Gepidas
from the-Roman receives prince the-Goths but seeing the-Gepids
Hunnorum sedes sibi defendere Hunnorumque populum
of-the-Huns the-seats for-themselves defending and-of-the-Huns the-people
suis antiquis sedibus occupare, maluerunt a Romano regno
their ancient seats to-occupy preferred from the-Roman kingdom
terras petere quam cum discrimine suo invadere alienas,
lands to-seek than with danger their to-invade others'
accipientesque Pannoniam, quae in longo porrecta planitiae
and-receiving Pannonia which in length stretched in-plain
habet ab oriente Moesiam superiorem, a meridie Dalmatiam,
has on the-east Moesia upper on the-south Dalmatia
ab occasu Noricum, a septentrione Danubium. ornata patria
on the-west Noricum on the-north the-Danube adorned a-fatherland
civitatibus plurimis, quarum prima Syrmis, extrema Vindomina.
with-cities very-many of-which the-first Sirmium the-last Vindobona

Sauromatae vero quos Sarmatas dicimus et Cemandri et
the-Sauromatae but whom Sarmatians we-call and Cemandri and
quidam ex Hunnis parte Illyrici ad Castramartenam urbem
certain from the-Huns in-a-part of-Illyricum at the-Castra-Martena city
sedes sibi datas coluerunt. ex quo genere fuit Blivila dux
the-seats to-them given inhabited from which race was Blivila general
Pentapolitanus eiusque germanus Froila et nostri temporis
of-Pentapolis and-his brother Froila and of-our time
Bessa patricius. Scyri vero et Sadagarii et certi Alanorum
Bessa the-patrician the-Sciri but and Sadagarii and certain of-the-Alans
cum duce suo nomine Candac Scythiam minorem inferioremque
with general their by-name Candac Scythia lesser and-lower
Moesiam acceperunt. cuius Candacis Alanoviiamuthis patris
Moesia received of-whom Candac of-Alanoviamuth of-the-father
mei genitor Paria, id est meus avus, notarius, quousque
my the-begetter Paria that is my grandfather the-notary as-long-as
Candac ipse viveret, fuit, eiusque germanae filio Gunthicis, qui
Candac himself lived was and-to-his of-the-sister son Gunthigis who
et Baza dicebatur, mag. mil., filio Andages fili Andele de
also Baza was-called master of-the-soldiers the-son of-Andag son of-Andela from
prosapia Amalorum descendente, ego item quamvis agramatus
the-stock of-the-Amals descending I likewise although unlettered
Iordannis ante conversionem meam notarius fui. Rugi
Jordanes before conversion my notary was the-Rugians
vero aliaeque nationes nonnullae Bizzim et Arcadiopolim
but and-other nations some Bizye and Arcadiopolis
ut incolerent, petiverunt. Hernac quoque iunior Attilae
that they-might-inhabit sought Hernac also the-younger of-Attila
filius cum suis in extrema minoris Scythiae sedes delegit.
son with his-men in the-farthest of-lesser Scythia seats chose
Emnetzur et Ultzindur consanguinei eius in Dacia ripense
Emnetzur and Ultzindur kinsmen his in Dacia Riparian

Uto et Hisco Almoque potiti sunt, multique Hunnorum
Utus and Hiscus and-Almus gained have and-many of-the-Huns
passim proruentes tunc se in Romania dediderunt, e
everywhere rushing-forth then themselves into Romania surrendered of
quibus nunc usque Sacromontisi et Fossatisii dicuntur.
whom now up-to Sacromontisi and Fossatisii are-called

Caput LI

LI · THE LESSER GOTHS

Jordanes notes the Lesser Goths of Moesia, a numerous but poor and peaceful people with their bishop Vulfila, who gave them letters, living on herds and milk at the foot of the Haemus.

erant si quidem et alii Gothi, qui dicuntur minores,
there-were if indeed also other Goths who are-called Lesser
populus inmensus, cum suo pontifice ipsoque primate Vulfila,
a-people immense with their bishop and-himself primate Vulfila
qui eis dicitur et litteras instituisse. hodieque sunt in
who for-them is-said also letters to-have-established and-today they-are in
Moesia regionem incolentes Nicopolitanam ad pedes Emimonti
Moesia the-region inhabiting Nicopolitan at the-feet of-Haemimons
gens multa, sed paupera et inbellis nihilque habundans nisi
a-nation numerous but poor and unwarlike and-nothing abounding except
armenta diversi generis pecorum et pascua silvaque lignarum;
herds of-diverse kind of-cattle and pastures and-forest of-timber
parum tritici citerarumque specierum terras fecundas. vineas
little of-wheat and-of-other kinds the-lands fertile vineyards

vero nec, si sunt alibi, certi eorum cognoscent ex vicina
indeed nor if they-are elsewhere certain of-them know from neighboring
loca sibi vinum negotiantes; nam lacte aluntur plerique.
places for-themselves wine trading for on-milk are-fed most

Caput LII

LII · THE BIRTH OF THEODORIC

The three Amal brothers rule Pannonia together. Valamir defeats the sons of Attila, and on the day the news comes Theodoric is born. When their gifts from Marcian are delayed, the Goths ravage Illyricum, then make peace and send Theodoric, aged seven, as a hostage to Leo.

Ergo, ut ad gentem, unde agimus, revertamur, id est
therefore that to the-nation of-which we-treat we-may-return that is
Ostrogotharum, qui in Pannonia sub rege Valamir eiusque
of-the-Ostrogoths who in Pannonia under king Valamir and-his
germani Thiudimer et Videmir morabantur, quamvis divisa
brothers Thiudimir and Vidimer dwelt although divided
loca, consilia tamen unita (nam Valamer inter Scarniungam
the-places the-counsels yet united for Valamir between the-Scarniunga
et Aqua nigra fluvios, Thiudimer iuxta lacum Pelsois, Vidimer
and the-Aqua Nigra rivers Thiudimir near the-lake Pelso Vidimer
inter utrosque manebant), contigit ergo, ut Attilae fili
between both remained it-happened therefore that of-Attila the-sons
contra Gothos quasi desertores dominationis suae, velut fugacia
against the-Goths as-if deserters of-dominion their as fugitive
mancipia requirentes, venirent ignarisque aliis fratribus super
slaves seeking should-come and-unwitting the-other brothers upon
Valamer solum inruerent. quos tamen ille quamvis cum paucis
Valamir alone should-rush whom yet he although with a-few

excepit diuque fatigatis ita prostravit, ut vix pars aliqua
received and-long wearied so laid-low that scarcely part some
hostium remaneret, quae in fuga versa eas partes Scythiae
of-the-enemies remained which into flight turned those parts of-Scythia
peteret, quas Danabri amnis fluenta praetermeant, quam
sought which of-the-Danaper river the-streams flow-past which
lingua sua Hunni Var appellant. eo namque tempore ad
in-tongue their the-Huns Var they-call at-that for time to
fratris Thiudimeri gaudii nuntium direxit, sed eo mox
of-his-brother Thiudimir of-joy a-messenger he-sent but on-that very
die nuntius veniens feliciorem in domo Thiudimer repperit
day the-messenger coming happier in the-house of-Thiudimir found
gaudium. ipso si quidem die Theodoricus eius filius, quamvis
joy on-that if indeed day Theodoric his son although
de Erelieva concubina, bonae tamen spei puerolus natus
from Erelieva a-concubine of-good yet hope a-little-boy born
erat. post tempus ergo non multum rex Valamir eiusque
was after a-time therefore not much the-king Valamir and-his
germani Thiudemir et Vidimir, consueta dum tardarent
brothers Thiudimir and Vidimer the-customary while they-delayed
dona a principe Marciano, quae ad instar strenuae
gifts from the-prince Marcian which to the-likeness of-a-new-year's-gift
acciperent et pacis foedera custodirent, missa legatione ad
they-received and of-peace the-treaties should-guard sent an-embassy to
imperatorem vident Theodericum Triarii filium, et hunc
the-emperor they-see Theodoric of-Triarius the-son and this-one
genere Gothico, alia tamen stirpe, non Amala procreatum,
by-race Gothic of-another yet stock not the-Amal begotten
omnino florentem cum suis, Romanorumque amicitiis iunctum
altogether flourishing with his and-of-the-Romans friendships joined
et annua sollemnia consequentem, et se tantum despici.
and annual solemn-gifts obtaining and themselves only despised

ilico furore commoti arma arripiunt et Illyricum pene totum
at-once by-fury moved arms they-seize and Illyricum almost whole
discurrentes in praeda devastant. sed statim imperator animo
ranging-over for plunder they-lay-waste but at-once the-emperor his-mind
mutato ad pristinam recurrit amicitiam missaque legatione
changed to the-former runs-back friendship and-sent an-embassy
tam praeterita cum instantibus munera tribuit quam etiam
as-well the-past with the-present gifts gave as also
de futuro sine aliqua controversia tribuere compromittit,
about the-future without any dispute to-give promises
pacisque obsidem ab eis, quem supra rettulimus, Theodoricum,
and-of-peace a-hostage from them whom above we-related Theodoric
infantulum Thiudimeris accipit; qui iam septem annorum
the-little-infant of-Thiudimir receives who already of-seven years
incrementa conscendens octavum intraverat annum. quem dum
the-increments climbing the-eighth had-entered year whom while
pater cunctatur dare, patruus Valamir extitit supplicator
his-father hesitates to-give his-uncle Valamir stood-forth as-suppliant
tantum, ut pax firma inter Romanos Gothosque maneret.
so-much that the-peace firm between the-Romans and-Goths might-remain
datus igitur Theodoricus obses a Gothis duciturque ad
given therefore Theodoric as-hostage by the-Goths and-is-led to
urbem Constantinopolitanam Leoni principi, et, quia puerulos
the-city Constantinopolitan to-Leo the-prince and because a-little-boy
elegans erat, meruit gratiam imperialem habere.
fine he-was he-earned the-favor imperial to-have

Caput LIII

LIII · WARS WITH THE HUNS, SUEVI, AND SCIRI

The Goths drive off Dintzic's Huns, defeat the Suevi under Hunimund, and adopt and release him. Hunimund stirs the Sciri against them, and in the battle Valamir falls from his horse and is killed, but the Goths almost destroy the Sciri.

Postquam ergo firma pax Gothorum cum Romanis effecta
after therefore firm peace of-the-Goths with the-Romans made
est, videntes Gothi non sibi sufficere ea quae
was seeing the-Goths not for-themselves to-suffice those-things which
ab imperatore acciperent simulque solitam cupientes
from the-emperor they-received and-at-the-same-time their-accustomed desiring
ostentare virtutem, coeperunt vicinas gentes circumcirca
to-display valor began the-neighboring nations round-about
praedari, primum contra Sadagis, qui interiorem Pannoniam
to-plunder first against the-Sadagis who the-inner Pannonia
possidebant, arma moventes. quod ubi rex Hunnorum
possessed arms moving which when the-king of-the-Huns
Dintzic filius Attilae cognovisset, collectis secum qui adhuc
Dintzic son of-Attila had-learned gathered with-himself who still
videbantur quamvis pauci eius tamen sub imperio remansisse
seemed although few his yet under rule to-have-remained
Ultzinzures, Angisciros, Bittugures, Bardores, venientesque ad
the-Ultzinzures Angisciri Bittugures Bardores and-coming to
Basianam Pannoniae civitatem eamque circumvallans fines
Basiana of-Pannonia city and-it besieging the-borders
eius coepit praedare. quod conperto Gothi ibi, ubi erant,
its began to-plunder which learned the-Goths there where they-were
expeditionemque solventes, quam contra Sadagis collegerant,
and-the-expedition breaking-up which against the-Sadagis they-had-gathered

in Hunnos convertunt et sic eos suis a finibus inglorios
against the-Huns turn and so them their from borders inglorious
pepulerunt, ut iam ex illo tempore qui remanserunt Hunni
drove that already from that time who remained the-Huns
et usque actenus Gothorum arma formident. quiescente
and up-to hitherto of-the-Goths the-arms fear resting
vero tandem Hunnorum gente a Gothis Hunumundus
indeed at-last of-the-Huns the-nation from the-Goths Hunimund
Suavorum dux dum ad depraedandas Dalmatias transit,
of-the-Suevi general while to plundering the-Dalmatias he-crosses
armenta Gothorum in campis errantia depraedavit, quia
the-herds of-the-Goths in the-plains wandering plundered because
Dalmatia Suaviae vicina erat nec a Pannonios fines
Dalmatia to-Suavia neighboring was nor from the-Pannonian borders
multum distabat, praesertim ubi tunc Gothi residebant. quid
much distant especially where then the-Goths resided what
plurimum? Hunimundus cum Suavis vastatis Dalmatiis ad
more Hunimund with the-Suevi laid-waste the-Dalmatias to
sua revertens, Thiudimer germanus Valameris regis Gothorum
his returning Thiudimir brother of-Valamir king of-the-Goths
non tantum iacturam armentorum dolens quantum metuens,
not so-much the-loss of-the-herds grieving as fearing
ne Suavi, si inpune hoc lucrarentur, ad maiorem licentiam
lest the-Suevi if with-impunity this they-should-gain to greater license
prosilirent, sic vigilavit in eorum transitu, ut intempesta
they-might-leap so watched on their crossing that at-dead
nocte dormientes invaderet ad lacum Pelsodis consertoque
night sleeping he-attacked-them at the-lake Pelso and-joined
inopinato proelio ita eos oppressit, ut etiam ipsum regem
unexpected battle so them overwhelmed that even himself the-king
Hunimundum captum omnem exercitum eius, qui gladio
Hunimund captured all army his who by-the-sword

evadissent, Gothorum subderet servituti. et dum multum
had-escaped of-the-Goths he-subjected servitude and while much
esset amator misericordiae, facta ultione veniam condonavit
he-was a-lover of-mercy made vengeance pardon he-granted
reconciliatusque cum Suavis eundem, quem ceperat,
and-reconciled with the-Suevi the-same whom he-had-captured
adoptans sibi filium, remisit cum suis in Suavia. sed ille
adopting as-his son sent-back with his-men into Suavia but he
inmemor paternae gratiae post aliquod tempus conceptum
unmindful of-the-paternal favor after some time the-conceived
dolum parturiens Scirorumque gente incitans, qui tunc super
guile bringing-forth and-the-Scirian nation inciting who then above
Danubium consedebant et cum Gothis pacifice morabantur,
the-Danube were-settled and with the-Goths peacefully dwelt
quatenus scissi ab eorum foedere secumque iuncti in arma
so-that torn from their treaty and-with-himself joined into arms
prosilerent gentemque Gothorum invaderent. tunc Gothis
they-might-leap and-the-nation of-the-Goths might-attack then for-the-Goths
nihil mali sperantibus, praesertim de utrisque amicis vicinis
nothing of-evil expecting especially on both friendly neighbors
confisi, bellum exurgit ex inproviso coactique necessitate ad
relying war arises from the-unforeseen and-compelled by-necessity to
arma confugiunt solitoque certamine arrepto se suaque
arms flee and-the-accustomed contest seized themselves and-their
iniuria ulciscuntur. in eo si quidem proelio rex eorum Valamir
injury they-avenge in that if indeed battle king their Valamir
dum equo insidens ad cohortandos suos ante aciem
while on-his-horse sitting for exhorting his before the-battle-line
curreret, proturbatus equus corruit sessoremque suum deiecit,
ran driven-wild his-horse fell and-rider its threw-down
qui mox inimicorum lanceis confossus interemptus est.
who soon of-the-enemies by-lances pierced slain was

Gothi vero tam regis sui mortem quam suam iniuriam
the-Goths but as-much of-king their the-death as their injury
a rebellionibus exigentes ita sunt proeliati, ut pene de
from the-rebels exacting so have fought that almost of
gente Scirorum nisi qui nomen ipsud ferrent, et hi
the-nation of-the-Sciri except those-who the-name itself bore and these
cum dedecore, non remansissent: sic omnes extincti sunt.
with dishonor not would-have-remained so all killed were

Caput LIV

LIV · THE BOLIA

The Suevi, Sarmatians, Sciri, Gepids, and Rugi gather against the Goths on the Bolia. Thiudimir and Vidimer lead the Goths to a victory that leaves the plain red with blood.

Quorum exitio Suavorum reges Hunimundus et Halaricus
at-whose destruction of-the-Suevi the-kings Hunimund and Alaric
vereti, in Gothos arma moverunt freti auxilio Sarmatarum,
fearing against the-Goths arms moved relying on-the-help of-the-Sarmatians
qui cum Beuca et Babai regibus suis auxiliarii ei
who with Beuca and Babai kings their as-auxiliaries to-him
advenissent, ipsasque Scirorum reliquias quasi ad ultionem
had-come and-the-very of-the-Sciri remnants as-if for vengeance
suam acrius pugnaturos accersientes cum Edica et Hunuulfo
their more-fiercely about-to-fight summoning with Edica and Hunuulf
eorum primatibus habuerunt simul secum tam Gepidas
their chiefs they-had together with-themselves as-well the-Gepids
quam ex gente Rugorum non parva solacia, ceterisque
as from the-nation of-the-Rugians not small support and-the-others

hinc inde collectis ingentem multitudinem adgregantes ad
on-this-side on-that gathered a-huge multitude assembling at
amnem Bolia in Pannoniis castra metati sunt. Gothi tunc
the-river Bolia in the-Pannonias a-camp measured they-have the-Goths then
Valamero defuncto ad fratrem eius Thiudimer confugerunt.
Valamir having-died to the-brother his Thiudimir fled
qui quamvis dudum cum fratribus regnans, tamen auctioris
who although long with his-brothers reigning yet of-greater
potestatis insignia sumens, Vidimer fratre iuniore accito
power the-insignia taking Vidimer his-brother the-younger summoned
et cum ipso curas belli partitus, coactus ad arma prosilivit;
and with him the-cares of-war sharing compelled to arms leapt
consertoque proelio superior pars invenitur Gothorum, adeo
and-joined battle superior the-side is-found of-the-Goths so
ut campus inimicorum corruentium cruore madefactus
that the-plain of-the-enemies falling with-the-gore soaked
ut rubrum pelagus appareret armaque et cadavera in
as a-red sea appeared and-arms and corpses in
modum collium tumulata campum plus per decem milibus
the-manner of-hills heaped the-plain more through ten thousand
oppleverunt. quod Gothi cernentes, ineffabili exultatione
filled which the-Goths seeing with-unspeakable exultation
laetantur, eo quod et regis sui Valameris sanguinem et
rejoice for-this that both of-king their Valamir the-blood and
suam iniuriam cum maxima inimicorum strage ulciscerentur.
their injury with very-great of-the-enemies slaughter they-avenged
de vero innumeranda variaque multitudine hostium qui valuit
of indeed innumerable and-various multitude of-the-enemies who was-able
evadere, perquaquam effugati vix ad sua inglorii pervenerunt.
to-escape everywhere put-to-flight scarcely to their inglorious came

Caput LV

LV · THEODORIC RETURNS

Thiudimir crosses the frozen Danube and defeats the Suevi and Alamanni. Theodoric returns from Constantinople and, aged eighteen, leads six thousand men against the Sarmatian king Babai, kills him, and takes Singidunum.

Post certum vero tempus instanti hiemali frigore amnemque
after a-certain indeed time pressing the-wintry cold and-the-river
Danubii solite congelato — nam istiusmodi fluvius ille
Danube as-usual frozen for of-this-sort river that
congelascit, ut in silicis modum pedestrem vehat exercitum
freezes that in of-flint the-manner foot it-carries army
plaustraque et traculas vel quidquid vehiculi fuerit, nec
and-wagons and sledges or whatever of-vehicle there-may-be nor
cumbarum indigeat lintres — sic ergo eum gelatum
of-boats needs the-skiffs so therefore it frozen
Thiodimer Gothorum rex cernens pedestrem ducit exercitum
Thiudimir of-the-Goths king seeing foot leads army
emensoque Danubio Suavis inprovisus a tergo apparuit.
and-crossed the-Danube to-the-Suevi unforeseen from the-rear appeared
nam regio illa Suavorum ab oriente Baibaros habet, ab
for region that of-the-Suevi on the-east the-Baiovarii has on
occidente Francos, a meridie Burgundzones, a septentrione
the-west the-Franks on the-south the-Burgundians on the-north
Thuringos. quibus Suavis tunc iuncti aderant etiam
the-Thuringians to-whom with-the-Suevi then joined were-present also
Alamanni ipsique Alpes erectos omnino regentes, unde
the-Alamanni and-they-themselves the-Alps lofty altogether ruling whence
nonnulla fluenta Danubium influunt nimio cum sonu vergentia.
some streams into-the-Danube flow excessive with sound inclining

hic ergo taliterque munito loco rex Thiudimer hiemis
here therefore and-in-such fortified place king Thiudimir of-the-winter
tempore Gothorum ductavit exercitum, et tam Suavorum
in-the-time of-the-Goths led the-army and as-well of-the-Suevi
gente quam etiam Alamannorum, utrasque ad invicem
the-nation as also of-the-Alamanni both to each-other
foederatas, devicit, vastavit et pene subegit. inde quoque victor
allied conquered laid-waste and almost subdued thence also victor
ad proprias sedes, id est Pannonias revertens Theodoricum
to his-own seats that is the-Pannonias returning Theodoric
filium suum, quem Constantinopolim obsidem dederat, a
son his whom to-Constantinople as-hostage he-had-given from
Leone imperatore remissum cum magnis muneribus gratanter
Leo the-emperor sent-back with great gifts gladly
excepit. qui Theodoricus iam aduliscentiae annos contingens
received who Theodoric already of-adolescence the-years touching
expleta pueritia, decem et octo annos peragens, ascitis
completed his-boyhood ten and eight years passing summoned
certis ex satellitibus patris et ex populo amatores sibi
certain of the-attendants of-his-father and from the-people lovers to-himself
clientesque consocians, paene sex milia viros, cum quibus
and-clients associating almost six thousand men with whom
inconscio patre emenso Danubio super Babai Sarmatarum rege
unaware his-father crossed the-Danube against Babai of-the-Sarmatians king
discurrit, qui tunc de Camundo duce Romanorum victoria
runs-off who then over Camundus general of-the-Romans victory
potitus superbiae tumore regnabat, eoque superveniens
having-gained of-pride with-the-swelling reigned and-him coming-upon
Theodoricus interemit familiaque et censu depraedans ad
Theodoric slew and-the-household and wealth plundering to
genitorem suum cum victoria repedavit. Singidunum dehinc
begetter his with victory returned Singidunum thereafter

civitatem, quam ipsi Sarmatae occupassent, invadens, non
the-city which the-very Sarmatians had-occupied invading not
Romanis reddidit, sed suae subdedit dicioni.
to-the-Romans he-returned but to-his subjected dominion

Caput LVI

LVI · THE GOTHS DIVIDE

Short of food, the Goths divide by lot: Vidimer goes to Italy and dies, and his son is sent to Gaul by Glycerius. Thiudimir takes Naissus, Theodoric takes cities in Illyricum, and Thiudimir is given land near Thessalonica. Dying at Cyrrhus, he names Theodoric his heir.

Minuentibus deinde hinc inde vicinarum gentium spoliis
diminishing then on-this-side on-that of-the-neighboring nations the-spoils
coepit et Gothis victus vestitusque deesse et hominibus,
began also for-the-Goths food and-clothing to-be-lacking and to-men
quibus dudum bella alimonia prestitissent, pax coepit esse
to-whom long wars nourishment had-furnished peace began to-be
contraria, omnesque cum magno clamore ad regem Thiudimer
contrary and-all with great clamor to king Thiudimir
accedentes Gothi orant, quacumque parte vellit, tantum
approaching the-Goths beg in-whatever direction he-wished only
ductaret exercitum. qui accito germano missaque sorte
he-should-lead the-army who summoned his-brother and-cast lots
hortatus est, ut ille in parte Italiae, ubi tunc Glycerius
urged has that he into the-part of-Italy where then Glycerius
regnabat imperator, ipse vero sicut fortior ad fortiorem
reigned emperor he-himself but as the-stronger to the-stronger
regnum accederet Orientalem: quod et factum est. et mox
kingdom should-go the-Eastern which also done was and soon

Vidimer Italiae terras intravit, extremum fati munus reddens
Vidimer of-Italy the-lands entered the-last of-fate the-duty rendering
rebus excessit humanis, successorem relinquens Vidimer filium
from-affairs departed human as-successor leaving Vidimer son
suumque synonymum. quem Glycerius imperator muneribus
and-his namesake whom Glycerius the-emperor gifts
datis de Italia ad Gallias transtulit, quae a diversis circumcirca
given from Italy to the-Gauls transferred which by diverse round-about
gentibus praemebantur, asserens vicinos ibi Vesegothas eorum
nations were-pressed asserting neighbors there the-Visigoths their
parentes regnare. quid multum? Vidimer acceptis muneribus
kinsmen to-reign what more Vidimer received the-gifts
simulque mandata a Glycerio imperatore Gallias
and-at-the-same-time the-commands from Glycerius the-emperor to-the-Gauls
tendit seseque cum parentibus Vesegothis iungens unum
heads and-himself with the-kinsmen Visigoths joining one
corpus efficiunt, ut dudum fuerant, et sic Gallias Spaniasque
body they-make as formerly they-had-been and so the-Gauls and-Spains
tenentes suo iuri defendunt, ut nullus ibi alius prevaleret.
holding by-their right they-defend that none there other should-prevail
Thiudimer autem, frater senior, cum suis transit Saum
Thiudimir moreover the-brother elder with his-men crosses the-Save
amnem Sarmatis militibusque interminans bellum, si aliqui
river to-the-Sarmatians and-to-the-soldiers threatening war if any
ei obstaret. quod illi verentes quiescunt, immo
to-him should-stand-in-the-way which they fearing keep-quiet nay
nec praevalent ad tantam multitudinem. videns Thiudimer
not are-they-strong for so-great a-multitude seeing Thiudimir
undique sibi prospera provenire, Naissum primam urbem
on-all-sides to-himself prosperity to-come Naissus the-first city
invadit Illyrici filioque suo Theodorico sociatis Astat et
invades of-Illyricum and-to-son his Theodoric joined Astat and

Invilia comitibus per castro Herculis transmisit Ulpiana. qui
Invilia counts through the-fort of-Hercules sent-across to-Ulpiana who
venientes tam eam quam Stobis mox in deditione accipiunt
coming as-well it as Stobi soon into surrender receive
nonullaque loca Illyrici inaccessibilia sibi primum tunc
and-some places of-Illyricum inaccessible to-themselves first then
pervia faciunt. nam Eracleam et Larissam civitates Thessaliae
passable make for Heraclea and Larissa cities of-Thessaly
primum praedas ereptas, dehinc ipsas iure bellico potiuntur.
first the-booty seized thereafter themselves by-right warlike they-gain
Thiudimer vero rex animadvertens felicitatem suam quam
Thiudimir but the-king noticing the-good-fortune his as
etiam filii nec his tantum contentus, egrediens
also of-his-son nor with-these only content going-out
Naisitanam urbem paucis ad custodiam derelictis ipse
from-the-Naissitan city a-few for guard left himself
Thessalonicam petiit, in qua Helarianus patricius a principe
Thessalonica sought in which Hilarianus the-patrician by the-prince
directus cum exercitu morabatur. qui dum videret vallo
sent with an-army stayed who when he-saw with-a-rampart
muniri Thessalonicam nec se eorum conatibus posse
to-be-fortified Thessalonica nor himself their to-the-attempts to-be-able
resistere, missa legatione ad Thiudimer regem muneribusque
to-resist sent an-embassy to Thiudimir the-king and-gifts
oblatis ab excidione eum urbis retorquet initoque foedere
offered from the-destruction him of-the-city turns-back and-entered a-treaty
Romanus ductor cum Gothis loca eis iam sponte, quae
the-Roman leader with the-Goths places to-them now of-his-own-accord which
incolerent, tradidit, id est Cerru, Pellas, Europa, Mediana,
they-might-inhabit handed-over that is Cyrrhus Pella Europus Mediana
Petina, Bereu et alia quae Sium vocatur. ubi Gothi cum
Petina Beroea and another which Dium is-called where the-Goths with

rege suo armis depositis composita pace quiescunt. nec diu post
king their arms laid-down settled peace rest nor long after
haec et rex Thiudimer in civitate Cerras fatale egritudine
these-things also king Thiudimir in the-city Cyrrhus by-fatal sickness
occupatus vocatis Gothis Theodoricum filium regni sui
seized summoned the-Goths Theodoric his-son of-kingdom his
designat heredem et ipse mox rebus humanis excessit.
designates as-heir and himself soon from-affairs human departed

Caput LVII

LVII · THEODORIC TAKES ITALY

Zeno honors Theodoric with adoption, a triumph, a consulship, and a statue. Theodoric asks to take Italy from Odoacer, and Zeno agrees. Camped at the Isonzo, he defeats Odoacer's army on the plains of Verona, besieges him in Ravenna for nearly three years, and kills him. He marries Audefleda, whom Jordanes calls the daughter of the Frankish king Lodoin, though the Franks remain his enemies.

Theodorico vero gentis suae regem audiens ordinato imperator
Theodoric but of-nation his king hearing appointed the-emperor
Zeno grate suscepit eique evocaturia destinata ad se
Zeno gratefully received and-to-him a-summons sent to himself
in urbe venire precepit, dignoque suscipiens honore inter
into the-city to-come ordered and-with-worthy receiving honor among
proceres sui palatii conlocavit. et post aliquod tempus
the-nobles of-his palace placed and after some time
ad ampliandum honorem eius in arma sibi eum filium
for enlarging the-honor his in arms to-himself him as-son
adoptavit de suisque stipendiis triumphum in urbe donavit,
adopted from and-his expenses a-triumph in the-city gave
factusque consul ordinarius, quod summum bonum primumque
and-made consul ordinary which the-highest good and-the-first

in mundo decus edicitur; nec tantum hoc, sed etiam et
in the-world honor is-declared nor only this but also also
equestrem statuam ad famam tanti viri ante regiam
an-equestrian statue for the-fame of-so-great a-man before the-royal-entrance
palatii conlocavit. inter haec ergo Theodoricus Zenonis
of-the-palace placed among these-things therefore Theodoric of-Zeno
imperio foedere sociatus, dum ipse in urbe omnibus
to-the-empire by-treaty allied while he-himself in the-city all
bonis frueretur gentemque suam in Illyrico, ut diximus,
good-things enjoyed and-the-nation his in Illyricum as we-have-said
residentem non omnino idoneam aut refertam audiret, elegit
residing not altogether well-off or well-supplied heard chose
potius solito more gentis suae labore querere victum
rather in-the-accustomed manner of-nation his by-labor to-seek food
quam ipse otiose frui regni Romani bona et
than he-himself idly to-enjoy of-the-kingdom Roman the-good-things and
gentem suam mediocriter victitare, secumque deliberans ad
the-nation his meagerly to-live and-with-himself deliberating to
principem ait: 'quamvis nihil deest nobis imperio vestro
the-prince said although nothing is-lacking to-us to-the-empire your
famulantibus, tamen, si dignum ducit pietas vestra, desiderium
serving yet if worthy it-deems piety your the-desire
mei cordis libenter exaudiat'. cumque ei, ut solebat,
of-my heart gladly let-it-hear and-when to-him as was-wont
familiariter facultas fuisset loquendi concessa: 'Hesperia',
familiarly the-opportunity had-been of-speaking granted the-Western
inquid, 'plaga, quae dudum decessorum prodecessorumque
he-says region which formerly of-the-predecessors and-forerunners
vestrorum regimine gubernata est, et urbs illa caput
your by-the-rule governed was and city that the-head
orbis et domina quare nunc sub regis Thorcilingorum
of-the-world and mistress why now under of-the-king of-the-Torcilingi

Rogorumque tyrranide fluctuatur? dirige me cum gente mea,
and-Rugians the-tyranny does-it-toss send me with nation my
si praecepis, ut et hic expensarum pondere careas
if you-command that both here of-expenses from-the-weight you-may-be-free
et ibi, si adiutus a domino vicero, fama vestrae
and there if helped by the-Lord I-shall-have-conquered the-fame of-your
pietatis inradiet. expedit namque, ut ego, qui sum servus
piety may-shine-forth it-is-expedient for that I who am servant
vester et filius, si vicero, vobis donantibus regnum
your and son if I-shall-have-conquered you giving the-kingdom
illud possedeam; haut ille, quem non nostis, tyrranico
that should-possess not he whom not you-know with-tyrannical
iugo senatum vestrum partemque rei publicae captivitatis
yoke the-senate your and-a-part of-the-state public of-captivity
servitio premat. ego enim si vicero, vestro dono
by-the-servitude should-press I for if I-shall-have-conquered by-your gift
vestroque munere possedebo; si victus fuero, vestra
and-by-your bounty shall-possess if conquered I-shall-have-been your
pietas nihil amittit, immo, ut diximus, lucratur expensas'. quo
piety nothing loses nay as we-have-said gains the-expenses which
audito quamvis egrae ferret imperator discessum eius, nolens
heard although ill bore the-emperor the-departure his unwilling
tamen eum contristare annuit quae poscebat, magnisque
yet him to-sadden granted what he-asked and-with-great
ditatum muneribus dimisit a se, senatum populumque
enriched gifts dismissed from himself the-senate and-people
ei commendans Romanum. igitur egressus urbe
to-him commending the-Roman therefore having-gone-out from-the-city
regia Theodoricus et ad suos revertens omnem gentem
royal Theodoric and to his returning all the-nation
Gothorum, qui tamen ei prebuerunt consensum, Hesperiam
of-the-Goths who yet to-him furnished consent to-the-West

tendit rectoque itinere per Sirmis ascendit vicina
heads and-in-straight course through Sirmium climbs the-neighborhood
Pannoniae, indeque Venetiarum fines ingressus ad Pontem
of-Pannonia and-thence of-the-Venetias the-borders having-entered at the-Bridge
Sontii nuncupatum castra metatus est. cumque ibi ad
of-the-Isonzo named a-camp measured has and-when there for
reficienda corpora hominum iumentorumque aliquanto tempore
refreshing the-bodies of-men and-of-beasts-of-burden for-some time
resedisset, Odoacer armatum contra eum direxit exercitum.
he-had-stayed Odoacer an-armed against him directed army
quem ille ad campos Veronenses occurrens magno strage
which he at the-plains of-Verona meeting with-great slaughter
delevit castraque soluta finibus Italiae cum potiore audacia
destroyed and-the-camp broken the-borders of-Italy with stronger boldness
intrat, transactoque Pado amne ad Ravennam regiam urbem
he-enters and-crossed the-Po river at Ravenna the-royal city
castra componit tertio fere miliario ab urbe locus, qui
a-camp establishes at-the-third about milestone from the-city a-place which
appellatur Pineta. quod cernens Odoacer intus se in urbe
is-called Pineta which seeing Odoacer within himself in the-city
communit; indeque subreptive noctu frequenter cum suis
fortifies and-thence stealthily by-night frequently with his-men
egrediens Gothorum exercitum inquietat, et hoc non semel
going-out of-the-Goths the-army disturbs and this not once
nec iterum, sed frequenter et pene molitur toto
nor twice but frequently and almost he-attempts through-a-whole
triennio. sed frustra laborat, quia cuncta Italia dominum
three-years but in-vain labors because all Italy as-lord
iam dicebat Theodoricum et illius ad nutum res illa
already called Theodoric and at-his to nod state that
publica obsecundabat. tantum ille solus cum paucis satellitibus
public complied only he alone with a-few attendants

et Romanos, qui aderant, et fame et bello cotidie
and the-Romans who were-present both by-famine and by-war daily
intra Ravennam laborabat. quod dum nihil proficeret, missa
within Ravenna labored which when nothing he-gained sent
legatione veniam supplicat. cui et primum concedens
an-embassy pardon he-begs to-whom also at-first granting-it
Theodoricus postmodum ab hac luce privavit tertioque, ut
Theodoric afterward from this light deprived and-in-the-third as
diximus, anno ingressus sui in Italia Zenonemque imp.
we-have-said year of-entry his into Italy and-of-Zeno the-emperor
consultu privatum abitum suaeque gentis vestitum seponens
by-the-counsel the-private dress and-of-his nation the-clothing laying-aside
insigne regio amictu, quasi iam Gothorum Romanorumque
the-insignia with-royal mantle as-if now of-the-Goths and-of-the-Romans
regnator, adsumit missaque legatione ad Lodoin Francorum
ruler takes and-sent an-embassy to Lodoin of-the-Franks
regem filiam eius Audefledam sibi in matrimonio
king the-daughter his Audefleda for-himself in marriage
petit. quam ille grate libenterque concessit suosque filios
asks whom he gratefully and-gladly granted and-his sons
Celdebertum et Heldebertum et Thiudebertum credens hac
Childebert and Heldebert and Theudebert believing by-this
societate cum gente Gothorum inito foedere sociari. sed
alliance with the-nation of-the-Goths entered a-treaty to-be-allied but
non adeo ad pacis concordiam profuit ista coniunctio, quia
not so-much for of-peace the-concord availed that union because
saepenumero propter Gallorum terras graviter inter se
many-times on-account-of of-the-Gauls the-lands heavily among themselves
decertati sunt, numquamque Gothus Francis cessit, dum
fought they-have and-never the-Goth to-the-Franks yielded while
viveret Theodoricus.
lived Theodoric

Caput LVIII

LVIII · THEODORIC'S ALLIANCES

Theodoric marries his daughters to Alaric and Sigismund, Amalasuntha to Eutharic, his sister to the Vandal Thrasamund, and his niece to the Thuringian king. Pitzia takes Sirmium and rescues Mundo; Ibba defeats the Franks; Theudis rules Spain for Amalaric. Every western nation serves Theodoric.

Antequam ergo de Audefledam subolem haberet, naturales
before therefore from Audefleda offspring he-had natural
ex concubina, quas genuisset adhuc in Moesia, filias,
from a-concubine whom he-had-begotten still in Moesia daughters
unam nomine Thiudigoto et aliam Ostrogotho. quas
one by-name Thiudigoto and another Ostrogotho whom
mox in Italiam venit, regibus vicinis in coniugio
as-soon-as into Italy he-came to-kings neighboring in marriage
copulavit, id est unam Alarico Vesegotharum et aliam
he-joined that is one to-Alaric of-the-Visigoths and the-other
Sigismundo Burgundzonorum. de Alarico ergo natus est
to-Sigismund of-the-Burgundians from Alaric therefore born was
Amalaricus. quem avus Theodoricus in annis puerilibus
Amalaric whom his-grandfather Theodoric in years childish
utroque parente orbato dum fovet atque tuetur, comperit
of-both parents bereaved while he-cherishes and protects learns
Eutharicum Veterici filium Beretmodi et Thorismodi nepotem,
Eutharic of-Veteric the-son of-Beremud and of-Thorismund the-grandson
Amalorum de stirpe descendentem, in Spania degi,
of-the-Amals from the-stock descending in Spain to-be-living
iuvenili aetate prudentia et virtute corporisque integritate
in-youthful age in-prudence and in-valor and-of-body in-soundness
pollentem. ad se eum facit venire eique Amalasuentham
excelling to himself him makes to-come and-to-him Amalasuntha

filiam suam in matrimonio iungit. et ut in plenum suam
daughter his in marriage joins and that in full his
progeniem dilataret, Amalafridam germanam suam matrem
progeny he-might-extend Amalafrida sister his the-mother
Theodahadi, qui postea rex fuit, Africa regi Vandalorum
of-Theodahad who afterward king was to-Africa to-the-king of-the-Vandals
coniuge dirigit Thrasamundo filiamque eius neptem suam
as-wife sends Thrasamund and-the-daughter her niece his
Amalabergam Thuringorum regi consociat Herminefredo.
Amalaberga of-the-Thuringians to-the-king joins Herminefrid
Pitzamum quoque suum comitem et inter primos electum ad
Pitzia also his count and among the-first chosen for
obtinendam Sirmiensem dirigit civitatem. quam ille expulso
obtaining the-Sirmian sends city which he expelled
rege eius Trasarico, filio Trapstilae, retenta eius matre
the-king its Thrasaric son of-Thraustila kept his mother
obtinuit. inde contra Savinianum Illyricum mag. mil.,
obtained thence against Sabinianus of-Illyricum master of-the-soldiers
qui tunc cum Mundone paraverat conflictum, ad civitatem
who then with Mundo had-prepared a-conflict at the-city
cognomine Margo planum, quae inter Danubium Margumque
by-name Margus Plain which between the-Danube and-the-Margus
fluminibus adiacebat, cum duobus milibus ergo peditum,
rivers lay with two thousand therefore of-foot
equitibus quingentis in Mundonis solacia veniens Illyricianum
with-horsemen five-hundred for of-Mundo support coming the-Illyrian
exercitum demolivit. nam hic Mundo de Attilanis quondam
army demolished for this Mundo from the-Attilan once
origine descendens Gepidarum gentem fugiens ultra Danubium
origin descending of-the-Gepids the-nation fleeing beyond the-Danube
in incultis locis sine ullis terrae cultoribus divagatus et
in untilled places without any of-the-land tillers having-wandered and

plerisque abactoribus scamarisque et latronibus undecumque
very-many cattle-thieves and-brigands and robbers from-everywhere
collectis turrem quae Herta dicitur super Danubii ripam
gathered a-tower which Herta is-called upon of-the-Danube the-bank
positam occupans ibique agresti ritu praedasque innectens
placed occupying and-there in-rustic manner and-plunders weaving
vicinis regem se suis grassatoribus fecerat. hunc ergo
on-the-neighbors king himself to-his marauders had-made him therefore
pene desperatum et iam de traditione sua deliberantem
almost despaired-of and already about surrender his deliberating
Petza subveniens e manibus Saviniani eripuit, suoque regi
Pitzia coming-to-aid from the-hands of-Sabinianus rescued and-to-his king
Theodorico cum gratiarum actione fecit subiectum. non
Theodoric with of-thanks the-giving made subject with-no
minore tropeo de Francis per Ibbam, suum comitem, in
less trophy over the-Franks through Ibba his count in
Galliis adquisivit plus triginta milia Francorum in proelio
the-Gauls he-acquired more thirty thousand of-the-Franks in battle
caesa. nam et Thiudem suum armigerum post mortem
slain for also Theudis his armor-bearer after the-death
Alarici generi tutorem in Spaniae regno Amalarici
of-Alaric his-son-in-law as-guardian in of-Spain the-kingdom of-Amalaric
nepotis constituit. qui Amalaricus in ipsa aduliscentia
his-grandson established who Amalaric in very adolescence
Francorum fraudibus inretitus regnum cum vita amisit.
of-the-Franks by-frauds ensnared the-kingdom with life lost
post quem Thiudis tutor eodem regno ipse invadens,
after whom Theudis the-guardian the-same kingdom himself invading
Francorum insidiosam calumniam de Spaniis pepulit, et
of-the-Franks the-insidious malice from the-Spains drove and
usque dum viveret, Vesegothas contenuit. post quem
all-the-way until he-lived the-Visigoths held-together after whom

Thiudigisglosa regnum adeptus, non diu regnans defecit
Thiudigisclus the-kingdom having-gained not long reigning failed
occisus a suis. cui succedens hactenus Agil continet
slain by his-men to-whom succeeding up-to-now Agila holds
regnum. contra quem Atanagildus insurgens Romani regni
the-kingdom against whom Athanagild rising of-the-Roman kingdom
concitat vires, ubi et Liberius patricius cum exercitu
rouses the-forces where also Liberius the-patrician with an-army
destinatur. nec fuit in parte occidua gens, quae Theodorico,
is-sent nor was in the-part western a-nation which to-Theodoric
dum adviveret, aut amicitia aut subiectione non deserviret.
while he-lived either by-friendship or by-subjection not served

Caput LIX

LIX · ATHALARIC AND AMALASUNTHA

Dying, Theodoric makes his ten-year-old grandson Athalaric king and charges the Goths to love the senate and keep the emperor's favor. Athalaric and his mother reign eight years in peace. When Athalaric dies, Amalasuntha makes Theodahad her partner, and he exiles her to an island and has her strangled.

Sed postquam ad senium pervenisset et se in brevi ab
but after to old-age he-had-come and himself in short from
hac luce egressurum cognusceret, convocans Gothos comites
this light about-to-depart he-knew calling-together the-Goths counts
gentisque suae primates Athalaricum infantulum adhuc vix
and-of-nation his the-chiefs Athalaric a-little-infant still scarcely
decennem, filium filiae suae Amalasuenthae, qui Eutharico
ten-years-old the-son of-daughter his Amalasuntha who of-Eutharic
patre orbatus erat, regem constituit, eisque in mandatis ac
his-father bereaved was as-king he-appointed and-to-them in commands as

si testamentali voce denuntians, ut regem colerent, senatum
if with-testamentary voice declaring that the-king they-should-honor the-senate
populumque Romanum amarent principemque Orientalem
and-people Roman should-love and-the-prince Eastern
placatum semper propitiumque haberent post deum. quod
appeased always and-propitious should-have after God which
praeceptum quamdiu Athalaricus rex eiusque mater
precept as-long-as Athalaric the-king and-his mother
adviverent, in omnibus custodientes pene per octo annos in
lived in all-things keeping almost through eight years in
pace regnarunt: quamvis Francis de regno puerili desperantibus,
peace they-reigned although the-Franks of the-reign childish despairing
immo in contemptu habentibus bellaque parare molientibus
nay in contempt holding and-wars to-prepare striving
quod pater et avus Gallias occupasset, eis concessit.
what his-father and grandfather the-Gauls had-occupied to-them he-granted
cetera in pace et tranquillitate possessa. dum ergo ad spem
the-rest in peace and tranquility possessed while therefore to the-hope
iuventutis Athalaricus accederet, tam suam aduliscentiam
of-youth Athalaric drew-near as-well his adolescence
quam matris viduitatem Orientis principi commendavit,
as of-his-mother the-widowhood of-the-East to-the-prince he-commended
sed in brevi infelicissimus inmatura morte praeventus, rebus
but in short most-unhappy by-untimely death overtaken from-affairs
humanis excessit. tum mater, ne pro sexus sui fragilitate
human departed then his-mother lest because-of of-sex her the-frailty
a Gothis sperneretur, secum deliberans, Theodahadum
by the-Goths she-should-be-scorned with-herself deliberating Theodahad
consubrinum suum germanitatis gratia accersitum a Tuscia,
cousin her of-kinship for-the-sake summoned from Tuscia
ubi privatam vitam degens in laribus propriis erat, in
where private life spending in household-gods his-own he-was in

regno locavit. qui inmemor consanguinitatis post aliquantum
the-kingdom placed who unmindful of-blood-relationship after some
tempus a palatio Ravennate abstractam in insulam laci
time from the-palace of-Ravenna dragged into an-island of-the-lake
Bulsiniensis eam exilio religavit, ubi paucissimos dies in
of-Bolsena her into-exile banished where very-few days in
tristitia degens ab eius satellitibus in balneo strangulata est.
sadness spending by his attendants in the-bath strangled was

Caput LX

LX · VITIGES AND THE END OF THE AMALS

Justinian avenges Amalasuntha: Belisarius takes Sicily and Rome, the Goths raise Vitiges to be king and he has Theodahad killed, and after long sieges Vitiges surrenders at Ravenna. He dies in Constantinople, and Matasuntha bears Germanus a son. Jordanes ends by praising the victors and protesting he has added nothing in the Goths' favor.

Quod dum Iustinianus imperator Orientalis audisset et quasi
which when Justinian the-emperor of-the-East had-heard and as-if
susceptorum suorum morte ad suam iniuriam
of-those-received-under-protection his by-the-death to his injury
redundaret, sic est commotus. eodem namque tempore de
it-redounded so was moved at-the-same for time over
Africa Vandalicum cum per fidelissimum suum patricium
Africa a-Vandal when through most-faithful his patrician
Belesarium reportasset triumphum, nec mora in ipso
Belisarius he-had-brought-back triumph nor delay in very
tempore madentibus adhuc armis cruore Vandalico contra
time dripping still the-arms with-gore Vandal against
Gothos per eundem ducem movit procinctum. qui dux
the-Goths through the-same general moved his-army which general

providentissimus haud secus arbitratus Getarum subicere
most-foresighted not otherwise having-thought of-the-Getae to-subject
populum, nisi prius nutricem eorum occupasset Siciliam.
the-people unless first the-nurse their he-had-occupied Sicily
quod et factum est. Trinacriaque ingressus mox Gothi,
which also done was and-Trinacria having-entered soon the-Goths
qui Syracusanum oppidum insidebant, videntes se nihil
who the-Syracusan town occupied seeing themselves nothing
praevalere cum suo duce Sinderith ultro se
to-prevail with their general Sinderith of-their-own-accord themselves
Belesario dediderunt. cumque ergo Romanus ductor Siciliam
to-Belisarius surrendered and-when therefore the-Roman leader Sicily
pervasisset, Theodahadus comperiens Evermud generum suum
had-overrun Theodahad learning Evermud son-in-law his
cum exercitu ad fretum, quod inter Campaniam Siciliamque
with an-army to the-strait which between Campania and-Sicily
interiacet et de Tyrreni maris sinu vastissimum Adriaticus
lies and from the-Tyrrhenian of-the-sea bay the-most-vast Adriatic
aestus evolvitur, custodiendum direxit. ubi cum Evermud
surge rolls-out to-be-guarded directed where when Evermud
accessisset Regium oppidum, castra composuit. nec mora
had-approached at-Rhegium town a-camp established nor delay
deterioratam causam cernens suorum ad partes victoris
worsened the-cause seeing of-his to the-side of-the-victor
paucis et fidelissimis famulis consciis movit, ultroque
with-a-few and most-faithful servants privy moved and-of-his-own-accord
se Belesarii pedes advolvens Romani regni optat servire
himself of-Belisarius to-the-feet rolling of-the-Roman kingdom chooses to-serve
principibus. quod Gothorum exercitus sentiens suspectum
the-princes which of-the-Goths the-army perceiving suspect
Theodahadum clamitat regno pellendum et sibi
Theodahad cries from-the-kingdom to-be-driven and for-themselves

ductorem suum Vitiges, qui armiger eius fuerat, in
leader their Vitiges who armor-bearer his had-been as
rege levandum. quod et factum est; et mox in campos
king to-be-raised which also done was and soon at the-plains
Barbaricos Vitiges in regno levatus Romam ingreditur
Barbarian Vitiges to the-kingdom raised Rome enters
praemissisque Ravenna fidelissimis sibi viris Theodahadi
and-sent-ahead to-Ravenna most-faithful to-himself men of-Theodahad
necem demandat. qui venientes imperata sibi perficiunt et
the-death commissions who coming the-ordered for-them accomplish and
occiso Theodahado regem qui a rege missus adveniebat (et
slain Theodahad the-king who by the-king sent was-coming and
adhuc in campos Barbaricos erat Vitigis) populis nuntiat.
still in the-plains Barbarian was Vitiges to-the-peoples announces
inter haec Romanus exercitus emenso freto Campaniam
among these-things the-Roman army crossed the-strait Campania
accedens, subversumque Neapolim Romae ingreditur; unde
approaching and-overthrown Naples Rome enters whence
ante paucos dies rex Vitigis egressus, Ravenna profectus,
before a-few days the-king Vitiges having-gone-out to-Ravenna having-set-out
Mathesuentam filiam Amalasuenthae Theodorici quondam
Matasuntha daughter of-Amalasuntha of-Theodoric once
regis neptem sibi in matrimonio sociarat. cumque his
king granddaughter to-himself in marriage had-joined and-when in-these
novis nuptiis delectatus aulam regiam fovit Ravenna,
new nuptials delighted the-court royal he-cherished at-Ravenna
Roma egressus imperialis exercitus munita utriusque
from-Rome having-gone-out the-imperial army the-fortified of-both
Tusciae loca invadit. quod cernens per nuntios Vitiges,
Tuscia places invades which seeing through messengers Vitiges
cum Hunila duce Gothorum manu armis conserta mittit
with Hunila as-general of-the-Goths a-band with-arms joined sends

Perusia. ubi dum Magnum comitem cum parvo exercitu
to-Perusia where while Magnus the-count with small army
residentem obsessione longa evellere cupiunt, superveniente
residing by-siege long to-tear-out they-desire coming-up
Romano exercitu ipsi evulsi et omnino extincti
the-Roman army they-themselves torn-out and altogether killed
sunt. quod audiens Vitiges ut leo furibundus omnem
were which hearing Vitiges as a-lion raging all
Gothorum exercitum congregat Ravennaque egressus
of-the-Goths the-army gathers and-from-Ravenna having-gone-out
Romanas arces obsidione longa fatigat. sed frustrata eius
the-Roman citadels with-siege long wears but frustrated his
audacia post quattuordecim menses ab obsidione Romanae
boldness after fourteen months from the-siege of-the-Roman
urbis aufugit et se ad Ariminensem oppressionem
city fled and himself for the-Ariminian oppression
praeparat. unde pari tenore frustratus fugatusque Ravenna
prepares whence equal course frustrated and-put-to-flight to-Ravenna
se recepit; ubi obsessus nec mora ultro se ad
himself betook where besieged nor delay of-his-own-accord himself to
partes dedit victoris cum Mathesuentha iugale regiasque
the-side gave of-the-victor with Matasuntha his-wife and-the-royal
opes. et sic famosum regnum fortissimamque gentem
wealth and so a-famous kingdom and-a-most-brave nation
diuque regnantem tandem pene duomillensimo et tricesimo
and-long reigning at-last almost in-the-two-thousandth and thirtieth
anno victor gentium diversarum Iustinianus imperator per
year the-victor of-nations diverse Justinian the-emperor through
fidelissimum consulem vicit Belesarium, et perductum
the-most-faithful consul conquered Belisarius and brought
Vitiges Constantinopolim patricii honore donavit. ubi
Vitiges to-Constantinople of-patrician with-the-honor presented where

plus biennio demoratus imperatorisque in affectu coniunctus
more two-years having-stayed and-of-the-emperor in affection joined
rebus excessit humanis. Mathesuentham vero iugalem eius
from-affairs departed human Matasuntha but wife his
fratri suo Germano patricio coniunxit imperator. de
to-the-brother his Germanus the-patrician joined the-emperor from
quibus post humatum patris Germani natus est filius
whom after the-burial of-his-father Germanus born was a-son
idem Germanus. in quo coniuncta Aniciorum genus cum
the-same Germanus in whom joined of-the-Anicii the-race with
Amala stirpe spem adhuc utriusque generi domino praestante
the-Amal stock hope still to-each race the-Lord granting
promittit.
promises

Haec hucusque Getarum origo ac Amalorum nobilitas
this up-to-here of-the-Getae the-origin and of-the-Amals the-nobility
et virorum fortium facta. haec laudanda progenies
and of-men brave the-deeds this praiseworthy progeny
laudabiliori principi cessit et fortiori duci manus dedit,
to-a-more-praiseworthy prince yielded and to-a-braver general its-hands gave
cuius fama nullis saeculis nullisque silebitur aetatibus,
whose fame in-no ages and-in-no shall-be-silenced generations
sed victor ac triumphator Iustinianus imperator et consul
but the-victor and triumpher Justinian the-emperor and the-consul
Belesarius Vandalici Africani Geticique dicentur. haec
Belisarius Vandalicus Africanus and-Geticus shall-be-called these-things
qui legis, scito me maiorum secutum scriptis ex
you-who read know me of-the-elders having-followed the-writings from
eorum latissima prata paucos flores legisse, unde
their most-wide meadows a-few flowers to-have-gathered whence
inquirenti pro captu ingenii mei coronam contexam.
for-the-inquirer according-to the-capacity of-wit my a-crown I-may-weave

nec me quis in favorem gentis praedictae, quasi ex
nor me anyone in favor of-the-nation aforesaid as-if from
ipsa trahenti originem, aliqua addidisse credat, quam
it drawing origin some-things to-have-added let-him-believe than
quae legi et comperi. nec si tamen cuncta, quae de
what I-have-read and learned nor if yet all-things which about
ipsis scribuntur aut referuntur, complexus sum, nec tantum
them are-written or are-related embraced I-have nor so-much
ad eorum laudem quantum ad laudem eius qui vicit
to their praise as to the-praise of-him who conquered
exponens.
setting-out

JORDANES

De Summa Temporum

The Roman History

§§ 1–7

1–7 · PREFACE TO VIGILIUS

Jordanes thanks Vigilius for questions that roused him from long sleep, and promises a brief account of the world's misfortunes, of how Rome rose and held the world, and of its rulers to Justinian. He joins to it his history of the Getae for Castalius, urges love of God, and, following Iamblichus, says Rome built its world by arms and kept it by laws.

Vigilantiae vestrae, nobilissime frater Vigili, gratias refero,
to-the-vigilance your O-most-noble brother Vigilius thanks I-return
quod me longo per tempore dormientem vestris tandem
because me long through time sleeping by-your at-last
interrogationibus excitastis. deo magno gratias, qui vos ita
questions you-have-roused to-God great thanks who you so
fecit sollicitos, ut non solum vobis tantum, quantum
has-made solicitous that not only for-yourselves so-much as
et aliis vigiletis. mactae virtutis et meriti. vis enim
also for-others you-keep-watch blessed of-virtue and of-merit you-wish for
praesentis mundi erumnas cognuscere aut quando coepit vel
of-the-present world the-hardships to-learn or when it-began or
quid ad nos usque perpessus est, edoceri. addes praeterea,
what to us up-to it-suffered has to-be-taught you-shall-add besides
ut tibi, quomodo Romana res publica coepit et tenuit
that to-you how Roman the-state public began and held
totumque pene mundum subegit et hactenus vel imaginariae
and-the-whole almost world subdued and up-to-now even in-semblance
teneat, ex dictis maiorum floscula carpens breviter referam:
holds from sayings of-the-elders flowerets plucking briefly I-should-relate
vel etiam quomodo regum series a Romulo et deinceps
or also how of-the-kings the-series from Romulus and thereafter

ab Augusto Octaviano in Augustum venerit Iustinianum,
from Augustus Octavian to Augustus has-come Justinian
quamvis simpliciter, meo tamen tibi eloquio pandam.
although simply by-my yet to-you speech I-should-unfold
licet nec conversationi meae quod ammones convenire
although neither to-the-manner-of-life my what you-urge to-befit
potest nec peritiae, tamen, ne amici petitionibus obviemus,
it-can nor to-skill yet lest of-a-friend the-requests we-oppose
quoquo modo valuimus, late sparsa collegimus. et prius ab
in-whatever way we-were-able widely scattered we-have-gathered and first from
auctoritate divinarum scripturarum, cui et inservire convenit,
the-authority of-the-divine scriptures which also to-serve it-befits
inchoantes et usque ad orbis terrae diluvium per
beginning and all-the-way to of-the-world of-the-earth the-flood through
familiarum capita currentes, devenimus ad regnum Nini, qui
of-the-families the-heads running we-have-come to the-kingdom of-Ninus who
Assyriorum in gente regnans omnem pene Asiam subiugavit,
of-the-Assyrians in the-nation reigning all almost Asia subjugated
et usque ad Arbacem Medum, qui distructo regno
and all-the-way to Arbaces the-Mede who destroyed the-kingdom
Assyriorum in Medos eum convertit tenuitque usque ad
of-the-Assyrians to the-Medes it turned and-held-it all-the-way to
Cyrum Persam, qui itidem Medorum regnum subversum
Cyrus the-Persian who likewise of-the-Medes the-kingdom overturned
in Parthos transtulit, et exinde usque ad Alexandrum
to the-Parthians transferred and thence all-the-way to Alexander
Magnum Macedonem, qui devictis Parthis in Grecorum
the-Great the-Macedonian who conquered the-Parthians into of-the-Greeks
dicione rem publicam demutavit. post hec quomodo
the-dominion the-state public changed after these-things how
Octavianus Augustus Cesar subverso regno Grecorum in
Octavian Augustus Caesar overturned the-kingdom of-the-Greeks into

ius dominationemque Romanorum perduxit. et quia ante
the-right and-dominion of-the-Romans brought-it and because before
Augustum iam per septingentos annos consolum, dictatorum
Augustus already through seven-hundred years of-the-consuls of-the-dictators
regumque suorum sollertia Romana res publica nonnulla
and-of-the-kings its by-the-skill Roman the-state public not-a-few-things
subegerat, ab ipso Romulo aedificatore eius originem sumens,
had-subdued from very Romulus the-founder its the-origin taking
in vicensimo quarto anno Iustiniani imperatoris, quamvis
in the-twenty fourth year of-Justinian of-the-emperor although
breviter, uno tamen in tuo nomine et hoc parvissimo libello
briefly in-one yet in your name and this very-small little-book
confeci, iungens ei aliud volumen de origine actusque
I-have-completed joining to-it another volume about the-origin and-deeds
Getice gentis, quam iam dudum communi amico Castalio
of-the-Getic nation which already long-ago to-our-common friend Castalius
ededissem, quatinus diversarum gentium calamitate conperta
I-had-published so-that of-diverse nations the-calamity learned
ab omni erumna liberum te fieri cupias et ad deum
from every hardship free you to-become you-may-desire and to God
convertas, qui est vera libertas. legens ergo utrosque libellos,
you-may-turn who is true freedom reading therefore both little-books
scito quod diligenti mundo semper necessitas imminet. tu
know that to-one-loving the-world always necessity is-imminent you
vero ausculta Iohannem apostolum, qui ait: ‘carissimi, nolite
but listen-to John the-apostle who says O-dearest do-not
dilegere mundum neque ea que in mundo sunt. quia
love the-world nor those-things which in the-world are because
mundus transit et concupiscentia eius: qui autem fecerit
the-world passes and the-lust of-it who but shall-have-done
voluntatem dei, manet in aeternum’. estoque toto corde
the-will of-God remains for eternity and-be with-whole heart

diligens deum et proximum, ut adimpleas legem et ores
loving God and neighbor that you-may-fulfill the-law and pray
pro me, novilissime et magnifice frater.
for me O-most-noble and magnificent brother
Romani, ut ait Iamblicus, armis et legibus exercentes
the-Romans as says Iamblichus by-arms and by-laws exercising-themselves
orbem terrae suum fecerunt: armis si quidem construxerunt,
the-world of-the-earth their they-made by-arms if indeed they-built(-it)
legibus autem conservaverunt. quod et ego, sequens
by-laws moreover preserved-it which also I following
eruditissimum virum, dum aliqua de cursu temporum
the-most-learned man while some-things about the-course of-times
scribere delibero, necessarium duxi opusculo meo velut
to-write I-deliberate necessary I-have-thought to-little-work my as
insigne quoddam ornamentum praeponere. cupio namque ad
an-emblem a-certain ornament to-set-before I-desire for at
inquisitionibus amici fidelissimi, ex diversis voluminibus
the-inquiries of-a-friend most-faithful from diverse volumes
maiorum praelibans aliqua floscula pro captu ingenii
of-the-elders tasting-first some flowerets according-to the-capacity of-wit
mei in unum redigere et in modum storiunculae tam
my into one to-gather and in the-manner of-a-little-history as-well
annorum seriae quam etiam eorum virorum, qui fortiter
of-the-years the-series as also of-those men who bravely
in re publica laboraverunt, gesta strictim breviterque
in the-state public labored the-deeds summarily and-briefly
collegere. quod quamvis simpliciter reor dictum videri
to-collect which although simply I-think said to-seem
doctissimis, gratum tamen fore aestimo mediocribus, dum
to-the-most-learned welcome yet to-be I-reckon to-the-middling while
et brevia sine fastidio legant et sine aliquo fuco
also brief-things without weariness they-read and without any paint

verborum quae lecticaverint sentiant. ab originem etenim
of-words what they-shall-have-read they-perceive from the-origin for
orbis primaque creatione tam hominis quam elementorum
of-the-world and-the-first creation as-well of-man as of-the-elements
et usque orbis terrae diluvio secundum veredici
and all-the-way of-the-world of-the-earth to-the-flood according-to of-the-truth-speaking
legislatoris verba Mosei duo milia ducentos quadraginta
lawgiver the-words Moses two thousand two-hundred forty
et duo annos collegimus. in quibus annis adhuc rudi et
and two years we-have-collected in which years still rude and
simplici hominum natura non reges, sed familiarum capita
simple of-men the-nature not kings but of-families heads
suo in genere erant. quorum tamen ordo huiuscemodi fuit.
their in kind were of-whom yet the-order of-this-sort was

§§ 8–38

8–38 · FROM ADAM TO THE ASSYRIAN KINGS

The patriarchs from Adam to Noah are listed with their years, then the line from Shem to Abraham. Jordanes reckons 3,308 years from Adam to the birth of Abraham, turns from families to kings, and lists the Assyrian kings from Ninus and Semiramis onward, beside Abraham, Jacob, Joseph, and Moses, the judges of Israel, and Aeneas' coming to Italy.

Adam protoplastus primusque mortalium vixit annos
Adam the-first-formed and-first of-mortals lived years
ccxxx et genuit Seth.
two-hundred-thirty and begot Seth
Seth vixit an. ccv et genuit Enos.
Seth lived years two-hundred-five and begot Enos
Enos autem vixit an. cxc et genuit Cainan.
Enos moreover lived years one-hundred-ninety and begot Cainan

Cainan item vixit an. clxx et genuit Malelehel.
Cainan likewise lived years one-hundred-seventy and begot Mahalaleel
Malelehel vixit an. clxv et genuit Iareth.
Mahalaleel lived years one-hundred-sixty-five and begot Jared
Iareth vero vixit an. clxii et genuit Enoch.
Jared indeed lived years one-hundred-sixty-two and begot Enoch
Enoch vero vixit an. clxv et genuit Mathusala.
Enoch indeed lived years one-hundred-sixty-five and begot Methuselah
Mathusala vixit an. clxvii et genuit Lamech.
Methuselah lived years one-hundred-sixty-seven and begot Lamech
Lamech quoque vixit an. clxxxviii et genuit Noe.
Lamech also lived years one-hundred-eighty-eight and begot Noah
Noe vero sexcentorum erat annorum, quando diluvium
Noah indeed of-six-hundred was years when the-flood
mundi crudelissima facinora expiavit. a cuius regimine
of-the-world most-cruel crimes expiated from whose rule
vel ab ipso diluvio usque ad confusionem linguarum,
or from the-very flood all-the-way to the-confusion of-tongues
que item ob delecta aedificantium turrem facta est in
which likewise for the-crimes of-those-building the-tower made was in
campo Sennahar, et usque Heber, in quo Hebreorum genus
the-plain of-Shinar and up-to Eber in whom of-the-Hebrews the-race
et lingua prisca remansit, quia nec in illa conspiratione
and tongue ancient remained because neither in that conspiracy
interfuit, sunt anni dxxv per familias sic.
he-took-part are years five-hundred-twenty-five through families thus
Arfaxath, filius Sem, nepus Noe, qui post diluvium anno
Arphaxad son of-Shem grandson of-Noah who after the-flood in-the-year
secundo est genitus, vixit annos cxxxv et genuit
second was begotten lived years one-hundred-thirty-five and begot
Cainan.
Cainan

Cainan vero vixit an. cxxx et genuit Sala.
Cainan indeed lived years one-hundred-thirty and begot Shelah
Sala autem vixit an. cxxx et genuit Heber.
Shelah moreover lived years one-hundred-thirty and begot Eber
Heber quoque vixit an. cxxx et genuit Falech.
Eber also lived years one-hundred-thirty and begot Peleg
A confusione ergo linguarum et primatu Heber, a quo
from the-confusion therefore of-tongues and the-primacy of-Eber from whom
Hebrei, et usque nativitatem Abrahae, quando et primus
the-Hebrews and up-to the-birth of-Abraham when also the-first
rex in mundo in gente regnabat Assyriorum Ninus anno
king in the-world in the-nation reigned of-the-Assyrians Ninus in-the-year
regni sui xlii, supra scripto familiarum serie currentes,
of-reign his forty-second above written of-the-families the-series running
fiunt anni dxli sic.
come years five-hundred-forty-one thus
Falech vixit an. cxxx et genuit Ragau.
Peleg lived years one-hundred-thirty and begot Reu
Ragau vixit an. cxxxii et genuit Seruch.
Reu lived years one-hundred-thirty-two and begot Serug
Seruch autem vixit ann. cxxx et genuit Nachor.
Serug moreover lived years one-hundred-thirty and begot Nahor
Nachor vero vixit an. lxxviiii et genuit Thara.
Nahor indeed lived years seventy-nine and begot Terah
Thara quoque vixit an. lxx et genuit Abram.
Terah also lived years seventy and begot Abram
Simul ergo ab Adam et usque ad nativitatem Abrahae,
together therefore from Adam and all-the-way to the-birth of-Abraham
id est ab ortu mundi et usque quadragesimo secundo
that is from the-rise of-the-world and up-to the-forty second
anno regis primi Assyriorum Nini, ut superius diximus,
year of-the-king first of-the-Assyrians Ninus as above we-have-said

per familias capitaque eorum fiunt generationes viginti,
through families and-heads of-them come generations twenty
anni autem iiicccviii, unde iam relictis familiis
the-years moreover three-thousand-three-hundred-eight whence now left the-families
regum seriem persequamur et, sicut Eusevius vel Hieronimus,
of-the-kings the-series let-us-pursue and as Eusebius or Jerome
primum Assyriorum, deinde Medorum Persarumque et
first of-the-Assyrians then of-the-Medes and-of-the-Persians and
Grecorum currentes, ad Romanum quomodo delatum est vel
of-the-Greeks running to the-Roman how brought it-was or
quali tempore, latius, si dominus permiserit, exequamur.
at-what time more-widely if the-Lord shall-have-permitted let-us-set-out
Origo ergo regum regnorumque antiqua Assiria nobis
the-origin therefore of-kings and-of-kingdoms ancient Assyria by-us
amplexanda est, in qua primus Ninus Beli filius, urbem
to-be-embraced is in which first Ninus of-Belus son a-city
sui nominis fabricans Niniven, regnavit an. xlii, ubi a
of-his name building Nineveh reigned years forty-two where from
primo anno ipsius Nini et usque in ultimum annum
the-first year of-the-very Ninus and all-the-way to the-last year
Thonos Concoloros, quem Greci Sardanafalum appellant,
of-Thonos Concolerus whom the-Greeks Sardanapalus they-call
quem occidit Arbaces Medorum praefectus, regnum illud
whom killed Arbaces of-the-Medes the-prefect the-kingdom that
transferens in Medos, regnatum est a regibus trigenta et
transferring to the-Medes reigned it-was by kings thirty and
sex per annos mille ducentos quadraginta sic.
six through years thousand two-hundred forty thus
Ninus rex Assyriorum post nativitatem Abrahae regnavit
Ninus king of-the-Assyrians after the-birth of-Abraham reigned
ann. x.
years ten

Semiramis uxor Nini annis xlii. hanc dicunt quasi
Semiramis wife of-Ninus years forty-two her they-call as-if
Babyloniae conditricem, quamvis non legatur quia condidit,
of-Babylon the-foundress although not it-is-read that she-founded-it
sed quia reparavit. sub ea Abram adoliscit in Chaldea.
but that she-restored-it under her Abram grows-up in Chaldea
Zameis, qui et Ninias, filius Nini et Semiramidis, ann.
Zameis who also Ninyas son of-Ninus and of-Semiramis years
xxxviii. cuius trecessimo tertio anno facta est promissio ad
thirty-eight in-whose thirty third year made was the-promise to
Abram, cum esset annorum lxxv.
Abram when he-was of-years seventy-five
Arius ann. xxx. cuius decimo anno centenarius Abraham
Arius years thirty in-whose tenth year a-centenarian Abraham
genuit filium Isaac.
begot a-son Isaac
Aralius an. xl. huius in ultimo regni anno nascuntur
Aralius years forty of-him in the-last of-reign year are-born
gemini Isaac, id est Iacob et Esau.
the-twins of-Isaac that is Jacob and Esau
Xerses, qui et Baleus, an. xxx. in huius regni tempore
Xerxes who also Baleus years thirty in of-him of-reign the-time
Iacob, germanum fugiens Esau, descendit in Aegypto solus
Jacob his-brother fleeing Esau descends into Egypt alone
ditatusque cum turba ascendit.
and-enriched with a-crowd goes-up
Armamitres ann. xxxviii. Iacob a servitute soceri
Armamitres years thirty-eight Jacob from the-servitude of-his-father-in-law
Laban recedens ad patrem revertitur.
Laban withdrawing to his-father returns

Belochus ann. xxxv. hoc regnante Ioseph aduliscens
Belochus years thirty-five this-one reigning Joseph a-youth
somnia sua fratribus narrat et patri.
the-dreams his to-his-brothers tells and to-his-father
Baleus an. lii. huius anno trecensimo Iacob famis
Baleus years fifty-two of-him in-the-year thirtieth Jacob of-famine
penuria discendit in Egypto ibique filium suum repperit
by-the-want goes-down into Egypt and-there son his he-found
praepositum terrae totius Egypti.
set-over the-land of-whole of-Egypt
Altadus ann. xxxii. hoc regnante Iacob defunctus est in
Altadas years thirty-two this-one reigning Jacob died has in
Aegyptum, cuius cadaber Ioseph cum magno honore vocat
Egypt whose corpse Joseph with great honor calls
in terra Chanaan.
in the-land of-Canaan
Maminthus ann. xxx. sub istius regni tempore moritur
Mamythus years thirty under of-this-one of-reign the-time dies
Ioseph et Hebreos depraement Egyptii gravissima
Joseph and the-Hebrews oppress the-Egyptians with-most-grievous
servitute.
servitude
Macthaleus ann. xxx. et hoc regnante servitus perdurat
Mancaleus years thirty and this-one reigning the-servitude endures
in Egypto Hebreorum.
in Egypt of-the-Hebrews
Spherus ann. xxx. huius regni temporibus ultimis Ambra
Sphaerus years thirty of-him of-reign in-the-times last Amram
ex tribu Levvi genuit Moysen.
from the-tribe of-Levi begot Moses

Mamilus ann. xxx. hoc regnante adoliscens Moyses omnem
Mamylus years thirty this-one reigning a-youth Moses all
philosophiam dedicit Aegyptiorum.
philosophy learned of-the-Egyptians
Sparethus ann. xl. quo tempore Moyses occiso Egyptio
Sparethus years forty at-which time Moses slain the-Egyptian
in terra fugit Madia.
into the-land flees of-Midian
Astacades ann. xl. huius regni anno octavo Moyses
Ascatades years forty of-him of-reign in-the-year eighth Moses
ccccxxx anno repromissionis populum Hebraeum
in-the-four-hundred-thirtieth year of-the-promise the-people Hebrew
in signis et virtutibus educit ex Egypto eisque in
with signs and powers leads-out from Egypt and-to-them in
heremo per annos quadraginta legem exponit.
the-desert through years forty the-law expounds
Amyntas ann. xlv. huius nono anno moritur Moyses
Amyntas years forty-five of-him in-the-ninth year dies Moses
et Hiesus Nave ducatum populo praebit.
and Joshua of-Nun the-leadership to-the-people furnishes
Belochus an. xxv. sub quo Gothonihel iudex Hebraeorum
Belochus years twenty-five under whom Othniel judge of-the-Hebrews
et sacerdotium continet Finees.
and the-priesthood holds Phinehas
Belepares ann. xxx. quo tempore Hebraeorum iudex Aod
Bellepares years thirty at-which time of-the-Hebrews judge Ehud
Allofilique infesti omnino.
and-the-Philistines hostile altogether
Lamprides ann. xxxvii. et in huius regno ipse iudex
Lamprides years thirty-seven and in his reign himself judge
Ebreis perdurat Aod.
to-the-Hebrews endures Ehud

Sosares ann. xx. et huius temporibus quamvis senis tamen
Sosares years twenty and in-his times although old yet
adhuc consistit Aod pugnadque cum alienigenis et vincit
still stands Ehud and-fights with foreigners and conquers
iubatus a deo.
helped by God
Lamperes ann. xxx. quo regnante Iudaeis praeerat Deborra
Lampares years thirty who reigning the-Jews ruled Deborah
et Barach.
and Barak
Pannias ann. xlv. sub cuius tempora Iudeis praefuit
Panyas years forty-five under whose times the-Jews ruled
Gedeon, qui et Ieroboal.
Gideon who also Jerubbaal
Sosarmus ann. xviiii. sub cuius tempora Thola et Abimelech
Sosarmus years nineteen under whose times Tola and Abimelech
iudices erant Hebraeorum.
judges were of-the-Hebrews
Mithreus ann. xxviiii. sub quo Iudeis praeerat Iair.
Mithraeus years twenty-nine under whom the-Jews ruled Jair
Tautanes ann. xxii. cuius sub regno iudices Hebraeorum
Tautanes years twenty-two whose under reign judges of-the-Hebrews
Hesebon et Labdon. nam et ipso tempore Greci Troiam
Ibzan and Abdon for also at-that time the-Greeks Troy
vastaverunt; unde Aeneas fugiens in Italiam venit, se quoque
laid-waste whence Aeneas fleeing into Italy came himself also
cum Latino Fauni filio Pici nepotem Saturnique abnepotem
with Latinus of-Faunus son of-Picus grandson and-of-Saturn great-grandson
adfinitatis gratia iungens accepta filia eius in uxore
of-affinity for-the-sake joining received the-daughter his into wife
Labinia. unitosque Frigas Italosque populos nominavere Latinos.
Lavinia and-the-united Phrygian and-Italian peoples they-named Latins

§§ 39–57

39–57 · THE FALL OF ASSYRIA AND THE MEDES

Aeneas and the Alban kings reign in Latium while the Assyrian line runs on beside Samson, David, and Solomon. Arbaces the Mede kills Sardanapalus and takes the kingdom. Under the Medes, Romulus and Remus are born and Rome is founded, Israel is carried away, and the kingdom passes to Cyrus and the Persians.

et sic iam ex tunc et deinceps, quamvis in pauperrimo regno
and thus now from then and thereafter although in a-most-poor kingdom
locoque angusto, quod dicibatur agro Laurentum, regnaverunt
and-place narrow which was-called the-field Laurentine reigned
post Latinum Aeneas et successores eius, qui et Silvii sunt
after Latinus Aeneas and successors his who also Silvii are
Albanique vocitati, pro Albano urbe et pro postumo Aeneae
and-Albans called for the-Alban city and for the-posthumous of-Aeneas
idem Enea, qui idcirco Silvius dictus est, quia Lavinia
the-same Aeneas who therefore Silvius called was because Lavinia
post mortem Aeneae, timens Ascanii invidiam, clam eum
after the-death of-Aeneas fearing of-Ascanius the-envy secretly him
in silva generavit Aeneamque Silvium nominavit. ante quem,
in a-wood bore and-Aeneas Silvius named before whom
ut superius diximus, Italiae regnatum est a Iano, Saturno,
as above we-have-said over-Italy reigned it-was by Janus Saturn
Pico, Fauno adque Latino per annos circiter clxxx.
Picus Faunus and Latinus through years about one-hundred-eighty
Teuteus ann. xl. sub quo Samson ille ultra fortis
Teutaeus years forty under whom Samson that beyond the-strong
fortissimus iudix Hebraeorum.
strongest judge of-the-Hebrews

Thineus ann. xxx. hoc regnante anno octavo decimo
Thinaeus years thirty this-one reigning in-the-year eighth tenth
Heli sacerdos, audito nuntio filiorum arcaque testamenti
Eli the-priest heard the-news of-his-sons and-the-ark of-the-covenant
ablata, cadens mortuus est.
taken-away falling died has
Dercylus ann. xl. sub quo aliquantum tempus Saul rex
Dercylus years forty under whom for-some time Saul king
Hebreorum, aliud vero David rex ex tribu Iuda
of-the-Hebrews for-another indeed David king from the-tribe of-Judah
constitutus regnavit.
appointed reigned
Eupales an. xxxviii. hoc regnante anno trecesimo secundo
Eupales years thirty-eight this-one reigning in-the-year thirtieth second
Salomon templum domini inchoavit et perfecit singulariter
Solomon the-temple of-the-Lord began and completed singularly
in mundo per annos septem.
in the-world through years seven
Laosthenes ann. xlv. et hoc regnante Assyriis
Laosthenes years forty-five and this-one reigning over-the-Assyrians
Salomon regnat Hebraeis, Saddoch vero et Achias Selonitis
Solomon reigns over-the-Hebrews Zadok but and Ahijah the-Shilonite
prophetant.
prophesy
Pritiades ann. xxx. sub quo, iam mortuo Salomone, inter
Pertiades years thirty under whom now having-died Solomon between
Roboam et Ieroboam regnum dividitur Hebraeorum et alii
Rehoboam and Jeroboam the-kingdom is-divided of-the-Hebrews and some
Iudaei, alii dicuntur Israhelitae.
Jews others are-called Israelites

Ofrateus ann. xx. sub isto in parte Iudeorum regnat
Ophrataeus years twenty under this-one in the-part of-the-Jews reigns
Iosaphat; Israhelitarum vero, caeleri morte Nabad et Baaz, Ela
Jehoshaphat of-the-Israelites indeed by-swift death Nadab and Baasha Elah
et Ambri obeuntibus, tenebat regimen Achab cum Hiezabel.
and Omri passing-away held the-rule Ahab with Jezebel
Ofrathanes ann. l. sub quo Ioram, Ochozias et Gotholia
Ophratanes years fifty under whom Joram Ahaziah and Athaliah
et Ioas parti Iudae regnabant; Israheli vero Ochozias,
and Joash in-the-part of-Judah reigned to-Israel indeed Ahaziah
Ioram et Ieu principatui unus post alium successerunt.
Joram and Jehu to-the-rule one after another succeeded
Acrazapes ann. xlii. sub quo Amesias in Iuda regno
Acrazanes years forty-two under whom Amaziah in of-Judah the-kingdom
ascitus obtinet principatum; Israheli vero Ioachab et Ioas
summoned obtains the-rule to-Israel indeed Jehoahaz and Joash
unus post alium regnat.
one after another reigns
Thonos Concoloros, quem Greci Sardanafalum nominant,
Thonos Concolerus whom the-Greeks Sardanapalus name
ann. xx. sub quo Iudeorum Azarias qui et Ozias,
years twenty under whom of-the-Jews Azariah who also Uzziah
Israhelitis vero Roboam.
over-the-Israelites indeed Rehoboam
Regnum ergo Assyriorum post annorum numero mille
the-kingdom therefore of-the-Assyrians after of-years in-number thousand
ducentos et quadraginta finem tantae diuturnitatis accepit
two-hundred and forty the-end of-so-great duration received
ad Medosque translatum est. nam Arbaces praefectus
to and-the-Medes transferred was for Arbaces the-prefect

Medorum Sardanafalum occisum regnum eius invasit et in
of-the-Medes Sardanapalus killed the-kingdom his invaded and to
Medos deduxit.
the-Medes brought-down
Arbaces Medorum rex ann. xxviii. sub quo regnat adhuc
Arbaces of-the-Medes king years twenty-eight under whom reigns still
Azarias qui et Ozias Iudae in partae. in Israhel autem post
Azariah who also Uzziah of-Judah in the-part in Israel moreover after
Roboam paucis diebus fuerat Zacharias rursusque Sellum,
Reboboam for-a-few days had-been Zechariah and-again Shallum
quibus successerat Maneae.
whom had-succeeded Menahem
Sosarmus ann. xxx. in Iudae parte regnabat Ioatham,
Sosarmus years thirty in of-Judah the-part reigned Jotham
Israhelitis Faceae, quando et quinto decimo eius anno
over-the-Israelites Pekah when also in-the-fifth tenth his year
prima Olympiades coepta est nominari. tunc etenim post
the-first Olympiad begun was to-be-named then for after
innumeraviles, ut ita dicam, Laurenti loci et Latio reges
innumerable so to speak of-the-Laurentine place and in-Latium kings
Silvios Albanosque, qui trecentos per annos in parte
Silvii and-Albans who through-three-hundred through years in a-part
Italiae regnaverunt quamvis pauperrime, Amulius rex Numitoris
of-Italy reigned although most-poorly Amulius king of-Numitor
fratris sui filiam Ream nomine, que et Ilia vocabatur,
brother his the-daughter Rhea by-name who also Ilia was-called
Vestalem virginem fecerat. quae gravida inventa dum scelus
a-Vestal virgin had-made who pregnant found while crime
suum nititur excusare, a Marte se conpressam mentita est.
her she-strives to-excuse by Mars herself violated lied has
ex qua genitis duobus geminis rex exponi praecepit.
from whom born two twins the-king to-be-exposed ordered

quos vagientes meretrix quaedam Lupa nomine cum audisset,
whom wailing a-harlot certain Lupa by-name when she-had-heard
statim tollens ad Faustulum pastorem adduxit. quos Acca
at-once taking-up to Faustulus the-shepherd brought whom Acca
uxor eius nutriens inter alios pastores conversari aedocuit.
wife his nursing among other shepherds to-associate taught
Madidus ann. xl. quo Medis regnante Iudeis regnabat
Madyas years forty who over-the-Medes reigning over-the-Jews reigned
Achas, Israhelitis alius Faceae. annoque Madidi nono,
Ahaz over-the-Israelites another Pekah and-in-the-year of-Madyas ninth
septima Olympiade Romulus eiusque germanus, quos inter
in-the-seventh Olympiad Romulus and-his brother whom among
pastores diximus enutritos, collecta pastorum multitudine
shepherds we-have-said reared collected of-shepherds a-multitude
Romane urbis aedificia inchoaverunt suoque de nomine
of-the-Roman city the-buildings began and-his from name
iunior, qui germanum peremerat, urbem vocari Romam
the-younger who his-brother had-slain the-city to-be-called Rome
praecepit. cuius actus seriemque successorum eius saltu
ordered whose deeds and-the-series of-successors his by-a-leap
quodam modo praetergrediens externa regna, ut coepi,
in-a-certain way passing-over the-foreign kingdoms as I-began
percurram et cum se locus obtulerit, ad eum
I-shall-run-through and when itself the-place shall-have-offered to that
ordinem redeam. tantum qui legis, adverte ab origine
order I-shall-return only you-who read note from the-origin
mundi et huius usque magnae urbis exortu ann. fuisse
of-the-world and of-this up-to great city to-the-rise years to-have-been
iiiidcl.
four-thousand-six-hundred-fifty

Cardices ann. xiii. sub quo Ezechias, filius Achas, succedens
Cardiceas years thirteen under whom Hezekiah son of-Ahaz succeeding
regnat Iudaeis. nam Israhelitarum gentes supra dicti Madidi
reigns over-the-Jews for of-the-Israelites the-tribes above said of-Madyas
iam quinto decimo anno a Salmanassar Chaldeorum rege
already in-the-fifth tenth year by Shalmaneser of-the-Chaldeans king
Medorum sunt in montibus transductae captivae, postquam
of-the-Medes were into the-mountains led-across captive after
regnassent in Samaria ann. ccl.
they-had-reigned in Samaria years two-hundred-fifty
Deiocis ann. liiii. huius tempore primo Hebraeorum Iuda
Deioces years fifty-four of-him in-the-time first of-the-Hebrews of-Judah
Manasses ductus captivus et ferreis vinculis inligatus fertur
Manasseh led captive and with-iron chains bound is-reported
paenitentiam egisse. cuius et canticum paenitentiae legitur.
penance to-have-done of-whom also the-canticle of-penance is-read
postea vero reversus in regno successorem reliquid
afterward indeed having-returned to the-kingdom as-successor he-left
filium suum Ammon.
son his Amon
Fraortes ann. xxiii. sub quo Iosias rex Iudeorum, qui
Phraortes years twenty-three under whom Josiah king of-the-Jews who
lucos succidit et gentium idola de suo regno abiecit
the-groves cut-down and of-the-nations the-idols from his kingdom cast-out
deumque caeli integre coluit.
and-God of-heaven wholly worshiped
Cyaxares ann. xxxii. sub quo Iudaeis regnat Ioachas,
Cyaxares years thirty-two under whom over-the-Jews reigns Jehoahaz
cui successit Eliachim, qui et Ioachim, alterque Ioachim
whom succeeded Eliakim who also Jehoiakim and-the-other Jehoiachin

primo adhuc Cyaxare vivente successit, in quo et finis
in-the-first still Cyaxares living succeeded in whom also the-end
regni evenit.
of-the-kingdom came
Astiages ann. xxxviii. huius anno octavo Iudaei de
Astyages years thirty-eight of-him in-the-year eighth the-Jews from
Hierusolyma captivantur a Nabochodonosor rege Babyloniorum.
Jerusalem are-taken-captive by Nebuchadnezzar king of-the-Babylonians
sic regnum Medorum, quod per ann. cclviii
thus the-kingdom of-the-Medes which through years two-hundred-fifty-eight
regnavit, distructum est et in Persas translatum, quia
reigned destroyed was and to the-Persians transferred because
Cyrus rex Persarum et Darius Medorum, filius supra scripti
Cyrus king of-the-Persians and Darius of-the-Medes son of-above written
Astiages, parentela coniuncti nepus avunculusque fuerunt:
Astyages by-kinship joined grandson and-uncle were
inruentesque super Baltasar abnepotem Nabochodonosor
and-rushing upon Belshazzar the-great-grandson of-Nebuchadnezzar
regem Babyloniae, id est Caldeorum, regnum eius pervadunt.
king of-Babylon that is of-the-Chaldeans the-kingdom his they-invade
mortuoque Dario Cyrus et suum, id est Persarum et affinis
and-having-died Darius Cyrus both his that is of-the-Persians and of-kinsman
sui Darii, hoc est Medorum cum illud quod captivaverat
his of-Darius that is of-the-Medes with that which he-had-captured
tertio regno potitus ammodum Persarum gentem elevavit.
the-third kingdom having-gained greatly of-the-Persians the-nation raised
quae gens a Cyro praedicto et usque ad Darium, filium
which nation from Cyrus aforesaid and all-the-way to Darius son
Arsami, regnavit per ann. pl. m. ccxxx, et sic ad
of-Arsames reigned through years more less two-hundred-thirty and thus to
Grecos devenit post reges decem Persarum de gente.
the-Greeks it-came after kings ten of-the-Persians from the-nation

§§ 58–84

58–84 · THE PERSIANS, ALEXANDER, AND THE PTOLEMIES

Cyrus frees the Jews and the temple is rebuilt under Darius. The Persian kings are listed until Alexander kills the last Darius. The Ptolemies follow, with the Septuagint, the Maccabees, and the troubles of Judea, until Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra at Actium and the kingdom passes to Rome.

Cyrus Persa ann. xxxii. hic fere quinquaginta milia
Cyrus the-Persian years thirty-two he about fifty thousand
Iudaeorum laxata captivitate regredi fecit in Iudaea: qui
of-the-Jews released the-captivity to-return made into Judea who
constructo altari templi fundamenta iecerunt. cumque a
built the-altar of-the-temple the-foundations laid and-when by
vicinis gentibus impediretur, opus usque ad Darium
neighboring nations it-was-hindered the-work all-the-way to Darius
remansit inperfectum.
remained unfinished
Cambises ann. viii. et sub isto opus inpeditum a
Cambyses years eight and under this-one the-work hindered by
vicinis consistet nec aedificatur.
the-neighbors stands-still nor is-built
Magi duo fratres regnant mensibus viii.
Magi two brothers reign for-months eight
Darius ann. xxxvi. cuius anno secundo reaedificatum est
Darius years thirty-six in-whose year second rebuilt was
templum a Zorobabel et Iesu filio Iosedech quingentesimo
the-temple by Zerubbabel and Jeshua son of-Jozadak in-the-five-hundredth
duodecimo anno post primam sub Salomone aedificationem,
twelfth year after the-first under Solomon building
ab Adam vero plus minus iiiidccccxxx.
from Adam indeed more less four-thousand-nine-hundred-thirty

Xerses deinde, filius Darii, ann. xx. regnavit Persis,
Xerxes next son of-Darius years twenty reigned over-the-Persians
Medis atque Chaldeis.
the-Medes and the-Chaldeans
Artabanus menses vii.
Artabanus months seven
Artaxerses, qui Macrochir dicebatur, ann. xl.
Artaxerxes who Longhand was-called years forty
Xerses menses duo.
Xerxes months two
Sogdianus menses vii.
Sogdianus months seven
Darius cognomento Notus ann. xviiii.
Darius by-surname Nothus years nineteen
Artaxerses qui et Mnemon, Darii et Paresatidis filius,
Artaxerxes who also Mnemon of-Darius and of-Parysatis son
ann. xl. ipse est ab Hebreis qui dicitur Asverus, sub quo
years forty he is by the-Hebrews who is-called Ahasuerus under whom
liber Hester confectus est.
the-book of-Esther composed was
Artaxerses qui et Ochus ann. xxvi. hic etenim Sidonem
Artaxerxes who also Ochus years twenty-six he for Sidon
subvertit Aegyptumque suo subegit imperio Syriamque
overthrew and-Egypt to-his subdued rule and-Syria
cunctam invasit.
whole invaded
Arses, filius Ochi, ann. iiii. sub quo Iaddus maximus et
Arses son of-Ochus years four under whom Jaddua the-greatest and
insignis pontifex Iudaeorum.
illustrious high-priest of-the-Jews

Darius, filius Asarmi, ann. vi. hunc Alexander Magnus
Darius son of-Arsames years six him Alexander the-Great
Macedo occidit regnumque eius in suo redegit dominio,
the-Macedonian killed and-the-kingdom his into his brought dominion
qui Alexandriam in suo nomine condidit; ubi regnatum
who Alexandria in his name founded where reigned
est a regibus Grecorum per ann. ccxcvi sic.
it-was by kings of-the-Greeks through years two-hundred-ninety-six thus
Alexander Magnus post morte Darii ann. v.
Alexander the-Great after the-death of-Darius years five
Ptholomeus, Lagi filius, ann. xl. hic iterum gentem
Ptolemy of-Lagus son years forty he again the-nation
Hebraeorum captivam ducit in Aegypto.
of-the-Hebrews captive leads into Egypt
Ptholomeus Filadelfus ann. xxviii. hic captivitatem
Ptolemy Philadelphus years twenty-eight he the-captivity
Iudaeorum relaxatam muneribusque Eleazaro pontifice
of-the-Jews released and-with-gifts Eleazar the-high-priest
Iudaeorum placato divinas scripturas per septuaginta
of-the-Jews appeased the-divine scriptures through seventy
interpretes ex Hebrea lingua vertit in Greca.
interpreters from the-Hebrew tongue turned into Greek
Ptholomeus Euergetis ann. xxvi. huius temporibus Hiesus
Ptolemy Euergetes years twenty-six in-his times Jesus
filius Syrach sapientiae librum scripsit.
son of-Sirach of-wisdom the-book wrote
Ptholomeus Filopater ann. xvii. sub hoc item victi
Ptolemy Philopator years seventeen under him likewise conquered
Iudaei et sexaginta milia eorum caesa ab Anthioco rege
the-Jews and sixty thousand of-them slain by Antiochus king
Syriae, quando et pontifex magnus Onias.
of-Syria when also the-high-priest great Onias

Ptholomeus Epifanis ann. xxiiii. hic directo Scopa principe
Ptolemy Epiphanes years twenty-four he sent Scopas the-chief
militiae capit Iudaeam; rursusque Anthioco Scopa superante
of-the-army takes Judea and-again Antiochus Scopas overcoming
Iudaeam sibi sociat in amicitia Antiochus.
Judea to-himself joins in friendship Antiochus
Ptholomeus Filomitor ann. xxxv. sub hoc rege Aristobolus
Ptolemy Philometor years thirty-five under this king Aristobulus
Iudeus peripaticus filosophus scripsit commentarios in libros
a-Jew Peripatetic philosopher wrote commentaries on the-books
Moysi et regi obtulit Ptholomeo. Antiochus autem agens
of-Moses and to-the-king presented Ptolemy Antiochus moreover acting
contra legem Iudaeorum multos interemit. contra quem
against the-law of-the-Jews many slew against whom
Iudas, qui et Macchabeus, arma commovit.
Judas who also Maccabeus arms stirred
Ptholomeus Euergetis ann. xxviiii. hoc regnante Ionathas
Ptolemy Euergetes years twenty-nine this-one reigning Jonathan
dux Iudaeorum praeclarus, qui cum Romanis Spartiatisque
leader of-the-Jews renowned who with the-Romans and-Spartans
foedus iniit.
a-treaty entered
Ptholomeus Fiscon, qui et Soter, ann. xvii. sub hoc
Ptolemy Physcon who also Soter years seventeen under him
Aristobolus Ionathae filius rex pariter et pontifex constituitur
Aristobulus of-Jonathan son king together and high-priest is-appointed
Iudaeorum.
of-the-Jews

Ptholomeus, qui et Alexander, ann. x. quo regnante multa
Ptolemy who also Alexander years ten who reigning many-things
Iudaeorum populus tam ab Alexandrinis quam etiam ab
of-the-Jews the-people as-much from the-Alexandrians as also from
Anthiocensibus tolerabat.
the-Antiochenes endured
Ptholomeus, qui a matre fuerat eiectus, ann. viii. Iudaeis
Ptolemy who by his-mother had-been cast-out years eight over-the-Jews
tunc regnat Ianneus, qui et Alexander.
then reigns Jannaeus who also Alexander
Ptholomeus Dionisus ann. xxx. sub cuius regno Alexandra,
Ptolemy Dionysus years thirty under whose reign Alexandra
que et Salina, uxor Alexandri regis Hebraeorum, Hierosolimis
who also Salina wife of-Alexander king of-the-Hebrews at-Jerusalem
regnat. ex cuius aetate Iudaeos rerum confusio et variae
reigns from whose age the-Jews of-affairs confusion and various
clades oppresserunt.
disasters oppressed
Cleopatra ann. xxii. qua regnante Iudaei in amicitias
Cleopatra years twenty-two who reigning the-Jews into the-friendships
Romanorum se sociantes eorum iam legibus vivent, quia
of-the-Romans themselves joining by-their now laws live because
Pompeius regnum ab Aristobolo sublato Hircanum fratrem
Pompey the-kingdom from Aristobulus taken-away Hyrcanus brother
eius praefecerat. hanc si quidem Cleopatram Romanus ductor
his had-set-over her if indeed Cleopatra the-Roman general
suscipiens Antonius et suo socians lateri contra cives proprios
receiving Antony and to-his joining side against citizens his-own
dimicat. quem Augustus Octavianus in certamine superans
fights whom Augustus Octavian in the-contest overcoming
Actiatico in litore, egit, ut utrique iugales se ipsos
at-Actium on the-shore drove that both spouses them themselves

peremerent, regnumque eorum in Romanorum imperio devenit,
should-destroy and-the-kingdom of-them into of-the-Romans the-empire came
ubi et usque actenus, et usque in finem mundi secundum
where both up-to hitherto and up-to to the-end of-the-world according-to
Danielis prophetia regni debetur successio. et quod
of-Daniel the-prophecy of-the-kingdom is-owed the-succession and that
abhinc Augustalis exoritur potestas, animo recondendum est.
from-here Augustan arises the-power in-the-mind to-be-stored-away is

§§ 85–94

85–94 · AUGUSTUS, CHRIST, AND ROMULUS

Augustus reigns fifty-six years, and in his forty-second Christ is born. Jordanes then returns to Rome's beginnings: Romulus, son of Mars and Rhea Silvia, is suckled by a she-wolf, founds the city, where Remus is slain, perhaps at his order, opens an asylum, seizes the Sabine women, and vanishes in a storm to be worshiped as Quirinus.

Augustus imperator, qui et Octavianus dicebatur, a quo
Augustus emperor who also Octavian was-called from whom
posteri principes Augusti sunt vocati, tam cives patrios
the-later princes Augusti were called as-well the-citizens of-his-fatherland
rebellans quam etiam gentes exteras superans, singularem
rebelling as also nations foreign overcoming a-sole
sibi vindicat principatum, regnans per ann. lvi. huius
for-himself claims rule reigning through years fifty-six of-him
quadragesimo secundo anno imperii dominus noster Iesus
in-the-forty second year of-the-empire Lord our Jesus
Christus de sancta virgine natus, ut verus deus ita et
Christ of the-holy virgin born as true God so also
verus homo, in signis et virtutibus ammirandis enituit
true man in signs and powers wonderful shone-forth

anno ab origine mundi ud, ab urbe
in-the-year from the-origin of-the-world five-thousand-five-hundred from the-city
Romae autem conditione anno dcclv. et quia
of-Rome moreover the-founding in-the-year seven-hundred-fifty-five and because
Romanarum rerum ordine actosque inquirere statuisti et
of-Roman affairs the-order and-deeds to-inquire-into you-have-resolved and
nos breviter tuis percunctationibus respondere sumus polliciti,
we briefly to-your questionings to-answer have promised
necessarium est ergo nobis ea interim, que ad tempora
necessary it-is therefore for-us those-things meanwhile which to the-times
Augusti imperatoris dicuntur, omittere et rursus ad Romanae
of-Augustus of-the-emperor are-told to-omit and again to of-the-Roman
urbis primordia repedare originemque Romuli eius conditoris
city the-beginnings to-go-back and-the-origin of-Romulus its founder
exponere simulque successorum eius regum consolumque
to-set-out and-at-the-same-time of-the-successors his kings and-of-the-consuls
annos actosque ad liquidum demonstrare, qui sunt hi.
the-years and-deeds to clearness to-show who are these
Ab origine urbis Romae et usque Tarquinium regem
from the-origin of-the-city of-Rome and up-to Tarquin the-king
cognomento Superbum, qui et expulsus est, numerantur
by-surname the-Proud who also expelled was are-counted
anni ccxliii. nam primus ille et urbis et
years two-hundred-forty-three for the-first that-one both of-the-city and
imperii conditor Romulus fuit Marte, ut ipsorum verbis
of-the-empire founder Romulus was by-Mars that their-own in-words
loquamur, genitus et Rea Silvia. hoc de se sacerdos
we-may-speak begotten and Rhea Silvia this about herself the-priestess
gravida confessa est. nec mox fama dubitavit, cum Amullii
pregnant confessed has nor soon rumor doubted when of-Amulius
regis imperio abiectus in profluentem cum Remo fratre
the-king by-command cast into the-flowing-stream with Remus his-brother

non potuit extingui, si quidem et Tiberinus amnem
not he-could to-be-extinguished if indeed both the-Tiber the-river
repressit et relictis catulis lupa secuta vagitum uber
checked and left her-cubs a-she-wolf followed the-wailing the-udder
ammovit infantibus, matrisque gessit officium. sic repertos
applied to-the-infants and-of-a-mother performed the-office thus found
apud arborem Faustulus regii gregis pastor tulit in
at a-tree Faustulus of-the-royal flock the-shepherd carried into
casam atque educavit. Alba tum erat Latio caput, Iulii
his-hut and reared Alba then was of-Latium the-head of-Iulus
opus: nam Labinium patris Aenaeae contemserat. ab
the-work for Lavinium of-his-father Aeneas he-had-scorned from
his Amullius iam septima subole regnabat fratre pulso
these Amulius now in-the-seventh offspring reigned his-brother driven-out
Numitore, cuius ex filia Romulus. igitur statim prima
Numitor whose from daughter Romulus therefore at-once at-the-first
iuventutis facie patruum ab arce deturbat, avum
of-youth appearance his-uncle from the-citadel thrusts-down his-grandfather
reponit. ipse fluminis amator et montium, apud quos
restores himself of-the-river lover and of-the-mountains among which
erat educatus, moenia novae urbis agitabat. gemini
he-had-been reared the-walls of-a-new city he-pondered twins
erant: uter auspicaretur et regeret, adhibere placuit
they-were which should-take-the-auspices and should-rule to-call-in it-pleased
deos. Remus montem Aventinum, hic Palatinum occupant.
the-gods Remus the-mount Aventine this-one the-Palatine occupy
prius ille sex vultures, hic postea, sed duodecim vidit.
first that-one six vultures this-one afterward but twelve saw
sic victor augurio urbem excitat, plenus spei bellatricem
thus victor by-augury the-city he-raises full of-hope warlike
fore: id assuetae sanguine et preda aves pollicebantur.
to-be it those-accustomed to-blood and to-plunder birds promised

ad tutelam novae urbis sufficere vallum videbatur: cuius
for the-protection of-the-new city to-suffice a-rampart seemed whose
dum angustias Remus increpat, saltu transilivit. dubium
while the-narrowness Remus mocks by-a-leap he-jumped-over doubtful
an iussu fratris, occisus est. prima certe victima
whether by-order of-his-brother slain he-was the-first certainly victim
fuit munitionemque urbis novae sanguine suo consecravit.
he-was and-the-fortification of-the-city new with-blood his consecrated
imaginem urbis magis quam urbem fecerat: incolae
an-image of-a-city rather than a-city he-had-made inhabitants
deerant. erat in proximo locus: hunc asylum facit,
were-lacking there-was in the-neighborhood a-place this an-asylum he-makes
et statim mira vis hominum Latini Tuscique pastores,
and at-once wonderful a-mass of-men Latins and-Tuscan shepherds
etiam transmarini Fryges, qui sub Aena, Arcades, qui sub
even from-overseas Phrygians who under Aeneas Arcadians who under
Euandro duce influxerant. ita ex variis quasi elementis
Evander as-leader had-flowed-in thus from various as-it-were elements
congregavit corpus unum populumque Romanum ipse fecit.
he-gathered a-body one and-the-people Roman himself made
res erat unius aetatis, populus virorum. itaque matrimonia
the-thing was of-one generation a-people of-men and-so marriages
a finitimis petita quia non impetrabantur, manu capta
from the-neighbors sought because not they-were-obtained by-force taken
sunt. simulatis quippe ludis equestribus virgines quae
were feigned indeed with-games equestrian the-maidens who
ad expectaculum venerant praede fuere. haec statim causa
to the-spectacle had-come plunder were this at-once the-cause
bellorum. pulsi fugatique Veientes. Ceninensium captum
of-wars routed and-put-to-flight the-Veientes of-the-Caeninenses taken
ac direptum est oppidum. spolia insuper opima de rege
and plundered was the-town spoils moreover rich from the-king

Agrone Feretrio Iovi manibus rex reportavit. Savinis
Acron to-Feretrian Jupiter with-hands the-king carried-back to-the-Sabines
proditae portae per virginem Tarpeiam, non dolo, sed
betrayed the-gates through the-maiden Tarpeia not by-guile but
puella praetium rei quae gerebant in sinistris petierat,
the-girl as-the-price of-the-thing which they-carried in left-hands had-asked
dubium clypeos an armillas. illi ut et fidem solverent
doubtful shields or bracelets they that both their-word they-might-discharge
et ulciscerentur, clypeis obruere. ita ammissis intra
and might-avenge-themselves with-shields overwhelmed-her thus admitted within
moenia hostibus atrox in ipso foro pugna, adeo ut Romulus
the-walls the-enemies fierce in the-very forum the-fight so that Romulus
Iovem oraret foedam suorum fugam sisteret. hinc templum
Jupiter begged the-shameful of-his-men flight he-should-stop hence the-temple
et Stator Iuppiter. tandem funeribus intervenere raptae
and Stator Jupiter at-last the-slaughter intervened the-seized-women
laceris comis: sic pax facta cum Tatio foedusque percussum.
with-torn hair thus peace made with Tatius and-a-treaty struck
secutaque res misera dictu, ut relictis sedibus suis
and-having-followed a-thing pitiful to-tell that left the-seats their
novam in urbem hostes demigrarent et cum generis suis
to-the-new into city the-enemies migrated and with sons-in-law their
avitas opes pro dote sociarent. auctis brevi viribus hunc
ancestral wealth for dowry might-join increased in-short-time the-strength this
rex sapientissimus statum rei publicae inposuit: iuventus
the-king most-wise state of-the-state public imposed the-youth
divisa per tribus, in aequis et armis ut ad subita bella
divided by tribes on horses and in-arms that for sudden wars
excubaret, consilium rei publicae penes senes esset,
it-might-keep-watch the-counsel of-the-state public with the-old should-be
qui ex auctoritate patres, ob aetatem senatus vocabatur. his
who from authority fathers for age the-senate were-called these

ita ordinatis repente, cum contionem haberet ante urbem apud
so arranged suddenly when an-assembly he-held before the-city at
Caprae paludes, e conspectu ablatus est. discerptum aliqui
of-Capra the-marshes from sight taken-away he-was torn-to-pieces some
a senatu putant ob asperius ingenium: sed oborta tempestas
by the-senate think for too-harsh a-nature but arisen a-storm
solisque defectio consecrationis speciem praebuere. cui
and-of-the-sun the-eclipse of-a-consecration the-appearance offered to-which
mox Iulius Proculus fidem fecit, visum a se Romulum
soon Julius Proculus belief made seen by himself Romulus
adfirmans augustiore forma, quam fuisset: mandare praeterea,
affirming more-august in-form than he-had-been to-command moreover
ut se pro numine acceperent: Quirinum in caelo vocari:
that him for a-divinity they-should-accept Quirinus in heaven to-be-called
placitum diis, ut gentium Roma potiretur.
it-pleased the-gods that of-the-nations Rome should-be-master

§§ 95–107

95–107 · THE KINGS OF ROME

Numa gives Rome its rites and priesthoods, Tullus Hostilius its army; the Horatii defeat the Curiatii and Alba is destroyed. Ancus builds the bridge and Ostia, Tarquinius Priscus the insignia of rule, Servius Tullius the census. Tarquin the Proud seizes power by murder and rules by terror until the rape of Lucretia ends the monarchy.

Successit Romulo Numa Pompilius, quem Curibus
succeeded Romulus Numa Pompilius whom at-Cures
Savinis agentem ultro petiverunt ob inclitam
among-the-Sabines living of-their-own-accord they-sought for the-famous
viri religionem: ille sacra et caerimonias omnemque
of-the-man religion he the-rites and ceremonies and-all

cultum deorum inmortalium docuit: ille pontifices augures
the-worship of-the-gods immortal taught he the-pontiffs augurs
salios ceteraque sacerdotia: annumque in xii menses, festos
Salii and-the-other priesthoods and-the-year into twelve months the-festival
dies nefastosque discripsit. ille ancilia adque palladium,
days and-forbidden-ones divided he the-shields and the-Palladium
secreta quedam imperii pignora, Ianumque bifrontem,
secret certain of-the-empire pledges and-Janus two-faced
Fidem pacis ac belli, in primis focum Vestae virginibus
Faith of-peace and of-war among the-first the-hearth of-Vesta to-the-virgins
colendum dedit, ut ad simulacrum caelestium siderum
to-be-tended gave that to the-likeness of-the-heavenly stars
custus imperii flamma vigilaret. haec omnia quasi
as-guardian of-the-empire a-flame might-keep-watch these all as-if
monitu deae egregiae, quo magis barbari acciperent.
by-the-advice of-a-goddess excellent so-that the-more the-barbarians might-accept-them
eo denique ferocem populum redegit, ut quod vi et
by-this at-last the-fierce people he-brought that what by-force and
iniuria occuparat imperium, religione atque iustitia gubernaret.
injury it-had-seized the-empire by-religion and justice it-should-govern
Excepit Pompilium Numam Tullus Hostilius, cuius in
took-over-from Pompilius Numa Tullus Hostilius whose in
honorem virtutis regnum ultro datum. hic omnem militarem
honor of-his-valor the-kingdom freely given he all military
disciplinam artemque bellandi instituit. itaque mirum in
discipline and-the-art of-warfare established and-so wonderful in
modum exercita iuventute provocare ausus Albanos gravem
manner trained the-youth to-challenge he-dared the-Albans a-weighty
et diu principem populum. sed cum pari robore frequentibus
and long leading people but when equal strength in-frequent
proeliis utrique comminuerentur, misso in conpendium
battles both were-worn-down sent to a-short-cut

bello Horatiis Curiatiisque, trigeminis hinc atque inde
the-war to-the-Horatii and-Curiatii triplets on-this-side and on-that
fratribus, utriusque populi fata permissa sunt. anceps et
brothers of-both people the-fates entrusted were a-doubtful and
pulcra contentio exituque ipso mirabilis. tribus quippe
fine contest and-in-the-outcome itself wonderful three for
illinc vulneratis, hinc duobus occisis, qui supererat Horatius
there wounded here two slain he-who survived Horatius
addito ad virtutem dolo, ut distraheret hostem, simulat
added to valor guile that he-might-separate the-enemy feigns
fugam singulosque prout sequi poterant, adortus exsuperat.
flight and-one-by-one as to-follow they-could having-attacked overcomes
sic (rarum alias decus) unius manu parta victoria est.
thus rare elsewhere a-glory of-one by-the-hand won the-victory was
quam ille mox parricidio foedavit. nam flentem spolia circa
which he soon by-parricide defiled for weeping-over the-spoils around
se sponsi quidem, sed ostis, sororem viderat: hunc
him of-her-betrothed indeed but of-the-enemy his-sister he-had-seen this
tam inmaturum amorem virginis ultus est ferro,
so untimely love of-the-maiden avenged he-has with-the-sword
ut auderet leges, nefas: sed abstulit virtus parricidam et
so-that he-dared the-laws the-crime but rescued valor the-parricide and
facinus infra gloriam fuit. nec diu in fide Albanus: nam
the-deed beneath the-glory was nor long in faith the-Alban for
Fidenate bello misit in auxilium ex foedere: medii inter
in-the-Fidenate war sent for help by the-treaty halfway between
duos expectavere fortunam. sed rex callidus ubi inclinare
the-two they-awaited fortune but the-king cunning when to-incline
socios ad ostem videt, tollit animos, quasi mandasset.
the-allies to the-enemy he-sees raises their-spirits as-if he-had-ordered-it
spes inde Romanis, metus hostibus. sic fraus proditorum
hope thence to-the-Romans fear to-the-enemies thus the-fraud of-the-traitors

irrita fuit. itaque hoste victo ruptorem foederis Mettum
vain was and-so the-enemy conquered the-breaker of-the-treaty Mettus
Furetium religatum inter duos curros pernicibus equis distrait
Fufetius bound between two chariots by-swift horses tears-apart
Albamque ipsam quamvis parentem, emulam tamen diruit,
and-Alba itself although their-parent rival yet he-demolished
cum primus omnes opes urbis ipsumque populum
when first all the-wealth of-the-city and-very the-people
Romam transtulisset: prorsus ut consanguinea civitas non
to-Rome he-had-transferred altogether so-that a-kindred city not
perisse, sed in suum corpus redisse rursus videretur.
to-have-perished but into its body to-have-returned again it-might-seem
Ancus deinde Marcius nepus Pompilii ex filia, pravo
Ancus then Marcius grandson of-Pompilius from his-daughter of-crooked
ingenio. igitur et muro moenia amplexus est et
wit therefore both with-a-wall the-ramparts encompassed has and
influentem urbi Tyberinum ponte commisit Ostiamque in
flowing-by the-city the-Tiber with-a-bridge joined and-Ostia in
ipso maris fluminisque confinio coloniam posuit, iam tunc
very of-the-sea and-of-the-river the-boundary a-colony he-placed already then
videlicet praesagiens animo futurum, ut totius mundi opes
evidently foreseeing in-mind it-would-be that of-the-whole world the-wealth
et comeatus illo velut maritimo urbis ospitio receperentur.
and supplies in-that as maritime of-the-city guest-house would-be-received
Tarquinius postea Priscus quamvis transmarinae originis
Tarquin afterward Priscus although of-overseas origin
regnum ultro petens accepit ob industriam atque
the-kingdom of-his-own-accord seeking received for diligence and
elegantiam, quippe qui oriundus Corintho Grecum ingenium
refinement indeed who sprung from-Corinth Greek wit
Italicis artibus miscuisset. hic et senatus maiestatem
with-Italian arts had-mixed he both of-the-senate the-majesty

numero ampliavit et centuriis tribus auxit, quatenus
in-number enlarged and with-centuries the-tribes increased insofar-as
Actius Nevius numerum augeri prohibebat, vir summus
Attus Navius the-number to-be-increased forbade a-man supreme
augurio. quem rex in experimentum rogavit, fierine
in-augury whom the-king in test asked whether-to-be-done
posset, quod ipse mente coeperat. ille rem expertus
it-could what he-himself in-mind had-conceived he the-thing having-tried
augurio, posse respondit. 'adquin hoc', inquid, 'agitaram
by-augury to-be-possible answered and-yet this he-says I-had-pondered
cutem illam secari novacula posse'. et augur, 'potes',
the-whetstone that to-be-cut by-a-razor to-be-able and the-augur you-can
inquid: et secuit. inde Romanis sacer auguratus. neque
he-says and cut-it thence to-the-Romans sacred the-augurate nor
pace Tarquinius quam bello promptior: duodecim namque
in-peace Tarquin than in-war readier twelve for
Tusciae populos frequentibus armis subegit. inde fasces
of-Tuscia peoples in-frequent arms he-subdued thence the-fasces
trabeae curules anuli phalere paludamenta praetextae,
the-robes the-curule-chairs the-rings the-trappings the-cloaks the-bordered-togas
inde quod aureo curru, quattuor equis triumphatur, togae
thence that in-a-golden chariot with-four horses one-triumphs the-togas
pictae tunicaeque palmate, omnia denique decora et
embroidered and-tunics palm-worked all in-short ornaments and
insignia, quibus imperii dignitas aeminet, sumpta sunt.
insignia by-which of-the-empire the-dignity stands-out taken were
Servius Tullius deinceps gubernacula urbis invadit, nec
Servius Tullius next the-helm of-the-city seizes nor
obscuritas inhibuit quamvis matre serva creatum. nam
obscurity hindered-him although from-a-mother slave born for
eximiam indolem uxor Tarquinii Tanaquil liberaliter
his-outstanding nature the-wife of-Tarquin Tanaquil liberally

educaverat et clarum fore visa circa caput flamma promiserat.
had-reared and famous to-be seen around his-head a-flame had-promised
ergo inter Tarquinii mortem annitente regina substitutus
therefore amid of-Tarquin the-death striving-for-it the-queen substituted
in locum regis quasi in tempus regnum dolo partum sic
in the-place of-the-king as-if for a-time the-kingdom by-guile won so
egit industriae, ut iure adeptus videretur. ab hoc populus
he-acted with-diligence that by-right having-gained it-might-seem by him the-people
Romanus relatus in censum, digestus in classes, decuriis
Roman entered in the-census arranged in classes into-decuries
atque collegiis distributus, summaque regis sollertia ita est
and colleges distributed and-with-highest of-the-king skill so was
ordinata res publica, ut omnia patrimonii dignitatis aetatis
ordered the-state public that all of-property of-rank of-age
artium officiorumque discrimina in tabulas referrentur ac
of-arts and-of-offices the-distinctions in tables were-entered and
sic maxima civitas minimae domus diligentia conteneretur.
thus the-greatest state of-the-smallest house by-the-diligence was-contained
Postremus fuit omnium regum Tarquinius, cui cognomen
the-last was of-all the-kings Tarquin to-whom the-surname
Superbo ex moribus datum. hic regnum avitum, quod a
Proud from his-ways given he the-kingdom ancestral which by
Servio tenebatur, rapere maluit quam expectare, missisque
Servius was-held to-seize preferred than to-wait-for and-sent
in eum percussoribus scelere partam potestatem non
against him assassins by-crime gained the-power not
melius egit quam adquisiverat. nec abhorrebat moribus
better he-exercised than he-had-acquired-it nor was-different in-character
uxor Tullia, que, ut virum regem salutaret, supra
his-wife Tullia who that her-husband king she-might-salute over
cruentum patrem vecta carpento consternatos equos exegit.
her-bloody father riding in-a-carriage the-terrified horses drove

sed ipse in senatum caedibus, in plebem verberibus,
but he against the-senate with-murders against the-commons with-blows
in omnes superbia, que crudelitate gravior est bonis,
against all with-pride which than-cruelty heavier is to-the-good
grassatus cum sevitiam domi fatigasset, tandem in ostes
having-raged when his-savagery at-home he-had-wearied at-last against the-enemies
conversus est. sic valida Latio oppida capta sunt, Ardea,
turned was thus strong in-Latium towns taken were Ardea
Ocricolum, Gavii, Suessa Pometia. tum coque cruentus in
Ocriculum Gabii Suessa Pometia then also bloody against
suos. neque enim filium verberare dubitavit, ut simulantis
his nor for his-son to-beat he-hesitated that of-one-feigning
transfugam apud hostes hinc fides esset. quo a Gaviis
a-deserter among the-enemy thence credit there-might-be who by the-Gabines
ut voluerat recepto et per nuntios consulenti quid fieri
as he-had-wished received and through messengers consulting what to-be-done
vellet, eminentia forte papaverum capita virgula excutiens,
he-wished the-prominent by-chance of-the-poppies heads with-a-rod knocking-off
cum per hoc interficiendos esse principes vellet intellegi,
when through this to-be-killed to-be the-chiefs he-wished to-be-understood
qua superbia sic respondit, ut senserant tamen. de
by-which pride thus he-answered as they-had-perceived yet from
manubiis captarum urbium templum erexit. quod cum
the-spoils of-the-captured cities a-temple he-raised which when
inauguraretur, cedentibus ceteris diis, mira res dicitur
it-was-being-inaugurated giving-way the-other gods a-wonderful thing is-said
extitisse: resistere Iuventas et Terminus. placuit vatibus
to-have-occurred to-resist Youth and Terminus it-pleased the-seers
contumacia numinum, si quidem firma omnia et aeterna
the-obstinacy of-the-divinities if indeed steadfast all-things and eternal
pollicebantur. sed illud horrentius, quod molientibus edem
they-promised but that more-dreadful that to-those-building the-temple

in fundamentis humanum caput repertum est. nec dubitavere
in the-foundations a-human head found was nor doubted
cuncti monstrum pulcherrimum imperii sedem caputque
all a-portent most-beautiful of-the-empire the-seat and-head
terrarum promittere. tamdiu superbiam regis populus
of-the-lands to-promise so-long the-pride of-the-king the-people
Romanus perpessus est, donec aberat libido: hanc ex liberis
Roman endured has until was-absent lust this from the-children
eius inportunitatem tolerare non potuit. quorum cum alter
his insolence to-bear not it-could of-whom when one
ornatissimae feminae Lucretiae stuprum intulisset, matrona
on-the-most-adorned woman Lucretia rape had-inflicted the-matron
dedecus ferro expiavit, imperium regibus abrogatum.
the-disgrace with-the-sword expiated the-command from-the-kings abrogated

§§ 108–123

108–123 · THE FIRST CONSULS

Jordanes praises each king's fitness for his time and explains the consulship as yearly, shared power. Brutus executes his own sons for plotting the kings' return. Porsenna besieges Rome, but Mucius Scaevola and Cloelia so impress him that he makes peace, and Brutus and Arruns kill each other.

Haec est prima aetas populi Romani et quasi infantia,
this is the-first age of-the-people Roman and as-it-were infancy
quam habuit sub regibus septem, per annos, ut diximus,
which it-had under kings seven through years as we-have-said
ccxliii, quadam fatorum industria tam variis ingenio,
two-hundred-forty-three by-a-certain of-the-fates industry so various in-character
ut rei publicae ratio et utilitas postulabat. nam quid
as of-the-state public the-reason and advantage required for what

Romolo ardentius? tali opus fuit, ut invaderet regnum.
than-Romulus more-ardent such need there-was that he-should-seize the-kingdom
quid Numa religiosius? ita res poposcit, ut ferox
what than-Numa more-religious so the-situation demanded that the-fierce
populus deorum metu mitigaretur. quid ille militiae artifex
people of-the-gods by-fear might-be-softened what that of-warfare craftsman
Tullus? bellatoribus viris quam necessarius, ut acueret
Tullus for-warlike men how necessary that he-might-sharpen
ratione virtutem. quid aedificator Ancus? ut urbem colonia
by-reason valor what the-builder Ancus that the-city by-a-colony
extenderet, ponte iungeret, muro tueretur. iam vero
he-might-extend by-a-bridge join by-a-wall protect now indeed
ornamenta Tarquinii et insignia, quantam principi populo
the-ornaments of-Tarquin and insignia how-much to-the-leading people
addiderunt ex ipso abitu dignitatem? actus a Servio census
they-added from very dress dignity enacted by Servius the-census
quid effecit, nisi ut ipsa se nosset Romana res publica?
what did-it-effect except that itself itself should-know Roman the-state public
postremo Superbi illius inportuna dominatio nonnihil, immo
lastly of-the-Proud that unruly domination somewhat nay
vel plurimum profuit. sic enim effectum est, ut agitatus
even very-much profited thus for effected it-was that harassed
iniuriis populus cupiditate libertatis incenderetur. mutataque
by-injuries the-people with-desire of-liberty should-be-inflamed and-changed
regali dominatione ad consolum infulas se conferret;
the-royal domination to of-the-consuls the-fillets itself should-betake
qui bini in annis singulis rem publicam gubernantes
who two-by-two in years single the-state public governing
sequenti anno ab aliis venientibus succedebantur, scientesque
in-the-following year by others coming were-succeeded and-knowing
se annis tantum singulis praeesse in populo taliter
themselves for-years only single to-be-over-them among the-people so

erga alios agebant, qualiter eos erga se acturos postea
toward others they-acted as them toward themselves going-to-act afterward
cupiebant. qui ordo usque ad Augustum Caesarem obtenuit
they-desired which order all-the-way to Augustus Caesar held
privilegium, per viris dccccxvi in ann. cccclviii.
privilege through men nine-hundred-sixteen in years four-hundred-fifty-eight
novem si quidem annos sine consulibus, sed tantum sub
nine if indeed years without consuls but only under
tribunos plebis fuit, quattuor sine iudicibus. nam post
tribunes of-the-commons it-was four without judges for after
exactos reges annum unum quinis diebus singuli senatorum
expelled the-kings a-year one for-five days each of-the-senators
rem publicam obtenuerunt et tunc duobus creatis consulibus
the-state public held and then two created consuls
Bruto et Collatino ordinem in posterum usque ad Pansam
Brutus and Collatinus the-order for the-future all-the-way to Pansa
et Sergium servaverunt per ann. praenotatos. et quia
and Sergius they-kept through years noted-above and because
omnium consulum nomina actosque conscribere et mihi
of-all the-consuls the-names and-deeds to-write-down both to-me
tedium et tibi, qui legis, fastidio fore praecavi, aliqua
a-weariness and to-you who read for-disgust to-be I-have-taken-care some-things
exinde praelibans multa supersedi, quod pene a nonnullis
thence tasting-first many-things I-have-passed-over because almost by some
iam usurpatum esse breviatumque opus cognovi.
already usurped to-be and-abridged the-work I-have-learned
Igitur primi consolum Brutus et Collatinus, quibus ultionem
therefore the-first of-the-consuls Brutus and Collatinus to-whom the-vengeance
sui moriens matrona mandaverat, populus Romanus ad
of-herself dying the-matron had-entrusted the-people Roman to
vindicandum libertatis ac pudicitiae decus quodam quasi
avenging of-liberty and of-chastity the-honor by-a-certain as-it-were

instinctu deorum concitatus regem repente destituit, bona
impulse of-the-gods roused the-king suddenly deserted the-goods
diripit, agrum Marti suo consecrat, imperium in eosdem
plunders the-land to-Mars its consecrates the-command to the-same
libertatis suae vindices transfert, mutato tamen, ut diximus,
of-liberty its avengers transfers changed yet as we-have-said
et iure et nomine. quippe ex perpetuo annuum placuit, ex
both in-right and in-name for from perpetual annual it-pleased from
singulari duplex, ne potestas solitudine vel mora corrumperetur,
single double lest the-power by-solitude or by-delay should-be-corrupted
consulesque appellavit pro regibus, ut consulere civibus
and-consuls it-called instead-of kings that to-consult for-the-citizens
suis debere meminissent tantumque libertatis novae gaudium
their to-be-obliged they-might-remember and-so-much of-liberty new joy
intercesserat, ut vix mutati status fidem caperent
had-intervened that scarcely of-the-changed condition belief they-could-take
alterumque ex consulibus Lucretiae maritum tantum ob nomen
and-the-other of the-consuls of-Lucretia the-husband only for his-name
et genus regium fascibus abrogatis urbem dimitterent.
and race royal the-fasces abrogated from-the-city they-dismissed
itaque substitutus Oratius Publicola summo studio annisus
and-so substituted Horatius Publicola with-highest zeal strove
est ad augendam liberi populi maiestatem. nam et fasces
has to increasing of-the-free people the-majesty for both the-fasces
ei pro contione summisit et ius provocationis adversus
to-it before the-assembly he-lowered and the-right of-appeal against
ipsos dedit et ne species arcis offenderet, eminentes
themselves he-gave and lest the-appearance of-a-citadel should-offend lofty
aedes suas in plana submisit. Brutus vero favori civium
house his to the-level he-lowered Brutus but for-the-favor of-the-citizens
etiam domus suae clade et parricidio velificatus est. quippe
even of-house his by-the-ruin and by-parricide sailed has for

cum studere de revocandis in urbem regibus liberos suos
when to-be-zealous about recalling into the-city the-kings children his
conperisset, protraxit in forum, et contione media
he-had-learned he-dragged-them into the-forum and of-the-assembly in-the-midst
virgis cecidit securique percussit, ut plane publicus parens
with-rods beat and-with-the-axe struck that plainly a-public parent
in locum liberorum adobtasse sibi populum videretur.
into the-place of-children to-have-adopted for-himself the-people he-might-seem
Liber iam hinc populus Romanus prima adversus exteros
free now from-here the-people Roman first against foreigners
arma pro libertate corripuit, mox pro finibus, deinde pro
arms for liberty seized soon for its-borders then for
sociis, tum gloria et imperio, lacessentibus adsidue usque
its-allies then for-glory and empire harassing continually up-to
quaque finitimis: quippe cum patrii soli gliba nulla sit,
everywhere the-neighbors indeed since of-the-native soil the-clod none might-be
sed statim hostile pomerium mediusque inter Latium adque
but at-once hostile the-boundary and-in-the-middle between Latium and
Etruscos quasi in quodam bivio conlocatus omnibus portis
the-Etruscans as-it-were at a-certain crossroads placed with-all gates
in hostem incurreret, donec quasi contagio quodam per
against the-enemy it-ran until as-if by-contagion a-certain through
singulos itum est et proximis quibusque correptis totam
each-one gone it-was and the-nearest each seized whole
Italiam sub se redigerunt. nam Porsenna rex Etruscorum
Italy under itself they-brought for Porsenna king of-the-Etruscans
ingentibus copiis aderat et Tarquinios manu reducebat. hunc
with-huge forces was-present and the-Tarquins by-hand was-bringing-back him
tamen quamvis et armis et fame urgueret occupatoque
yet although both with-arms and with-famine he-pressed and-occupied
Ianiculo in ipsis urbis faucibus incubaret, sustenuit, reppulit,
the-Janiculum at very of-the-city the-jaws he-lay it-withstood repulsed

novissimae etiam tanta admiratione perculit, ut superior
at-last even with-such admiration struck that the-superior
ultro cum pene victis amicitiae foedera feriret. nam
of-his-own-accord with the-almost conquered of-friendship treaties he-struck for
Mucius Scevola Romanorum fortissimus regem per insidias
Mucius Scaevola of-the-Romans the-bravest the-king through ambush
in castris ipsius adgreditur. sed ubi frustrato circa purpuratum
in the-camp his-own attacks but when failed around the-purple-clad
eius ictu tenetur, ardentibus mox focis intulit manum
his the-blow he-is-held burning then to-the-hearth he-thrust his-hand
terroremque geminat dolo. 'en, ut scias', inquid, 'quem
and-the-terror doubles by-a-trick behold that you-may-know he-says what
virum effugeris: idem trecenti iuravimus'. cum inter
man you-have-escaped the-same three-hundred we-have-sworn when between
immane dictu hic interritus, ille trepidaret, tamquam
monstrous to-say this-one undaunted that-one trembled as-if
manus regis arderet. sic quidem viri. set ne sexus alter
the-hand of-the-king were-burning so indeed the-men but lest the-sex other
a laude cessaret, ecce et virginum virtus. una ex obsidibus
from praise should-cease behold also of-the-maidens the-valor one from the-hostages
regi data elapsa custodiae Cloelia per patrium flumen
to-the-king given having-escaped from-custody Cloelia through her-native river
equitabat. rex quidem tot tantisque virtutum territus
rode the-king indeed by-so-many and-so-great of-virtues terrified
monstris valere liberosque esse iussit. Tarquinii tamen diu
prodigies to-fare-well and-free to-be he-bade the-Tarquins yet long
dimicaverunt, donec Arruntem filium regis manu sua
fought until Arruns son of-the-king with-hand his
Brutus occidit superque ipsum mutuo vulnere expiravit,
Brutus killed and-over him by-a-mutual wound expired
plane quasi adulterum ad inferos usque sequeretur.
plainly as-if the-adulterer to the-underworld all-the-way he-should-follow

§§ 124–137

124–137 · LATINS, VOLSCI, VEII, AND THE GAULS

Rome defeats the Latins, Aequi, and Volsci; Titus Quintius leaves his plow, wins a war in fifteen days, and returns to it. The Senonian Gauls rout Rome at the Allia and burn the city. The old men await death in their chairs, Manlius holds the Capitol, and the Gauls sell their departure for gold; after a lacuna, a flood of Gallic blood is to wipe out the fires' traces.

Nec secus Latini a Mamilio Tuscolano duce apud Regilli
nor otherwise the-Latins with Mamilius of-Tusculum as-leader at of-Regillus
lacum expugnantur, vincuntur atque subiciuntur. Satricum
the-lake are-stormed are-conquered and are-subjected Satricum
adque Corniculum, Soraque et Alsium eorum urbes captas
and Corniculum and-Sora and Alsium their cities captured
provinciaque effecta. de Verulis et Bobillis pudet, sed
and-a-province made about Verulae and Bovillae it-shames but
triumphavere Romani. Tibur nunc suburbanum et aestivae
triumphed the-Romans Tibur now suburban and of-summer
Praenestae deliciae nuncupatis in Capitolio votis petebantur:
Praeneste the-delight pronounced in the-Capitol by-vows were-attacked
idem tunc Fesulae quod Charrae nuper: idem nemus
the-same then Faesulae as Carrhae recently the-same the-grove
Aricinus, quod Hercylius saltus: Fregellae, quod Caesoriacum:
of-Aricia as the-Hercynian forest Fregellae as Gesoriacum
Tiberis quod Eufrates. Curiolos quoque, pro pudor, victos
the-Tiber as the-Euphrates Corioli also for shame conquered
adeo gloriae fuisse, ut captum oppidum Gneus Marcius
so-much to-glory to-have-been that the-captured town Gnaeus Marcius
Coriolanus quasi Numantiam aut Affricam nomini indueret.
Coriolanus as-if Numantia or Africa to-his-name he-put-on

extant et parta de Antio spolia, que Menius in suggesto
exist also won from Antium spoils which Maenius on the-platform
fori capta hostium classe suffixit: si tamen illa classis,
of-the-forum taken of-the-enemy from-the-fleet fastened if yet that a-fleet
nam sex fuere rostratae. sed hic numerus illis initiis
for six were beaked but this number in-those beginnings
navale bellum fuit. pervicacissimi tamen Latinorum Equi
a-naval war was most-persistent yet of-the-Latins the-Aequi
et Vulsci fuere et cotidiani, ut sic dixerim, hostes. et hos
and Volsci were and daily as so I-may-say enemies and these
praecipue Titus Quintius domuit, ille dictator ab aratro,
especially Titus Quintius tamed that dictator from the-plow
qui obsessa et pene iam capta Manlii consulis castra
who besieged and almost already taken of-Manlius the-consul the-camp
egregia victoria recuperavit. medium erat tempus forte
by-an-outstanding victory recovered the-middle it-was time by-chance
sementis, cum patricium virum innixum aratro suo lictor
of-the-sowing when the-patrician man leaning on-plow his the-lictor
in ipso opere depraehendit. inde in aciem profectus,
in very work came-upon thence into the-battle-line having-set-out
ne quid a rustici operis imitatione cessaret, pecodum
lest at-all from of-rustic work the-imitation he-should-cease of-cattle
more sub iugum misit expeditioneque finita rediit ad
in-the-manner under the-yoke he-sent and-the-expedition finished returned to
bobes rursus triumphalis agricola. fidem numinum, qua
his-oxen again triumphal farmer O-faith of-the-divinities with-what
velocitate! intra quindecem dies captum peractumque bellum,
speed within fifteen days taken and-finished the-war
prorsus ut festinasse dictator ad relictum opus videretur.
plainly that to-have-hastened the-dictator to his-abandoned work he-might-seem

Pari tenore Veientes, Falesci et Fidenates tunc magno labore
equal course the-Veientes the-Falisci and the-Fidenates then with-great labor
devicti sunt. qui modo et si fuerint, non videntur. que
conquered were who now even if they-have-been not they-are-seen what
reliquiae? quod vestigium? laborat enim annalium fides,
remains what trace labors for of-the-annals the-credibility
ut Veios, Faliscos, Fidenates fuisse credamus.
that Veii the-Falisci the-Fidenates to-have-existed we-may-believe
Galli autem Senones gens natura ferox, moribus incondita,
the-Gauls moreover the-Senones a-people by-nature fierce in-manners uncouth
ad hoc ipsa corporum mole, perinde armis ingentibus,
to this by-very of-bodies bulk likewise with-arms huge
adeo omni genere terribilis fuit, ut plane nata ad hominum
so in-every kind terrible was that plainly born for of-men
interitum, urbium stragem videretur. hi quondam ab
the-destruction of-cities the-slaughter it-might-seem these once from
ultimis terrarum oris et cingente omnia oceano ingenti
the-farthest of-the-earth shores and encircling all-things the-ocean in-a-huge
agmine profecti cum iam media vastassent, positis
column having-set-out when already the-middle they-had-laid-waste placed
inter Alpes et Padum sedibus, ne his quidem contenti,
between the-Alps and the-Po their-seats not with-these even content
per Italiam baccabantur. tunc Clusium Tusciae urbem
through Italy they-rioted then Clusium of-Tuscia a-city
obsidebant, ubi pro sociis ac foederatis Romanus intervenit
they-were-besieging where for its-allies and confederates the-Roman intervened
missis ex more legatis. sed quod ius apud barbaros? ferocius
sent by custom envoys but what right among barbarians more-fiercely
agunt et inde certamen. conversi Galli a Clusio Romam.
they-act and thence the-contest turned the-Gauls from Clusium to-Rome
quibus ad Alliam flumen cum exercitu Fabius consul occurrit.
whom at the-Allia river with an-army Fabius the-consul met

non temere foedior cladis: itaque hunc diem fastis
not easily a-fouler disaster and-so this day in-the-calendar
Roma damnavit. fuso exercitu Galli iam moenibus urbis
Rome condemned routed the-army the-Gauls now to-the-walls of-the-city
adpropinquabant, ubi pene nulla erant praesidia. tum igitur
drew-near where almost no were garrisons then therefore
sic ut numquam alias apparuit illa vera Romana virtus. iam
so as never elsewhere appeared that true Roman valor now
primum maiores natu amplissimis usi honoribus in
first the-greater by-birth with-the-most-ample having-held honors into
forum coeunt, ibi devovente pontifice diis se manibus
the-forum assemble there devoting-them the-pontiff to-the-gods themselves of-the-dead
consecrant statimque in suas quisque aedes regressi sic
they-consecrate and-at-once into their each houses having-returned so
ut in trabeis erant et amplissimo cultu in curulibus
as in robes-of-state they-were and in-the-most-ample attire in curule
sellis sese reposuerunt, ut cum venisset hostis, in sua
chairs themselves placed that when should-have-come the-enemy in his
quisque dignitate moreretur. pontifices autem et flamines
each dignity he-might-die the-pontiffs moreover and flamens
quidquid religiosissimi in templis erat, partim in doleis refossa
whatever most-sacred in the-temples was partly in jars dug-up
terra reconderunt, partim inposita plaustris secum Veios
the-earth they-hid partly placed on-wagons with-themselves to-Veii
auferunt: virgines simul ex sacerdotio Vestae nudo pede
they-carry-off the-virgins together from the-priesthood of-Vesta with-bare foot
fugientia sacra comitantur. tamen excepisse fugientes
the-fleeing sacred-things accompany yet to-have-taken-up the-fugitives
unus e plebe fertur Atinius, qui depositis uxore et
one from the-commons is-said Atinius who set-down his-wife and
liberis virgines in plaustrum recepit. adeo tunc quoque in
children the-virgins into the-wagon received so then also in

ultimis religio publica privatis affectibus antecellebat. iuventus
extremities religion public over-private feelings excelled the-youth
vero, quam satis constat vix mille hominum fuisse,
but which enough it-is-agreed scarcely a-thousand of-men to-have-been
duce Manlio arcem Capitolini montis insedit, obtestata
as-leader with-Manlius the-citadel of-the-Capitoline mount occupied having-adjured
ipsum quasi praesentem Iovem, ut quem ad modum ipsi ad
very as-if present Jupiter that as to manner they to
defendendum templum occurrissent, ita ille virtutem eorum
defending the-temple had-run so he the-valor their
numine suo tueretur. aderant interim Galli apertamquae
with-power his should-protect were-present meanwhile the-Gauls and-the-open
urbem adeunt. ibi sedentibus in curulibus suis praetextatos
city they-approach there sitting in curule their bordered-robed
senes velut deos geniosque venerati, mox eosdem, postquam
old-men as gods and-geniuses having-venerated soon the-same after
esse homines liquebat, alioquin nihil respondere dignantes pari
to-be men it-was-clear otherwise nothing to-answer deigning equal
vecordia mactant facesque tectis iniciunt et totam urbem
madness they-slaughter and-torches on-the-roofs they-throw and the-whole city
igni ferro manibus exaequant. sex mensibus (barbaros
with-fire sword hands they-level for-six months the-barbarians
quis crederet?) circa montem unum pependerunt, nec diebus
who would-believe-it around mountain one hung nor by-days
modo, sed noctibus coque omnia experti, cum tamen Manlius
only but by-nights also all-things having-tried when yet Manlius
nocte subeuntis, clangore anseris excitatus a summa rupe
at-night climbing-up by-the-clangor of-a-goose roused from the-top cliff
deiecit, et ut spem hostibus demeret, quamquam
threw-them-down and that the-hope from-the-enemies he-might-take although
in summa fame tamen ad speciem fiduciae, panes ab
in extreme famine yet for the-appearance of-confidence loaves from

arce iaculatus est: et stato quodam die per
the-citadel hurled has and on-an-appointed certain day through
medias hostium custodias Fabium pontificem ab arce
the-midst of-the-enemy guards Fabius the-pontiff from the-citadel
dimisit, qui solemne sacrum in Quirinali monte conficeret:
he-sent who the-solemn rite on the-Quirinal mount should-perform
atque ille per media hostium tela incolomis religionis
and he through the-midst of-the-enemy weapons unharmed of-religion
auxilio rediit propitiosque deos renuntiavit. novissime cum
by-the-help returned and-propitious the-gods announced at-last when
iam obsidio sua barbaros fatigasset, mille pondo auro
already siege its the-barbarians had-wearied a-thousand pounds of-gold
recessum suum venditantes, *** ut omnia incendiorum
departure their selling (lacuna) that all of-the-fires
vestigia Gallici sanguinis inundatione deleret.
the-traces of-Gallic blood with-the-flood he-might-wipe-out

§§ 138–149

138–149 · THE SAMNITE WARS

Manlius Torquatus and Valerius Corvinus win their names fighting Gauls, and the Latins and Sabines are subdued. Jordanes praises Campania, for which Rome fights the Samnites for fifty years. The Samnites shame Rome at the Caudine Forks, Papirius avenges it, and Fabius crosses the Ciminian forest while Decius devotes himself to win the battle.

Igitur pastorum quondam casa urbs enituit: post assertam
therefore of-shepherds once the-hut the-city shone-forth after asserted
a Manlio faciem restitutamque a Camillo acrius etiam
by Manlius its-appearance and-restored by Camillus more-sharply even
vehementiusque in finitimos resurrexit. nec tamen contenti
and-more-vehemently against the-neighbors it-rose-again nor yet content

Romani suis eos moenibus expulisse, cum per Italiam
the-Romans from-their them walls to-have-expelled when through Italy
naufragia sua latius traherent, sic persecuti sunt, ductante
the-wreckage their more-widely they-dragged so pursued they-have leading
Camillo, ut odiae nulla Senonum vestigia supersint. semel apud
Camillus that today no of-the-Senones traces survive once at
Anienem trucidati, cum singulari certamine Manlius aureum
the-Anio slaughtered when in-single combat Manlius a-golden
torquem barbaro inter spolia detraxit, unde et Torquatus
torque from-a-barbarian among the-spoils pulled whence also Torquatus
est dictus. iterum Pomptino agro, cum in simili pugna Valerius
is called again in-the-Pomptine field when in a-like fight Valerius
insidente galeae sacra alite adiutus rettulit spolia dictusque
sitting-on his-helmet by-a-sacred bird helped brought-back spoils and-called
est ipse Corvinus. nec non tamen post aliquod annos omnes
was himself Corvinus nor not yet after some years all
reliquias eorum in Etruria ad lacum Vadi montis Dolabella
the-remnants of-them in Etruria at the-lake of-Vadimo mount Dolabella
delevit, ne quis extaret ex ea gente quae incensam a se
destroyed lest any should-exist of that nation which burned by itself
Romanam urbem gloriaretur. conversoque a Gallis Manlio
the-Roman city might-boast and-turned from the-Gauls Manlius
Torquato Latini experti sunt et devicti. indeque Savini, qui
Torquatus the-Latins experienced have and conquered and-thence the-Sabines who
eorum belli socii ductante Tatio extitissent, a Curio Dentato
of-them of-the-war allies leading Tatius had-stood by Curius Dentatus
consule subiecti, eorumque loca a Varanio fonte in Adriano
the-consul subjected and-their places from the-Varanian spring to the-Adriatic
tenus mari igni ferroque vastata, tantumque Romano
as-far-as sea with-fire and-sword laid-waste and-so-much to-the-Roman
populo addit opes, ut nec ipse posset aestimare qui vicerat.
people he-adds wealth that not himself could to-estimate who had-conquered

Praecibus deinde Campaniae motus non pro se sed pro sociis
by-the-prayers then of-Campania moved not for itself but for its-allies
Samnitas invadit. omnium namque non modo Italiae tantum,
the-Samnites it-attacks of-all for not only of-Italy only
sed pene toto orbe terrarum pulcherrima Campaniae
but almost of-the-whole world of-the-lands the-most-beautiful of-Campania
plaga est. nihil mollius caelo: denique bis floribus
the-region is nothing softer than-the-sky finally twice with-flowers
vernat. nihil uberius solo: ideo Liberi Cererisque
it-blooms nothing more-fertile than-the-soil therefore of-Liber and-of-Ceres
certamen dicitur. nihil hospitalius mari: hic illi nobiles
a-contest it-is-called nothing more-hospitable than-the-sea here those noble
portus Caieta, Misenus, tepentes fontibus Baiae, Lucrinus
harbors Caieta Misenus warm with-springs Baiae Lucrinus
et Avernus quaedam maris hostia. hic amici vitibus
and Avernus certain of-the-sea havens here friendly to-vines
montes Caurus Falernus Massicus et pulcherrimus cunctorum
mountains Gaurus Falernus Massicus and most-beautiful of-all
Vesubius Aetnaei ignis imitator. urbes ad mare Formiae
Vesuvius of-Etnaean fire the-imitator cities by the-sea Formiae
Cumae Puteoli Herculaneum Pompei et ipsa caput urbium
Cumae Puteoli Herculaneum Pompeii and itself the-head of-cities
Capua, quondam inter tres maximas Romam Carthaginemque
Capua once among three greatest Rome and-Carthage
numerata. pro hac urbe, his regionibus populus Romanus
counted for this city for-these regions the-people Roman
Samnitas invadit, gentem, si opulentiam quaeras, aureis et
the-Samnites attacks a-nation if wealth you-ask with-golden and
argenteis armis et discolori veste usque ad ambitum
silver arms and with-varicolored dress all-the-way to ostentation
armatam: si fallaciam, saltibus ferae et montium fraude
armed if deceit in-the-forests wild and of-the-mountains by-trickery

grassantem: si rabiem ac furorem, sacris legibus humanisque
ranging if madness and fury with-sacred laws and-human
hostiis in exitium urbis agitatam: si pertinaciam, sexies
victims to the-destruction of-the-city driven if obstinacy six-times
rupto foedere cladibusque ipsis animosiorem. hos tamen
broken the-treaty and-by-disasters very more-spirited these yet
quinquaginta annis per Fabios ac Papirios patres eorumque
in-fifty years through the-Fabii and Papirii fathers and-their
liberos ita subegit et domuit, ita ruinas ipsas urbium diruit,
children so it-subdued and tamed so the-ruins very of-the-cities razed
ut hodiae Samnium in ipso Samnio requiratur nec facile
that today Samnium in very Samnium may-be-sought nor easily
appareat materia quattuor et viginti triumphorum. maximae
may-appear the-material of-four and twenty triumphs most
tamen nota et inlustris apud Caudinas forculas ex hac
yet known and illustrious at the-Caudine Forks from this
gente clades Veturio Postumioque consulibus accepta est.
nation a-disaster with-Veturius and-Postumius consuls received was
clusum per insidias intra eum saltum exercitum, unde non
shut-in through ambush within that pass the-army whence not
posset evadere, stupens tanta occassione dux ostium
it-could to-escape stunned by-so-great opportunity the-leader of-the-enemies
Pontius Herineum patrem consuluit: et ille, mitteret omnes
Pontius Herennius his-father consulted and he should-let-go all
vel occideret sapienter, ut senior, suaserat: hic armis exutos
or should-kill wisely as an-older-man had-urged he of-arms stripped
mittere sub iugum maluit, ut nec amici forent beneficio
to-send under the-yoke preferred that neither friends they-should-be by-the-kindness
et post flagitium hostes magis. itaque et consules statim
and after the-disgrace enemies more and-so both the-consuls at-once
magnifice voluntaria deditione turpitudinem foederis dirimunt
magnificently by-voluntary surrender the-shame of-the-treaty break-off

et ultionem flagitans miles Papirio duce — orribile dictu
and vengeance demanding the-soldier with-Papirius as-leader horrible to-tell
— strictis ensibus per ipsam viam ante pugnam fuit et in
with-drawn swords along the-very road before the-battle was and in
congressu arsisse omnium oculos hostis auctor fuit. nec
the-encounter to-have-blazed of-all the-eyes the-enemy author was nor
prius finis caedibus datus, quam iugum sibi promissum
sooner an-end to-the-slaughters given than the-yoke to-themselves promised
Romani et duci Samnitum et hostibus reposuerunt.
the-Romans both to-the-leader of-the-Samnites and to-the-enemies imposed-in-turn
Hactenus cum singulis gentibus, mox catervatim. sic tamen
thus-far with single nations soon in-hordes thus yet
coque par omnibus fuit. Etruscorum duodecem populi,
also equal to-all it-was of-the-Etruscans twelve peoples
Umbrii in id tempus intacti antiquissimus Italiae populus,
the-Umbrians to that time untouched the-most-ancient of-Italy people
Samnitium reliqui in excidium Romani nominis repente
of-the-Samnites the-remnants to the-destruction of-the-Roman name suddenly
coniurant. erat terror ingens tot simul tantorumque
conspire there-was terror huge so-many at-once and-so-great
populorum. late per Etruriam infesta quattuor agminum
peoples widely through Etruria hostile of-four columns
signa volitabant. Geminius interim saltus in medio, ante
the-standards flew the-Ciminian meanwhile forest in the-middle before
invius plane quasi Calydonius vel Herquinius, adeo terror
impassable plainly as-if the-Calydonian or the-Hercynian so-great terror
erat, ut senatus consuli denuntiaret, ne tantum periculi
there-was that the-senate to-the-consul gave-notice lest so-much of-danger
ingredi auderet. sed nihil horum terruit ducem, quin fratre
to-enter he-should-dare but nothing of-these frightened the-leader but-that his-brother
praemisso exploraret accessus. ille per noctem pastorali
sent-ahead he-should-explore the-approaches he through the-night in-shepherd

habitu speculatus omnia, refert tutum iter. sic Fabius
dress having-spied-out all reports safe the-way thus Fabius
Maximus periculosissimum bellum sine periculo explicuit.
Maximus a-most-dangerous war without danger unfolded
nam subito inconditos atque palantes adgressus est captisque
for suddenly the-disorderly and straggling attacked he-has and-taken
superioribus iugis in subiectos suo iure detonuit. ea namque
the-higher ridges on those-below by-his right he-thundered that for
species fuit illius belli, quasi in terrigenas e caelo ac nubibus
appearance was of-that war as-if on the-earthborn from heaven and clouds
tela iacerentur. nec incruenta tamen illa victoria. nam
weapons were-being-hurled nor bloodless yet that victory for
oppressus in sinu vallis alter consolum Decius more
overwhelmed in the-hollow of-the-valley the-other of-the-consuls Decius in-the-custom
patrio devotum diis manibus optulit caput, sollemnemque
ancestral devoted to-the-gods of-the-dead offered his-head and-the-solemn
familiae suae consecrationem in victoriae praetium redegit.
of-family his consecration into of-victory the-price brought

§§ 150–162

150–162 · PYRRHUS AND TARENTUM

Tarentum insults a Roman fleet and calls in Pyrrhus with his elephants. He wins at Heraclea, loses at Asculum when a soldier shows the beasts can be killed, and is routed when a wounded calf throws the elephants into confusion. His overtures of peace fail, Rome holds a splendid triumph, and the last Italians are subdued.

Necdum Etrusco bello exempto mox sequitur Tarentinum,
not-yet the-Etruscan war removed soon follows the-Tarentine
unum quidem in nomine, sed multiplex in victoriis. hoc
one indeed in name but manifold in victories this

enim Campanos Apulos atque Lucanos et caput belli
for the-Campanians Apulians and Lucanians and the-head of-the-war
Tarentinos, id est totam pene Italiam, et cum his omnibus
the-Tarentines that is whole almost Italy and with these all
Pyrrum clarissimum Epyrotarum Greciae regem una veluti
Pyrrhus the-most-famous of-the-Epirotes of-Greece king in-one as-if
ruina pariter involvit, ut eodem tempore et Italiam
ruin together involved so-that at-the-same time both Italy
consummaret et transmarinos triumphos auspicaretur. Tarentus
it-might-complete and overseas triumphs might-inaugurate Tarentum
Lacedemoniorum opus, Calabriae quondam et Apuliae
of-the-Lacedaemonians the-work of-Calabria once and of-Apulia
totiusque Lucaniae caput, cum magnitudine et muris portuque
and-of-all Lucania the-head as-well for-size and walls and-harbor
nobilis tum mirabili situ, quippe in ipsis Adriae maris
famous as for-its-wonderful site for at very of-the-Adriatic sea
faucibus posita in omnes terras Histriam Illyricum Epyron
the-jaws placed to all lands Histria Illyricum Epirus
Achaiam Africam Siciliam vela dimittit. imminet portui ad
Achaea Africa Sicily sails it-sends-out overhangs the-harbor for
prospectum maris positum theatrum, quod quidem causa
the-view of-the-sea placed a-theater which indeed the-cause
miserae cupiditatis fuit omnium calamitatum. ludos forte
of-wretched desire was of-all the-calamities games by-chance
celebrabat, cum adremigantes litore Romanam classem
it-was-celebrating when rowing-up to-the-shore the-Roman fleet
vident atque ostem rati aemicant sine discrimine et
they-see and the-enemy thinking-it rush-out without discrimination and
insultant. qui enim aut unde Romani? nec satis. aderat
insult-it who for or whence the-Romans nor enough was-at-hand
sine mora querillam ferens legatio: hanc quoque foede per
without delay a-complaint bearing an-embassy this also foully by

obscenam turpemque dictu contumeliam violant: et hinc
an-obscene and-shameful to-tell insult they-violate and hence
bellum. sed apparatus horribilis, cum tot simul populi
the-war but the-preparation horrible when so-many at-once peoples
pro Tarentinis consurgerent omnibusque vehementior Pyrrus,
for the-Tarentines rose and-than-all more-vehement Pyrrhus
qui semigrecam ex Lacedemoniis conditoribus civitatem
who the-half-Greek from Lacedaemonian founders city
vindicaturus cum totis viribus Epyri Thessaliae Macedoniae
about-to-defend with all the-forces of-Epirus of-Thessaly of-Macedonia
incognitisque in id tempus elefantis mari terra viris
and-unknown until that time with-elephants by-sea by-land with-men
equis armis, addito insuper ferarum terrore veniebat. apud
horses arms added moreover of-beasts the-terror came at
Eracleam Campaniae fluviumque Lirem Laevino cons. prima
Heraclea of-Campania and-the-river Liris with-Laevinus consul the-first
pugna, que tam atrox fuit, ut Forentanee turmae prefectus
battle which so fierce was that of-the-Frentanian squadron the-prefect
Obsidius invectus in regem turbaverit coegeritque proiectis
Obsidius charging against the-king disordered-him and-compelled-him thrown-away
insignibus proelio excedere. actum erat, nisi elefanti
his-insignia from-the-battle to-withdraw done it-was unless the-elephants
converso in spectaculo bello procucurrissent. quorum cum
turned into spectacle the-war had-run-forward by-whose as-well
magnitudine tum deformitate et novo odore simul ac
size as ugliness and new smell together and
stridore consternati equi cum incognitas sibi beluas
screeching terrified the-horses since unknown to-themselves beasts
amplius quam erant suspicarentur, fugam stragemque late
greater than they-were they-suspected flight and-slaughter widely
dederunt. in Apulia deinde apud Asculum melius dimicatum
gave in Apulia then at Asculum better fought

est Curio Fabricioque consulibus — iam quippe
it-was with-Curius and-Fabricius consuls already for
terror beluarum exoleverat et Gaius Numicius quartae
the-terror of-the-beasts had-faded and Gaius Numicius of-the-fourth
legionis astatus unius promoscide abscisa mori posse beluas
legion a-hastatus of-one the-trunk cut-off to-die to-be-able the-beasts
ostenderat. itaque in ipsos pila congesta sunt et in
had-shown and-so on themselves javelins heaped were and against
turres vibratae faces tota hostium agmina ardentibus
the-towers brandished torches whole of-the-enemy the-columns with-burning
ruinis operuerunt. nec alius cladi finis fuit quam nox
ruins covered nor other to-the-slaughter end was than night
dirimeret postremusque fugientium rex ipse a satellitibus
should-separate and-last of-the-fleeing the-king himself by his-guards
humero saucius in armis suis referretur. Lucaniae suprema
in-the-shoulder wounded on arms his was-carried-back of-Lucania the-final
pugna Sybarusinis quos vocant campis, ducibus hisdem
battle in-the-Arusinian which they-call plains with-generals the-same
quibus superius, sed tum tota victoria. exitum, quem
as above but then whole the-victory the-outcome which
datura virtus fuit, casus dedit. nam provectis in primam
about-to-give valor was chance gave for brought-forward into the-first
aciem rursus elefantis unum ex his pullum adacti in
line again the-elephants one of these a-calf driven into
caput teli gravis ictus avertit, qui cum per stragem
the-head of-a-weapon heavy blow turned-back who when through the-slaughter
suorum recurrens stridore quereretur, mater agnovit et
of-its running-back with-screeching it-complained its-mother recognized and
quasi vindicaret, exiliit, tum omnia circa quasi hostilia
as-if to-avenge leapt-out then all-things around as-if hostile
gravi mole permiscuit: ac sic eaedem ferae, que primam
with-heavy bulk threw-into-confusion and thus the-same beasts which the-first

victoriam abstulerunt, secundam parem fecerunt, tertiam sine
victory took-away the-second equal made the-third without
controversia tradiderunt. nec vero tantum armis et in
dispute handed-over nor indeed only with-arms and in
campo, sed consiliis et domi coque intra urbem cum rege
the-field but by-counsels and at-home and within the-city with king
Pyrro dimicatum est. quippe post primam victoriam intellecta
Pyrrhus fought it-was for after the-first victory understood
Romana virtute statim desperavit armis, seque ad dolos
the-Roman valor at-once he-despaired of-arms and-himself to tricks
contulit. nam interemptos cremavit captivosque indulgenter
betook for the-slain he-cremated and-the-captives indulgently
habuit et sine pretio restituit missisque legatis in urbem
held and without ransom restored and-having-sent envoys into the-city
omni modo annisus est, ut facto foedere in amicitiam
in-every way strove he-has that made a-treaty into friendship
reciperetur. sed et bello et pace et foris et domi
he-might-be-received but both in-war and in-peace and abroad and at-home
omnem in partem Romana virtus tum se adprobavit nec
every in respect Roman valor then itself approved nor
alia magis quam Tarentina victoria ostendit populi Romani
other more than the-Tarentine victory showed of-the-people Roman
fortitudinem, senatus sapientiam, ducum magnanimitatem.
the-courage of-the-senate the-wisdom of-the-generals the-magnanimity
nec alius pulchrior in urbem aut speciosior triumphus
nor other more-beautiful into the-city or more-splendid triumph
intravit. ante hunc diem nihil praeter pecora Vulscorum,
entered before this day nothing except cattle of-the-Volsci
greges Savinorum, carpenta Gallorum, fracta Samnitium
the-flocks of-the-Sabines the-carts of-the-Gauls the-broken of-the-Samnites
arma vidisset. tum autem, si captivos aspiceres, Molossi
arms it-had-seen then however if the-captives you-looked-at Molossians

Thessales Macedones Bruttius Apulus atque Lucanus: si
Thessalians Macedonians Bruttian Apulian and Lucanian if
pompam, aurum purpura signa tabulae Tarentinaeque diliciae.
the-procession gold purple standards paintings and-Tarentine delights
sed nihil libentius populus Romanus aspexit quam illas quas
but nothing more-gladly the-people Roman looked-on than those which
timuerat cum turribus suis beluas, quae non sine sensu
it-had-feared with towers their beasts which not without sense
captivitatis summissis cervicibus victores equos sequebantur.
of-captivity with-lowered necks victorious horses followed
Post Tarentinam cladem domiti Picentes et caput gentis
after the-Tarentine disaster were-tamed the-Picentes and the-head of-the-nation
Asculum a Sempronio duce, qui tremente inter proelium
Asculum by Sempronius as-leader who trembling during the-battle
campo, Tellurem deam promissa aede placavit.
the-field Earth the-goddess with-a-promised temple appeased
Salentini vero Picentibus additi caputque his regionibus
the-Sallentini but to-the-Picentes added and-the-head for-these regions
Brundisium inclyto portu Atilio duce, et in hoc
Brundisium with-its-famous harbor with-Atilius as-leader and in this
certamine victoriae praetium templum sibi pastoria Pales
contest of-victory the-price a-temple for-herself the-shepherdess Pales
ultro poposcit.
of-her-own-accord demanded
Postremi Italicorum in fidem venere Vulsini opulentissimi
last of-the-Italians into allegiance came the-Volsinii the-most-opulent
Etruscorum, implorantes opem adversus servos quondam
of-the-Etruscans imploring help against slaves once
suos, qui libertatem a dominis datam in ipsos erexerant
their who the-liberty by their-masters given against them had-raised

translataque in se re publica dominabantur, sed hi
and-transferred to themselves the-state public were-domineering but these
quoque duce Fabio Gurgite poenas dederunt.
also as-leader Fabius Gurges penalties gave

§§ 163–176

163–176 · THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

Rome crosses to Sicily, builds a fleet in sixty days, and Duilius wins the first naval triumph. Regulus invades Africa but is captured; sent home to negotiate, he urges against peace and goes back to his enemies, to prison and punishment. Storms wreck Roman fleets, but Lutatius Catulus wins at the Aegates and ends the war.

Domita subactaque Italia populus Romanus Appio Claudio
tamed and-subdued Italy the-people Roman with-Appius Claudius
consule primum fretum ingressus est fabulosis fame
consul first the-strait entered has with-fabulous of-rumor
monstris estuque violentum, sed adeo non est
monsters and-with-the-surge violent but so-far not it-was
exterritus, ut ipsam illam ruentis estus violentiam pro
frightened that very that of-the-rushing surge violence as
munere amplecteretur, quod velocitas navium mari iuvaretur,
a-gift it-embraced because the-speed of-the-ships by-the-sea was-helped
statimque ac sine mora Hyeronem Syracusanum tanta
and-at-once and without delay Hiero of-Syracuse with-such
celeritate devicit, ut ille ipse prius se victum, quam
speed it-conquered that he himself before himself conquered than
hostem videret, fateretur. Duellio Cornelioque consulibus
the-enemy he-saw confessed with-Duilius and-Cornelius consuls
etiam mari congredi ausus est. tum quidem ipsa velocitas
even by-sea to-engage it-dared has then indeed very the-speed

classis comparatae victoriae auspicium fuit. intra enim
of-the-fleet acquired of-victory the-omen was within for
sexagesimum diem quam caesa silva fuerat, centum sexaginta
the-sixtieth day after felled the-forest had-been a-hundred sixty
navium classis in anchoris stetit, ut non arte factae,
of-ships a-fleet at anchor stood so-that not by-art made
sed quodam munere deorum conversae in naves atque
but by-a-certain gift of-the-gods turned into ships and
mutatae arbores viderentur. proelii vero forma miravilis,
changed the-trees might-seem of-the-battle indeed the-form wonderful
cum illas caeleres volucresque hostium naves hae graves
when those swift and-winged of-the-enemy ships these heavy
tardaeque conpraehenderent. longe illis nauticae artes
and-slow seized far-away for-them the-nautical arts
detorquere remos et ludificari fuga rostra. iniectae enim
to-twist the-oars and to-mock by-flight the-beaks thrown-on for
ferreae manus machinaeque validae ante certamen multum
iron hands and-engines strong before the-contest much
ab oste derisae coactique hostes quasi in solido
by the-enemy derided and-forced the-enemies as-if on solid-ground
decernere. victor ergo apud Liparas mersa aut fugata
to-decide victor therefore at Liparae sunk or put-to-flight
hostium classe primum illum maritimum egit triumphum.
of-the-enemy the-fleet first that maritime he-led triumph
cuius quod gaudium fuit, cum Duellius imperator non
of-which what the-joy was when Duilius the-commander not
contentus unius diei triumpho per vitam omnem, ubi
content of-one day with-a-triumph through life whole when
a cena rediret, praelucere funalia et praecinere sibi
from dinner he-returned to-shine-before torches and to-play-before himself
tibias iussit, quasi cotidie triumpharet. prae tanta victoria
flutes ordered as-if daily he-triumphed beside so-great a-victory

leve huius proelii damnum fuit alter consulum interceptus
light of-this battle the-loss was the-other of-the-consuls intercepted
Asina Cornelius, qui simulato colloquio evocatus atque ita
Asina Cornelius who by-a-feigned parley called-out and so
oppressus fuit perfidiae Punicae documentum. Calatino
overwhelmed was of-perfidy Punic a-proof with-Calatinus
dictatore fere omnia praesidia Poenorum Agrigento
dictator almost all the-garrisons of-the-Carthaginians from-Agrigentum
Dripanis Panormo Eryce Lilybeoque detraxit. trepidatum
Drepana Panormus Eryx and-Lilybaeum he-drew-away it-was-trembled
est semel circa Cameriniensium saltum: sed eximia
was once around of-the-Camarinians the-pass but by-the-outstanding
virtute Calpurni Flammae tribuni militum evasimus. qui
valor of-Calpurnius Flamma tribune of-the-soldiers we-escaped who
lecta trecentorum manu insessum ab hostibus tumulum
with-a-chosen of-three-hundred band held by the-enemies a-mound
occupavit adeoque moratus ostes, dum exercitus omnis
occupied and-so-much having-delayed the-enemies while the-army whole
evaderet: ac sic pulcherrimo exitu Thermopylarum et
might-escape and thus by-a-most-beautiful outcome of-Thermopylae and
Leonidae famam adaequavit, hoc inlustrior noster, quod
of-Leonidas the-fame he-equaled by-this more-illustrious our-man that
expeditioni tantae superfuit et nihil inscripserit sanguine.
the-expedition so-great he-survived and nothing inscribed with-blood
Lucio Cornelio Scipione cum iam Sicilia suburbana esset
with-Lucius Cornelius Scipio when already Sicily suburban was
populi Romani provincia serpente latius bello Sardiniam
of-the-people Roman province creeping more-widely the-war Sardinia
adnexamque Corsicam transiit Olbiam. ibi Ateriae urbis
and-attached Corsica it-crossed Olbia there of-Aleria city
excidio incolas terruit adeoque omni terra et
by-the-destruction the-inhabitants terrified and-so-far from-every land and

mari Poenos purgavit, ut iam victoriae nihil nisi
sea the-Carthaginians cleared that now for-victory nothing except
Africa ipsa restaret. Marco Atilio Regulo duce iam in
Africa itself remained with-Marcus Atilius Regulus as-leader now into
Africam navigabat bellum. nec defuerant qui in ipso
Africa sailed the-war nor had-been-lacking those-who at very
Punico maris nomine ac terrore deficerent: insuper augente
Punic of-the-sea the-name and terror lost-heart moreover increasing
Natio tribuno metum, in quem nisi paruisset securi
Nautius the-tribune the-fear against whom unless he-had-obeyed with-the-axe
destricta imperator metu mortis navigandi fecit audaciam.
drawn the-commander by-fear of-death of-sailing made the-daring
mox deinde ventis remisque prosperatum est tantusque
soon then by-winds and-oars favored it-was and-so-great
terror hostici adventus Poenis fuit, ut apertis
the-terror of-the-hostile arrival to-the-Carthaginians was that open
pene portis Chartago caperetur. prima prooemium belli
almost the-gates Carthage was-taken the-first prelude of-the-war
fuit civitas Clypea: prima enim a Punico litore quasi
was the-city Clupea first for from the-Punic shore as-it-were
arx et spectacula procurrit. et haec et trecenta amplius
a-citadel and lookout it-runs-out both this and three-hundred more
castella vastata sunt. nec cum hominibus, sed cum monstris
fortresses laid-waste were nor with men but with monsters
quoque dimicatum est, cum quasi in vindictam Africae
also fought it-was when as-if for vengeance of-Africa
nata mirae magnitudinis serpens posita apud Bracadam
born of-wonderful size a-serpent placed at the-Bagradas
castra vixaverit. sed omnium victor Regulus cum terrorem
the-camp harassed but of-all victor Regulus when the-terror
nominis sui latae circumtulisset, cumque magnam vim
of-name his widely he-had-carried-around and-when great a-mass

iuventutis ducesque ipsos aut cepisset aut haberet in
of-youth and-the-generals themselves either he-had-taken or was-holding in
vinculis classemque ingenti praeda onustam et triumpho
chains and-the-fleet with-huge booty laden and with-triumph
gravem in urbem praemisisset, iam ipsam belli caput
heavy into the-city he-had-sent-ahead now itself of-the-war the-head
Chartaginem urguebat obsidione ipsisque portis inherebat.
Carthage he-was-pressing with-siege and-very the-gates he-clung-to
hic paululum circumacta fortuna est, tantum ut plura essent
here a-little turned-around fortune was only that more might-be
Romanae virtutis insignia, cuius fere magnitudo calamitatibus
of-Roman valor the-proofs of-which almost the-greatness by-calamities
adprobatur. nam conversis ad externa auxilia hostibus cum
is-proved for turned to foreign aid the-enemies when
Xantyppum illis ducem Lacedemon misisset, a viro militiae
Xanthippus to-them as-leader Lacedaemon had-sent by a-man in-warfare
peritissimo Regulus victus est, foedaque clades Romanisque
most-skilled Regulus conquered was and-foul a-disaster and-to-the-Romans
usu incognita: nam vivus in manus hostium venit
by-experience unknown for alive into the-hands of-the-enemies came
fortissimus imperator. sed ille quidem par tantae calamitatis
the-bravest commander but he indeed equal to-so-great a-calamity
fuit, nam nec Punico carcere infractus est nec legatione
was for neither by-the-Punic prison broken was nor the-embassy
suscepta: quippe diversa quam hostis mandaverat censuit,
undertaken for different than the-enemy had-enjoined he-voted
ne pax fieret nec commutatio captivorum receperetur.
lest peace should-be-made nor an-exchange of-captives be-accepted
sed nec illo voluntario ad hostes suos redito nec
but neither by-that voluntary to the-enemies his return nor
ultimo sive carcere seu supplicio deformata maiestas. immo
by-the-last whether prison or punishment disfigured his-majesty nay

his omnibus ammirabilior quid aliud quam victor de
than-these all more-admirable what other than victor over
victoribus atque etiam, quia Chartago non cesserat, de
the-victors and also because Carthage not had-yielded over
fortuna triumphavit? populus autem Romanus multo acrior
fortune he-triumphed the-people moreover Roman much more-fierce
intentiorque pro ultione Reguli quam pro victoria fuit.
and-more-intent for the-vengeance of-Regulus than for victory was
Metello igitur consule conspirantibus artius Poenis
with-Metellus therefore consul conspiring more-closely the-Carthaginians
et reverso in Siciliam bello apud Panormum sic hostes
and returned into Sicily the-war at Panormus so the-enemies
cecidit Romanus exercitus, ne amplius eam insulam adgredi
cut-down the-Roman army that no-longer that island to-attack
cogitarent. argumentum ingens victoriae centum circiter
they-should-think the-proof huge of-victory of-a-hundred about
elefantorum captivitas. sic quoque magnas praedas egit,
elephants the-capture so also great booty it-drove
ut gregem illum non bello, sed venatione cepisset.
that the-herd that not by-war but by-hunting it-might-have-taken
Appius Claudius consul non ab hostibus sed a diis ipsis
Appius Claudius the-consul not by the-enemies but by the-gods themselves
superatus est, quorum auspicia contempserat, ibi statim
overcome was whose auspices he-had-despised there at-once
classe dimersa, ubi ille praecipitari pullos iusserat, quod
the-fleet sunk where he to-be-thrown-headlong the-chickens had-ordered because
pugnare ab his vetaretur. Marcus Fabius Buteo classem
to-fight by them he-was-forbidden Marcus Fabius Buteo the-fleet
iam in Africo mari apud Egimurum hostium in Italiam
already on the-African sea at Aegimurus of-the-enemies to Italy
ultro navigantem cecidit. quantusque tum triumphus
of-its-own-accord sailing cut-down and-how-great then a-triumph

tempestate intercidit, cum opulenta praeda classis adversis
by-the-storm perished when with-rich booty the-fleet by-adverse
acta ventis naufragio suo Africam et Syrtis, omnium imperia
driven winds with-wreck its Africa and the-Syrtes of-all the-empires
gentium insularum litora implevit. magna clades, sed non
the-nations of-the-islands the-shores filled great a-disaster but not
sine aliqua principis populi dignitate interceptam tempestate
without some of-the-leading people dignity intercepted by-storm
victoriam et triumphum perisse naufragio. et tamen cum
a-victory and a-triumph to-have-perished by-shipwreck and yet when
Punicae praedae omnibus promuntoriis insulisque fluitarent,
the-Punic spoils on-all headlands and-islands floated
populus Romanus et sic triumphavit. Lutatio Catulo
the-people Roman even so triumphed with-Lutatius Catulus
consule tandem bello finis inpositus apud insulas, quibus
consul at-last to-the-war an-end imposed at the-islands to-which
nomen Aecatae: nec maior alias in mari pugna: aderat
the-name Aegates nor greater elsewhere on the-sea battle was-present
quippe commeatibus exercito propugnaculis armis gravis
for with-supplies army bulwarks arms heavy
classis et in ea quasi tota Chartago, quod ipsum exitio
the-fleet and in it as-it-were whole Carthage which itself to-ruin
fuit. Romana classis prompta levis expedita et quodam
was the-Roman fleet ready light unencumbered and of-a-certain
genere castrensis ad similitudinem pugnae equestris sic remis
kind of-the-camp to the-likeness of-a-battle of-cavalry so with-oars
quasi avenis agebatur et in hos vel illos ictus mobilia
as-if with-reins it-was-driven and to these or those blows movable
rostra speciem viventium praeferebant. itaque momento
the-beaks the-appearance of-living-things displayed and-so in-a-moment
temporis laceratae hostium rates totum inter Siciliam
of-time torn of-the-enemy the-ships the-whole between Sicily

Sardiniamque pelagus naufragio suo operuerunt. tanta denique
and-Sardinia sea with-wreck their covered so-great finally
fuit illa victoria, ut de excidendis hostium moenibus non
was that victory that about destroying of-the-enemy the-walls not
quaereretur. supervacuum visum est in arcem murosque
it-was-asked superfluous it-seemed has against the-citadel and-walls
saevire, cum iam in mari esset deleta Chartago.
to-rage when already on the-sea had-been destroyed Carthage

§§ 177–187

177–187 · LIGURIANS, GAULS, ILLYRIANS, AND HANNIBAL

Rome subdues the Ligurians, the Insubrian Gauls, and Queen Teuta's Illyrians. Hannibal, sworn to vengeance as a boy, destroys Saguntum, and Fabius declares war by shaking out his toga. Hannibal crosses the Alps and wins at the Ticinus, the Trebia, and Lake Trasimene.

Peracto si quidem Punico et nec dum quantulum respirato
completed if indeed the-Punic and nor yet in-the-least breathed
sequitur Liguricum. nam Ligures hi imis Alpium iugis
follows the-Ligurian for the-Ligurians these to-the-lowest of-the-Alps ridges
adhaerentes inter Varum Magramque amnem implicitos dumis
clinging between the-Var and-the-Magra river entangled in-thickets
silvestribus victitabant, quos pene maius fuit invenire quam
woodland lived whom almost greater it-was to-find than
vincere. tuti si quidem locis et fuga durum atque velox
to-conquer safe if indeed by-places and by-flight a-hard and swift
genus ex occasione latrocinia magis quam bella faciebant.
race from occasion robberies rather than wars they-made
itaque cum diu multumque eluderent saltu viis Decilates
and-so when long and-much they-eluded the-forest the-ways the-Decietae

Oxuvii Buriates Ingauni, tandem Fulvius latebras eorum
Oxybii Euburiates Ingauni at-last Fulvius the-lairs their
igni sepsit, Bebius vero in plana deduxit, Postumius ita
with-fire hedged-in Baebius but into the-plains brought-down Postumius so
exarmavit, ut vix reliquerit ferrum, quo terra coleretur.
disarmed that scarcely he-left iron with-which the-earth might-be-tilled
Post quos mox Galli. Insubribus et his Alpium incolis
after whom soon the-Gauls for-the-Insubres and for-these of-the-Alps inhabitants
animi ferarum, corpora plus quam humana erant, sed
the-spirits of-beasts the-bodies more than human were but
experimento depraehensum est. quippe virtus eorum sicut
by-trial detected it-was for the-valor their as
primo impetu maior quam virorum est, ita sequens minor
in-the-first onset greater than of-men is so following less
quam feminarum. Alpina corpora humente caelo educata habent
than of-women Alpine bodies in-a-damp sky reared have
quiddam simile nivibus suis: cum mox caluere pugna,
something like to-snows their when soon they-have-grown-hot in-battle
statim in sudorem eunt et levi motu quasi sole laxantur.
at-once into sweat they-go and by-slight motion as-if by-the-sun are-loosened
hi saepe et alias et Brittomaro duce non prius posituros
these often both elsewhere and with-Britomarus as-leader not sooner to-lay-down
se baltea quam Capitolium ascendissent iuraverant. factum
themselves their-belts than the-Capitol they-had-ascended had-sworn done
autem est, et victos eos Emilius in Capitolio discinxit. et
moreover it-was and conquered them Aemilius in the-Capitol ungirded and
quod dux eorum de Romano militi praedam Marti suo
because the-leader their from Roman soldier the-booty to-Mars his
torquem aureum devotasset, intercepit Iuppiter votum et de
a-torque golden had-vowed intercepted Jupiter the-vow and from
eius ipsius Ariobistonis relicorumque Gallorum torquibus
of-him very of-Ariovistus and-of-the-remaining Gauls torques

aureum tropeum Iovi erexit Flamminius. rex quoque
a-golden trophy to-Jupiter raised Flaminius the-king also
eorum Viridomarus Romana arma Vulcano promisserat:
their Viridomarus the-Roman arms to-Vulcan had-promised
aliorsum vota ceciderunt. occiso enim eo Marcellus tertio
elsewhere the-vows fell slain for him Marcellus third
post patrem Romulum Feretrio Iovi opima suspendit.
after the-father Romulus to-Feretrian Jupiter the-spoils-of-honor hung-up
Illyres autem, id est Veneti, seu Liburnes sub extremis
the-Illyrians moreover that is the-Veneti or Liburni under the-farthest
Alpium radicibus agunt inter Arsiam Titulumque flumen
of-the-Alps roots dwell between the-Arsia and-the-Titius river
longissimae per totum Adriani maris litus effusi. hi
very-long through the-whole of-the-Adriatic sea shore spread-out these
regnante Teutana muliere populationibus non contenti licentiae
reigning Teuta a-woman with-ravages not content of-license
scelus addiderunt. legatos quippe Romanos, ob ea
the-crime added envoys for Roman for those-things
quae deliquerant iure agentes, ne gladio quidem, sed
which they-had-done-wrong by-law dealing not with-the-sword even but
ut victimas securi percutiunt, praefectos navium igni
as victims with-the-axe they-strike the-captains of-the-ships with-fire
conburunt idque quo indignius foret, mulier imperavit.
they-burn and-this that more-shameful it-might-be a-woman commanded
itaque Gneo Fulvio Gentimalo duce late domantur. strictae
and-so with-Gnaeus Fulvius Centumalus as-leader widely they-are-tamed drawn
secures in principum colla legatorum manibus litavere.
axes upon of-the-chiefs the-necks of-the-envoys to-the-shades made-atonement
Post primum autem Punicum bellum vix quadriennium
after the-first moreover Punic war scarcely four-years'
requies: ecce alterum bellum, minus quidem spatio —
rest behold a-second war less indeed in-duration

nec enim amplius xviii annos tenens — sed adeo cladium
nor for more eighteen years lasting but so of-disasters
atrocitate terribilis, ut si quis conferat damna utriusque
by-the-atrocity terrible that if anyone should-compare the-losses of-each
populi, similior victo sit populus ille qui vicit.
people more-like to-the-conquered would-be the-people that which conquered
urebat nobilem populum mare ablatum, raptae insulae,
there-burned the-noble people the-sea taken-away seized the-islands
dare tributa quae iubere consueverat. hinc ultionem puer
to-give tributes which to-order it-had-been-accustomed hence vengeance the-boy
Annibal ad aram patris iuraverat, nec morabatur. igitur
Hannibal at the-altar of-his-father had-sworn nor did-he-delay therefore
in causa belli Saguntus electa est, velut Spaniae civitas
as the-cause of-the-war Saguntum chosen was as of-Spain a-city
et opulenta fideique erga Romanos magnum quidem, sed
both opulent and-of-faith toward the-Romans a-great indeed but
triste monumentum. quam in libertatem communi foedere
sad monument which into liberty by-common treaty
exceptam Annibal, causas novorum motuum quaerens, et suis
excepted Hannibal causes of-new disturbances seeking both by-his
et suorum manibus evertit, ut Italiam sibi rupto foedere
and of-his-men by-the-hands overthrew that Italy to-himself broken the-treaty
aperiret. summa foederum Romanis religio est: itaque ad
he-might-open the-highest of-treaties to-the-Romans the-reverence is and-so at
auditum sociae civitatis obsidium, memores icti cum
the-hearing of-an-allied city the-siege mindful of-the-struck with
Poenis quoque foederis, non statim ad arma procurrunt,
the-Carthaginians also treaty not at-once to arms they-run
dum prius more legitimo quaeri malunt. interim iam
while first in-manner lawful to-be-sought-out they-prefer meanwhile already
novem mensibus fessi fame machinis ferro, versa denique
for-nine months wearied by-famine by-engines by-the-sword turned at-last

in rabiem fide, immanem in foro excitant rogum, tum
into madness their-loyalty a-huge in the-forum they-raise pyre then
desuper se suosque cum omnibus opibus suis ferro
from-above themselves and-their with all wealth their with-the-sword
et igni conrumpunt. huius tantae cladis autor Annibal
and with-fire they-destroy of-this so-great disaster the-author Hannibal
poscitur. tergiversantibus Poenis dux legationis: 'quae',
is-demanded equivocating the-Carthaginians the-leader of-the-embassy what
inquid, 'mora est'? Fabius: 'in hoc ego sinu bellum pacemque
he-says delay is Fabius in this I fold war and-peace
porto, utrum elegitis'? subclamantibus 'bellum'; 'bellum igitur',
carry which you-choose shouting-back war war then
inquid, 'accipite'. et excusso in media curia togae
he-says receive and shaken-out in the-middle of-the-senate-house of-his-toga
gremio non sine horrore, quasi plane sinu bellum ferret,
the-fold not without dread as-if plainly in-the-fold war he-carried
effudit. similis exitus belli initiis fuit. nam
he-poured-it-out like the-outcome of-the-war to-its-beginnings was for
quasi has inferias sibi Saguntinorum ultimae dirae
as-if these funeral-offerings for-themselves of-the-Saguntines the-last curses
in illo publico parricidio incendioque mandassent, ita manibus
in that public parricide and-burning had-enjoined so to-the-shades
eorum vastatione Italiae, captivitatae Africae, ducum et
their by-the-devastation of-Italy by-the-captivity of-Africa of-generals and
regum qui id gessere bellum exitio parentatum est.
of-kings who it waged the-war by-the-destruction offering-made it-was
igitur ubi semel se in Spaniam movit illa gravis et
therefore when once itself into Spain moved that heavy and
luctuosa Punici belli vis atque tempestas distinatumque
mournful of-the-Punic war force and storm and-destined
Romanis iam diu fulmen Saguntino igne conflavit, statim
for-the-Romans now long thunderbolt by-the-Saguntine fire forged at-once

quodam impetu rapta medias perfraegit Alpes et in
by-a-certain impulse snatched the-middle it-broke-through Alps and into
Italiam ab illis fabolusae altitudinis nivibus velud caelo
Italy from those of-fabulous height snows as-if from-heaven
missa discendit. ac primi quidem impetus turbo inter
sent descends and of-the-first indeed onset the-whirlwind between
Padum atque Ticinum validio statim fragore detonuit.
the-Po and the-Ticinus with-a-mighty at-once crash thundered
tum Scipione duce fusus exercitus: saucius etiam ipse
then with-Scipio as-leader routed the-army wounded even himself
venisset in hostium manus imperator, nisi protectum
would-have-come into of-the-enemies the-hands the-commander unless protected
patrem praetextatus ammodum filius ab ipsa morte rapuisset.
his-father in-boy's-toga quite a-son from very death had-snatched
hic erit Scipio, qui in exitum Africae crescit, nomen
this shall-be the-Scipio who to the-ruin of-Africa grows a-name
ex malis eius habiturus. Ticino Trevia succedit. hic
from the-ills of-it about-to-have to-the-Ticinus the-Trebia succeeds here
secunda Punici belli procella desaevit Sempronio consulae.
the-second of-the-Punic war storm raged with-Sempronius consul
tum callidissimi hostes frigidum et nivalem nancti diem
then the-most-cunning enemies a-cold and snowy having-got day
cum se ignibus prius, oleo quoque fovissent —
when themselves with-fires first with-oil also they-had-warmed
horribilae dictu — homines a meridiae et sole venientes
horrible to-tell men from the-south and the-sun coming
nostra nos hieme vicerunt. Tharsymenus lacus tertium
with-our-own us winter conquered the-Trasimene lake the-third
fulmen Annibalis imperatore Flamminio. ars nova Punicae
thunderbolt of-Hannibal with-commander Flaminius an-art new of-Punic
fraudis: quippe nebula lacus palustribusque virgultis
fraud for by-the-mist of-the-lake and-by-marshy thickets

tectus equitatus terga subito pugnantium invasit. nec de
covered the-cavalry the-backs suddenly of-those-fighting attacked nor about
diis possumus queri: imminentem temerario duci cladem
the-gods can-we complain impending to-the-rash leader the-disaster
praedixerant insidentia signis examina et aquilae prodire
had-foretold settling on-the-standards swarms and the-eagles to-advance
nolentes commissamque aciem secutus terrae tremor,
unwilling and-the-joined battle having-followed of-the-earth a-tremor
nisi illum horrorem soli aequitum virorumque discursus
unless that shaking of-the-soil of-horsemen and-of-men the-running-about
et mota vehementius arma fecerunt.
and moved more-vehemently arms made

§§ 188–199

188–199 · CANNAE AND THE RECOVERY

At Cannae Hannibal turns sun, wind, and dust against the Romans and destroys their army, but he delays and his army softens in Capua. Rome takes its arms from the temples, frees slaves for the oath, and fills the empty treasury with private wealth; Fabius wears Hannibal down by delay, Marcellus takes Syracuse despite Archimedes, and Scipio, avenging his father and uncle, recovers Spain.

quartum, id est pene ultimum vulnus imperii Cannae,
the-fourth that is almost the-last wound of-the-empire Cannae
ignobilis Apuliae vicus, sed magnitudine cladis emersit, et
an-obscure of-Apulia village but by-the-greatness of-the-disaster it-emerged and
sexaginta milium caede parta nobilitas. ibi in excidium
of-sixty thousand by-the-slaughter won its-fame there to the-destruction
infelicis exercitus dux terra caelum dies tota rerum
of-the-unlucky army the-general the-earth the-sky the-day the-whole of-things
natura consensit. si quidem non contentus simulatis transfugis
nature agreed if indeed not content with-feigned deserters

Annibal, qui mox terga pugnantium caeciderant, insuper
Hannibal who soon the-backs of-those-fighting had-cut-down moreover
callidus imperator in patentibus campis observato loci
cunning commander in the-open plains observed of-the-place
ingenio, quod et sol ibi acerrimus et plurimus pulvis
the-character that both the-sun there most-fierce and very-much dust
et eurus ab oriente semper quasi ad constitutum, ita
and the-east-wind from the-east always as-if by appointment so
instruxit aciem, ut, Romanis adversus haec omnia obversis,
he-drew-up the-line that the-Romans against these all turned
secundum caelum tenens vento pulvere et sole pugnaret.
the-favoring sky holding with-wind dust and sun he-fought
itaque duo maximi exercitus caesi ad hostium satietatem,
and-so two greatest armies slaughtered to of-the-enemies satiety
donec Annibal diceret militi suo 'parce ferro'. ducum fugit
until Hannibal said to-soldier his spare the-sword of-the-generals fled
alter, alter occisus est, dubium uter maiore animo: Paulum
one the-other slain was doubtful which with-greater spirit Paulus
puduit, Varro non disperavit. documenta cladis cruentus
was-ashamed Varro not despaired proofs of-the-disaster bloody
aliquamdiu Aufidus: pons de cadaveribus iussu ducis
for-some-time the-Aufidus a-bridge of corpses by-order of-the-general
factus in torrente Vergello: modii duo anulorum Chartaginem
made in the-torrent Vergellus pecks two of-rings to-Carthage
missi dignitasque aequestris taxata mensura. dubium deinde
sent and-the-rank equestrian assessed by-measure doubtful then
non erit, quin ultimum illum diem habitura fuerit Roma
not it-will-be but-that last that day about-to-have had Rome
quintumque intra diem epulari Annibal in Capitolio potuerit
and-the-fifth within day to-feast Hannibal on the-Capitol could
— sicut Poenum illum dixisse Maharbalem Bomilcari
as the-Carthaginian that to-have-said Maharbal to-Bomilcar

ferunt — si Annibal, quemadmodum sciret vincere, sic uti
they-report if Hannibal as he-knew to-conquer so to-use
victoria scisset. sed tum quidem illum, ut dici vulgo
victory had-known but then indeed him as to-be-said commonly
soled, aut fatum urbis imperaturae aut ipsius mens
it-is-wont either the-fate of-the-city about-to-rule or his-own mind
mala et aversi a Chartagine dii in diversum
evil and turned-away from Carthage the-gods into the-other-direction
abstulerunt. cum victoria posset uti, frui maluit relictaque
carried-off when victory he-could to-use to-enjoy he-preferred and-left
Roma Campaniam Tarentumque perrexit, ubi mox et ipse
Rome Campania and-Tarentum he-went-on-to where soon both himself
et ipsius exercitus ardor elanguit, adeo ut vere dictum
and of-him of-the-army the-ardor grew-languid so that truly said
sit Capuam Annibali Cannas fuisse. si quidem invictum
it-is Capua to-Hannibal Cannae to-have-been if indeed unconquered
Alpibus indomitumque armis Campani — quis crederet —
by-the-Alps and-untamed by-arms the-Campanian who would-believe
soles et tepentes fontibus Baiae subegerunt. permissum est
suns and warm with-springs Baiae subdued permitted it-was
interim respirare Romanis et quasi ab inferis emergere.
meanwhile to-breathe to-the-Romans and as-if from the-underworld to-emerge
arma non erant: detracta sunt templis. deerat iubentus:
arms not there-were taken-down they-were from-the-temples was-lacking the-youth
in sacramentum liberata servitia. aegebat aerarium: opes
to the-oath freed the-slaves was-in-want the-treasury wealth
suas senatus in medium libens protulit, nec praeter quod
its the-senate into the-common willingly brought-forth nor except what
in bullis singulisque anulis erat quicquam sibi auri
in amulets and-single rings was anything to-themselves of-gold
reliquerunt. aeques secutus exemplum imitateque aequitem
they-left the-knights having-followed the-example and-imitated the-knight

tribus. denique vix suffecere tabulae, vix scribarum manus
the-tribes finally scarcely sufficed the-tablets scarcely of-scribes the-hands
Levino Marcelloque consulibus, cum privatorum opes in
with-Laevinus and-Marcellus consuls when of-private-men the-wealth into
publicum referrentur. quid autem? in elegendis magistratibus
the-public were-entered what moreover in choosing magistrates
quae centuriarum sapientia, cum iuniores a senioribus
what of-the-centuries wisdom when the-younger from the-older
consilium de creandis consulibus petierunt? quippe adversus
counsel about creating consuls sought for against
ostem totiens victorem, tam callidum non virtute tantum, sed
an-enemy so-often victor so cunning not by-valor only but
suis etiam pugnare consiliis oportebat. prima redeuntis et ut
by-its also to-fight counsels it-was-fitting the-first of-the-returning and as
ita dixerim reviviscentis imperii spes Fabius fuit, qui novam
so I-may-say of-the-reviving empire hope Fabius was who a-new
de Annibale victoriam commentus est non pugnare. hinc
over Hannibal victory devised has not to-fight hence
illi cognomen novum et rei publicae salutare cunctator:
to-him the-surname new and of-the-state public salutary Delayer
hinc illud ex populo, ut imperii scutum vocaretur. itaque
hence that from the-people that of-the-empire the-shield he-was-called and-so
per Samnium totum, per Falernos Gauranosque saltus
through Samnium whole through the-Falernian and-Gauran forests
sic maceravit Annibalem, ut quia frangi virtute non
so he-wore-down Hannibal that because to-be-broken by-valor not
poterat, mora comminueretur. inde Claudio Marcello duce
he-could by-delay he-was-weakened then with-Claudius Marcellus as-leader
etiam congredi ausus est, comminus venit et perpulit in
even to-engage it-dared has to-close-quarters it-came and drove-him in
Campania sua et ab obsidione Nolae urbis exclusit. ausus
Campania his and from the-siege of-Nola city shut-out-him it-dared

est et Sempronio Graccho duce per Lucaniam sequi et
has also with-Sempronius Gracchus as-leader through Lucania to-follow and
praemere terga caedentis, quamvis tum, o pudor, servili
to-press the-back of-the-retreating although then O shame with-a-slave
pugnaret exercitu — nam hucusque tot mala conpulerunt
it-fought army for so-far so-many ills had-forced
— sed libertate donati de servitute Romanos fecerunt. o
but with-liberty presented from slavery Romans they-made O
horribilem in tot adversis fiduciam, o singularem animum
dreadful in so-many adversities confidence O singular mind
ac spiritum populi Romani. tam artis afflictisque rebus,
and spirit of-the-people Roman in-so straitened and-afflicted affairs
ut de Italia sua dubitare debuisset, ausus tamen est
when about Italy its to-doubt it-ought-to-have dared yet it-has
in diversa respicere, cumque hostis in iugulo per
to different-places to-look and-when the-enemy at its-throat through
Campaniam Apuliamque volitaret mediamque iam de Italia
Campania and-Apulia flew and-the-middle already of Italy
Africam faceret, eodem tempore et hunc sustinebat et
an-Africa made at-the-same time both him it-withstood and
in Siciliam Sardiniam Spaniamque divisa per terrarum
into Sicily Sardinia and-Spain divided through of-the-lands
orbem arma mittebat. Sicilia mandata Marcello. nec diu
the-circle arms it-sent Sicily entrusted to-Marcellus nor long
restitit: tota enim insula in una urbe superata est. grande
it-resisted the-whole for island in one city overcome was great
illud et ante id tempus invictum caput Syracusae quamvis
that and before that time unconquered head Syracuse although
Archimedis ingenio defenderentur, aliquando cesserunt. longe
of-Archimedes by-the-genius they-were-defended at-length yielded far-off
illi treplix murus totidemque arces, portus ille marmoreus et
that triple wall and-as-many citadels the-harbor that marble and

fons caelebratus Arethusae, nisi quod actenus profuere, ut
the-spring celebrated of-Arethusa except that so-far they-profited that
pulchritudini victae urbis parceretur. Sardiniam Gracchus
to-the-beauty of-the-conquered city it-was-spared Sardinia Gracchus
arripuit. nihil illi gentium feritas Insanorumque — nam
seized nothing to-it of-the-nations the-fierceness and-of-the-Insani for
sic vocantur — immanitas montium profuere. saevitum
so they-are-called the-savagery of-the-mountains availed it-was-raged
in urbes urbemque urbium Caralim, ut gens contumax
against the-cities and-the-city of-cities Caralis that a-nation stubborn
vilisque mortis saltim desiderio patrii soli domaretur. in
and-cheap of-death at-least by-longing of-the-native soil might-be-tamed into
Spaniam vero missi Gneus et Publius Scipiones pene totam
Spain but sent Gnaeus and Publius the-Scipios almost the-whole
Poenis eripuerunt provinciam. sed insidiis Punicae
from-the-Carthaginians snatched province but by-the-ambushes of-Punic
fraudis oppressi rursum amiserant, magnis quidem illi proeliis
fraud overwhelmed again had-lost-it in-great indeed they battles
cum Punicas opes caecidissent. sed Punicae fraudis insidiae
when the-Punic forces they-had-cut-down but of-Punic fraud the-ambushes
alterum ferro castra metantem, alterum cum evasisset
the-one with-the-sword the-camp measuring the-other when he-had-escaped
in turrem cinctum facibus oppresserunt. igitur in ultionem
into a-tower surrounded with-torches overwhelmed therefore for the-vengeance
patris ac patrui missus cum exercitu Scipio, cui iam
of-his-father and uncle sent with an-army Scipio for-whom already
grande nomen de Africa fata decreverant, bellatricem illam
a-great name from Africa the-fates had-decreed warlike that
viris armisque nobilem Spaniam, illam seminarium hostilis
in-men and-arms noble Spain that seedbed of-the-hostile
exercitus, illam iam Annibalis eruditricem — incredibile
army that already of-Hannibal the-instructress incredible

dictu — totam a Pyrineis montibus in Herculis columnas,
to-tell whole from the-Pyrenees mountains to of-Hercules the-pillars
in Oceanum recuperavit. nescias citius an
to the-Ocean recovered you-could-not-know-whether more-quickly or
felicius. quam velociter, quattuor anni fatentur: quam facile,
more-happily how swiftly four years confess how easily
vel una civitas probat: eodem quidem quo obsessa
even one city proves on-the-same indeed on-which besieged
est, eodem die capta est omenque Africanae victoriae
it-was on-the-same day taken it-was and-the-omen of-the-African victory
fuit, quod tam facile victa est Spaniae Chartago. certum
was that so easily conquered was of-Spain Carthage certain
est tamen ad profligandam provinciam maxime proficisse
it-is yet to finishing-off the-province most to-have-availed
singularem ducis sanctitatem, quippe qui captivos pueros
the-singular of-the-general purity for who the-captive boys
puellasque praecipuae pulchritudinis barbaris restitueret, ne
and-girls of-special beauty to-the-barbarians restored not
in conspectum suum quidem passus adduci, ne quid
into sight his even having-allowed to-be-brought lest anything
de virginitatis integritate delibasse saltim oculis videretur.
of of-virginity the-integrity to-have-tasted at-least with-his-eyes he-might-seem

§§ 200–211

Hannibal marches on Rome but storms drive him off; Hasdrubal's army is destroyed at the Metaurus. Scipio invades Africa and defeats Hannibal after a parley between them. Rome then twice defeats the king of Macedon, crushes him at Cynoscephalae, and in Numidia subdues Jugurtha, until all Mauretania submits.

haec in diversa terrarum populus Romanus. nec ideo
these-things in different-parts of-the-lands the-people Roman nor therefore
tamen visceribus Italiae inhaerentem submovere poterat
yet to-the-vitals of-Italy clinging to-remove could
Annibalem. pleraque ad ostem defecerant, et dux
Hannibal most to the-enemy had-defected and the-leader
acerrimus contra Romanos Italicis coque viribus utebatur.
most-fierce against the-Romans Italian also forces used
iam tamen eum plerisque oppidis et regionibus excussere
already yet him from-most towns and regions shook-out
Romani. iam Tarentum retulerant, iam et Capua sedis,
the-Romans already Tarentum they-had-recovered already also Capua seat
domus et patria altera Annibalis tenebatur, cuius amissio
home and fatherland second of-Hannibal was-held whose loss
tantum Poeno duci dolorem dedit, ut inde totis
so-much to-the-Carthaginian leader grief gave that thence with-all
viribus Romam converteretur. o populum dignum orbis
forces against-Rome he-was-turned O people worthy of-the-world
imperio dignumque omnium favore et ammiratione
of-the-empire and-worthy of-all of-the-favor and admiration
hominum ac deorum! conpulsus ad ultimos metus ab
of-men and of-gods driven to the-last fears from
incepto non desistit et de sua urbe sollicitus Capuam
its-undertaking not it-desists and about its city anxious Capua

tamen non omisit, sed parte exercitus sub Appio consule
yet not it-abandoned but a-part of-the-army under Appius the-consul
relicta, parte Flaccum in urbe secuta absens simul
left a-part Flaccus to the-city having-followed absent at-once
praesensque pugnabat. quid ergo miramur moventi castra
and-present it-fought why then do-we-wonder moving his-camp
a tertio lapide Annibali iterum ipsos deos restitisse?
from the-third milestone against-Hannibal again themselves the-gods to-have-resisted
tanta enim ad singulos illius motus vis imbrium effusa
so-great for at single his movements a-mass of-rains poured-out
est, tanta ventorum violentia coorta est, ut divinitus
was so-great of-winds violence arisen was that by-divine-will
hostem submoveri non a caelo, sed ab urbis ipsius
the-enemy to-be-driven-off not from heaven but from of-the-city itself
moenibus et Capitulio videretur. itaque fugit et cessit et
the-walls and the-Capitol it-seemed and-so he-fled and withdrew and
in ultimum se Italiae recepit sinum, cum urbem tantam
into the-farthest himself of-Italy betook bay when a-city so-great
non adoratam reliquisset. si quidem ab Spania Hasdrubal
not worshiped he-had-left if indeed from Spain Hasdrubal
frater Annibalis cum exercitu novo, novis viribus, nova
brother of-Hannibal with an-army new with-new forces with-new
belli mole veniebat. actum est procul dubio, si vir ille
of-war bulk was-coming done it-was far-from doubt if man that
se cum fratre iuncxisset. sed hunc quoque tantum quod
himself with his-brother had-joined but him also so-soon as
ab Alpe descenderat apudque Metaurum castra metantem
from the-Alp he-had-come-down and-at the-Metaurus a-camp measuring
Claudius Nero cum Livio Salinatore debellat. Nero in ultimo
Claudius Nero with Livius Salinator defeats Nero into the-farthest
Italiae angulo submoverat Annibalem: Livius in diversissimam
of-Italy corner had-driven-off Hannibal Livius in the-most-opposite

partem, id est in ipsas nascentis Italiae fauces signa
direction that is to very of-nascent Italy the-jaws the-standards
converterat. tanto, id est omni qua longissima est Italia
had-turned so-much that is all where longest is Italy
solo interiacente quo consilio, qua celeritate consules
soil lying-between with-what counsel with-what speed the-consuls
castra coniuncxerint inopinatumque hostem conlatis signis
their-camps joined and-the-unexpecting enemy with-joined standards
oppresserint neque id fieri Annibal senserit, difficile dictu
overwhelmed nor that to-be-done Hannibal perceived difficult to-tell
est. certe Annibal re cognita cum proiectum fratris
it-is certainly Hannibal the-thing learned when the-thrown of-his-brother
caput ad sua castra vidisset, 'agnosco', inquid, 'infelicitatem
head at his camp he-had-seen I-recognize he-says the-misfortune
Chartaginis'. haec fuit illius viri non sine praesagio quodam
of-Carthage this was of-that man not without presentiment certain
fati inminentis prima confessio. iam certum erat Annibalem
of-fate impending the-first confession already certain it-was Hannibal
etiam ipsius confessione posse vinci. sed tot
even by-his-own confession to-be-able to-be-conquered but so-many
rerum prosperarum fiducia plenus populus Romanus magni
of-things prosperous confidence full the-people Roman highly
aestimabat asperrimum hostem in sua Africa debellare. duce
valued the-harshest enemy in his Africa to-defeat as-leader
igitur Scipione in ipsam Africam tota mole conversus
therefore Scipio against very Africa with-whole bulk turned
imitari coepit Annibalem et Italiae suae clades in Africam
to-imitate it-began Hannibal and of-Italy its the-disasters on Africa
vindicare. quas ille, dii boni! Hasdrubalis cupias fudit! quos
to-avenge what he gods good of-Hasdrubal forces routed what
Syphacis Numidici regis equitatus! quae quantaque utriusque
of-Syphax the-Numidian king cavalry what and-how-great of-each

classis castra facibus inlatis una nocte delevit! denique iam
fleet camps with-torches brought-on in-one night destroyed finally now
non a tertio lapide, sed ipsas Chartaginis portas obsidione
not from the-third milestone but very of-Carthage the-gates with-siege
quatiebat. sic factum, ut herentem atque incubantem Italiae
he-shook so it-was-done that clinging and brooding over-Italy
extorqueret Annibalem. non fuit maior sub imperio Romano
he-wrenched-away Hannibal not was greater under the-empire Roman
dies quam ille, cum duo omnium et ante et postea
a-day than that when two of-all and before and after
ducum maximi duces, ille Italiae, hic Spaniae victor
of-generals greatest generals he of-Italy this-one of-Spain the-victor
collatis comminus signis direxere aciem. sed et colloquium
with-joined at-close-quarters standards drew-up the-line but also a-parley
fuit inter ipsos de legibus pacis. steterunt diu mutua
there-was between them about the-terms of-peace they-stood long by-mutual
ammiratione defixi: ubi vero de pace non convenit, signa
admiration fixed when indeed about peace not it-was-agreed the-standards
cecinere. constat utriusque confessione nec melius instrui
sounded it-is-agreed of-each by-confession neither better to-be-drawn-up
aciem nec acrius potuisse pugnari. hoc Scipio de
a-line nor more-fiercely to-have-been-able to-be-fought this Scipio of
Annibalis, Annibal de Scipionis exercitu praedicaverunt. sed
of-Hannibal Hannibal of of-Scipio the-army declared but
tamen Annibal cessit praemiumquae victoriae Africa fuit. et
yet Hannibal yielded and-the-prize of-victory Africa was and
secutus Africam statim terrarum orbis.
followed Africa at-once of-the-lands the-circle
Post Africam iam vinci neminem puduit, sed aequo
after Africa now to-be-conquered no-one was-ashamed but with-equal
iure ubique subactae. primum igitur Levino consule populus
right everywhere subdued first therefore with-Laevinus consul the-people

Romanus Ionium mare ingressus tota Greciae litora velut
Roman the-Ionian sea having-entered the-whole of-Greece shores as-if
triumphanti classe peragravit. spolia quippe Siciliae Sardiniae
with-a-triumphing fleet traversed the-spoils for of-Sicily of-Sardinia
Africae preferebat et manifestam victoriam, quam nata in
of-Africa it-displayed and manifest victory which born on
praetoria puppi laurus pollicebatur. aderat sponte in
the-praetorian stern a-laurel promised was-present of-his-own-accord for
auxilium Attalus rex Pergamenorum, aderant et Rodii
help Attalus king of-the-Pergamenes were-present also the-Rhodians
nauticus populus, quibus a mari, consul a terris omnia equis
a-seafaring people with-whom by sea the-consul by lands all-things with-horses
virisque quatiebat. bis victus, bis fugatus rex Macedonum,
and-men shook twice conquered twice put-to-flight the-king of-the-Macedonians
bis exutus castris, cum tamen nihil terribilius Macedonibus
twice stripped of-his-camp when yet nothing more-terrible to-the-Macedonians
fuit ipso vulnerum aspectu, quae non spiculis nec sagittis nec
was than-very of-the-wounds the-sight which not by-darts nor by-arrows nor
ullo Greculo ferro, sed ingentibus pilis nec minoribus adacta
by-any Greekling iron but by-huge javelins nor by-smaller driven
gladiis ultra mortem patebant. enim vero Flamminio duce
swords beyond death gaped for indeed with-Flamininus as-leader
populus Romanus invios antea Chaonum montes Saumque
the-people Roman the-trackless before of-the-Chaones mountains and-the-Aous
amnem per abrupta vadentem et ad ipsa Macedoniae claustra
river through precipices going and to very of-Macedonia barriers
penetravit, introisse victoria fuit. nam postea numquam
penetrated to-have-entered victory was for afterward never
ausus congredi rex ad tumulos, quos Cynocephalos
having-dared to-engage the-king at the-mounds which Cynoscephalae
vocant, uno ac ne hoc quidem iusto proelio oppremitur.
they-call in-one and not this even regular battle is-crushed

In Numidia tunc amici populi Romani regnabant. sed
in Numidia then friends of-the-people Roman reigned but
Iugurtha contra se bellum movit Romanorum propter
Jugurtha against himself the-war moved of-the-Romans on-account-of
necem Aterbalae et Empsalae Mecipsae liberos expugnataque
the-killing of-Adherbal and of-Hiempsal of-Micipsa the-children and-attacked
est primum a Metello consule, dehinc a Mario domita.
was first by Metellus the-consul thereafter by Marius tamed
Mauretaniam vero Buccho rex tuebatur. sed cum subiectio
Mauretania but Bocchus the-king protected but when the-subjection
omnium Maurorum facta est, Iubas rex, quae pugnae fuisset
of-all the-Moors made was Juba the-king who of-battle had-been
occasio, mox superatum se sensit, veneno hausto defecit
the-occasion soon overcome himself he-felt with-poison drunk he-expired
omnisque Mauretania Romanis subacta. Tripolis namque
and-all Mauretania to-the-Romans subjected Tripolis for
et utraeque Maurataniae Sitifensis et Caesariensis similiter
and both Mauretanias Sitifensis and Caesariensis likewise
Romano iurae, ceterorum formidine tacti, ultro
to-Roman law of-the-others by-fear touched of-their-own-accord
se subegerunt.
themselves subjected

§§ 212–226

212–226 · SPAIN, THE BALKANS, AND ASIA MINOR

Jordanes surveys Rome's conquests province by province: Spain to the Cantabrians, Epirus and Macedon, Illyricum's eighteen provinces, Dacia under Trajan, the Thracians, and Asia under Attalus' will. He tells of Orgiago's wife, who carries her rapist's head back to her husband, and of Cappadocia and Pontus becoming provinces.

Spanias quamvis, ut superius diximus, Saguntina cladis ab
the-Spains although as above we-have-said the-Saguntine disaster from
amicitiis Romanorum segregasset, Scipio tamen eos tam
the-friendships of-the-Romans had-separated Scipio yet them as-much
gratia quam virtute rursus Romanis coniuncxit rursusque
by-favor as by-valor again to-the-Romans joined and-again
resistentibus Sylla consul sedavit. Celtiberes similiter cum
resisting Sulla the-consul calmed the-Celtiberians likewise with
Numantinis adversus Romanos insurgentes Scipio iunior
the-Numantines against the-Romans rising Scipio the-younger
sedavit, conpescuit atque pene subvertit. Cantabri et
calmed restrained and almost overthrew the-Cantabri and
Astures confisi montium suorum munimine dum resistere
Astures trusting of-mountains their in-the-protection while to-resist
moliuntur, plenissime demoliti sunt et in provinciam redacti,
they-strive most-fully demolished were and into a-province brought
Tarraconenses Lysitani Gallicii Chartaginisii et Seticaniae
the-Tarraconenses Lusitanians Gallicians Carthaginienses and Tingitania
contra promuntorium Africae sitae omnes uno pene proelio
opposite the-promontory of-Africa placed all in-one almost battle
superatae et in provincias Romanas descriptae sunt.
overcome and into provinces Roman registered were

Epyrotae, qui Inlyrico, quamvis cum Pyrrho rege suo contra
the-Epirotes who in-Illyricum although with Pyrrhus king their against
Italiam conspirassent, tamen primum pace molliti, secundo
Italy had-conspired yet first by-peace softened a-second-time
et tertio rebellantes cum Achivis et Thessaliis edomiti
and a-third-time rebelling with the-Achaeans and Thessalians tamed
Romano iugo subacti sunt. Macedonia namque primum sub
to-the-Roman yoke subjected were Macedonia for first under
Philippum, deinde sub Perseo, tertio sub Pseudophilippo arma
Philip then under Perseus third under the-Pseudo-Philip the-arms
contra se provocavit Romana, oppressaque primo a Flamminio
against itself provoked Roman and-overwhelmed first by Flamininus
consule, secundo a Paulo, tertio a Metello superata colla
the-consul second by Paulus third by Metellus overcome its-neck
submisit Romanaque provincia facta. Illyriam autem Gentione
lowered and-a-Roman province made Illyria moreover with-Gentius
suo rege Macedonibus auxiliantibus vicit Romanorum Lucius
its king the-Macedonians helping conquered of-the-Romans Lucius
praetor et in provinciam redegit. Dardanos Mysosque Curion
the-praetor and into a-province brought the-Dardanians and-Mysians Curio
primum proconsul edomuit primusque omnium Romanorum
first proconsul tamed and-first of-all the-Romans
Danubium amnem usque profectus cuncta eius loca vastavit.
the-Danube river up-to having-advanced all its places laid-waste
Pannonum quoque regem in certamine superans idem
of-the-Pannonians also the-king in combat overcoming the-same
Lucius redegit in provinciam utrasque Pannonias. Amantinos
Lucius brought into a-province both Pannonias the-Amantini
autem, qui inter Saum Draumque flumina insident, rege
moreover who between the-Save and-the-Drave rivers dwell their
eorum interempto ipsa vice Romanam fecit provinciam.
king slain itself in-turn a-Roman made province

Marcomanni namque et Quadi in illa Valeria, que inter Draum
the-Marcomanni for and Quadi in that Valeria which between the-Drave
Danubiumque interiacet, ab eodem tunc ductore oppressi
and-the-Danube lies by the-same then commander crushed
finesque inter Romanos et barbaros Augustas Vindicas
and-the-boundaries between Romans and barbarians the-Augustae the-Vindices
per Noricum Moesiamque dispositae. Daces autem post
through Noricum and-Moesia arranged the-Dacians moreover after
haec iam sub imperio suo Traianus, Decebalo eorum rege
these-things now under empire his Trajan Decebalus their king
devicto, in terras ultra Danubium, quae habent mille milia
conquered in the-lands beyond the-Danube which have a-thousand miles
spatia, in provinciam redegit. sed Gallienus eos dum regnaret
of-extent into a-province brought but Gallienus them while he-reigned
amisit Aurelianusque imperator evocatis exinde legionibus in
lost and-Aurelian the-emperor summoned thence the-legions in
Mysia conlocavit ibique aliquam partem Daciam mediterraneam
Mysia settled and-there some part Dacia inland
Daciamque ripensem constituit et Dardaniam iunxit. Illyricus
and-Dacia riparian established and Dardania joined Illyricum
autem cuncta per partes quidem et membra devicta ad
moreover all through parts indeed and limbs conquered into
unum tamen corpus apta est, quae habet intra se provincias
one yet body fitted is which has within itself provinces
xviii et sunt Norici duo, Pannonias duas, Valeria, Suavia,
eighteen and they-are Norici two Pannonias two Valeria Savia
Dalmatia, Moesia superior, Dardania, Dacias duas, Macedonia,
Dalmatia Moesia upper Dardania Dacias two Macedonia
Thessalia, Achaia, Epyros duos, Praevales, Creta, simul xviii.
Thessaly Achaea Epiruses two Praevalis Crete together eighteen

Thracias autem non aliter nisi occasio Macedonici
the-Thracias moreover not otherwise unless the-occasion of-the-Macedonian
belli fecit adgredere. diri namque homines omniumque
war made to-attack fearful for men and-of-all
gentium ferocissimi sunt Thraces, quorum saevitiam pariter
nations the-fiercest are the-Thracians whose savagery together
habent et Scordisci et Emimontii Asticique, ob
have also the-Scordisci and the-Haemimontii and-Astici on-account-of
quorum immanitatem Romani multa et gravia pertulerunt,
whose savagery the-Romans many-things and grievous endured
crebrisque certatibus exercitus caesus. ad postremum a Marco
and-in-frequent contests the-army cut-down to the-last by Marcus
Didio et ipsi subacti, et loca eorum in provinciam
Didius both they-themselves subjected and the-places their into a-province
redacta, iugum excepit Romanum. nam Marcus Drusus intus
brought the-yoke received Roman for Marcus Drusus within
eos in montibus eorum contrivit, Minucius in Ebro amne
them in mountains their crushed Minucius at the-Hebrus river
eorum multos extinxit et vicit. Rodopeni per Appium
of-them many destroyed and conquered the-Rhodopeans by Appius
Claudium devicti sunt et civitates maritimas Europae, quae
Claudius conquered were and the-cities maritime of-Europe which
dudum Romanae fuissent et postmodum rebellassent, Marcus
formerly Roman had-been and afterward had-rebelled Marcus
Romanis subegit Lucullus: si quidem primus in Thracia
to-the-Romans subdued Lucullus if indeed first in Thrace
contra Bessos pugnans eos qui in fortitudine famaque praeibant
against the-Bessi fighting those who in bravery and-fame were-foremost
devicit Emimontiosque debellans, Pulpudeva, quae nunc
conquered and-the-Haemimontii conquering Pulpudeva which now
Philippopolis, et Uscudama, quae Adrianopolis vocitantur, in
Philippopolis and Uscudama which Adrianople are-called into

Romanorum redegit dominio. similiterque capiens et civitates,
of-the-Romans brought dominion and-likewise taking also the-cities
quae litori Pontico inherebant, id est Apollonia Galato
which to-the-shore Pontic clung that is Apollonia Galatis
Parthenopolim Thomos Istro, omniaque loca usque ad
Parthenopolis Tomi Istrus and-all the-places all-the-way to
Danubium subdens Scythis ostendit Romanorum virtutem.
the-Danube subjecting to-the-Scythians he-showed of-the-Romans the-valor
Hactenus ad partes occiduas: nunc que in Eoa plaga acta
thus-far to the-parts western now what in the-Eastern region done
sunt percurramus. primum quidem in Asia locum Romani
were let-us-run-through first indeed in Asia a-place the-Romans
hereditario iure invenerunt. nam Attalus rex amicissimus
by-hereditary right found for Attalus king most-friendly
populi Romani humanis rebus excedens per testamentum
of-the-people Roman from-human affairs departing by testament
suum Romanos suo in regno heredes constituit: quam
his the-Romans his in kingdom heirs appointed which
pene non ante Romanus populus adiit, nisi et suo labore
almost not before the-Roman people entered unless also by-its labor
vicina loca cepisset, id est Lydia Caria Ellispontu
the-neighboring places it-had-taken that is Lydia Caria the-Hellespont
utrasque Frigias. nam Rodus opinatissima insula et totius
both Phrygias for Rhodes the-most-renowned island and of-the-whole
Atriae insularum metropolis cum pene omnibus Cycladibus,
Adriatic of-the-islands the-metropolis with almost all the-Cyclades
arma pertimescens Romana, iam dudum se foederatam
the-arms dreading Roman already long-ago itself confederate
populo illi coniuncxerat et nabali bello solacia condonabat.
to-the-people that had-joined and in-naval war consolations bestowed
cum quibus Servilius proconsul directus quasi piratico bello
with whom Servilius the-proconsul sent as-if in-a-pirate war

obtenuit tamen Pamphyliam, Lyciam Pisidiamque devicit
held yet Pamphylia Lycia and-Pisidia conquered
fecitque provinciam. Bithiniam vero Nicomedis rex moriens
and-made a-province Bithynia but Nicomedes the-king dying
testamentali voce Romanis reliquid.
by-testamentary voice to-the-Romans left
Gallogreciam autem, id est Galatiam, Syriaci belli ruina
Gallograecia moreover that is Galatia of-the-Syrian war the-ruin
convolvit. fuit namque inter auxilia regis Anthiochi: an
rolled-up was for among the-auxiliaries of-king Antiochus or
fuisse cupidus triumphi Manlius Visus simulaverit, dubium
to-have-been desirous of-a-triumph Manlius Vulso feigned doubtful
est. duobus itaque proeliis fusi fugatique sunt, quamvis
it-is in-two and-so battles routed and-put-to-flight they-were although
sub adventu ostis relictis sedibus in altissimos se
at the-arrival of-the-enemy abandoned their-seats into the-highest themselves
montes recepissent. Coloscobegi Olympum, Tectosagi Magaba
mountains they-had-withdrawn the-Tolistobogii Olympus the-Tectosages Magaba
insederant. utrimque fundis sagittisque detracti in perpetuam
had-occupied on-both-sides by-slings and-arrows dragged-down into perpetual
se pacem dediderunt: sed alligati miraculo quodam fuere,
themselves peace they-surrendered but bound by-a-wonder certain they-were
cum catenas morsibus et ore temptassent, cum offucandas
when the-chains with-bites and mouth they-had-tried when to-be-throttled
in vicem fauces prebuissent. nam Orgiacontis uxor a
in turn their-throats they-had-offered for of-Orgiago the-wife by
centurione stuprum passa memorabili exemplo custodiam
a-centurion rape having-suffered by-a-memorable example custody
evasit revulsumque adulteri hostis caput ad maritum
escaped and-the-torn-off of-the-adulterer enemy head to her-husband
reportavit. Deiotarum si quidem amicum senatus praefecit
carried-back Deiotarus if indeed a-friend the-senate set-over

Galatiae. sed post haec Caesar eos redegit fecitque in
Galatia but after these-things Caesar them reduced and-made-them into
provincias. Cappadoces quoque sub Epafra rege constituti
provinces the-Cappadocians also under Ephraphes king placed
primum per legatos suos Romanorum amicitias petierunt,
first through envoys their of-the-Romans the-friendship sought
dehinc Acuriobarzane rege succedente et a Mitridate expulso
thereafter Ariobarzanes the-king succeeding and by Mithridates expelled
ultro se Romano servitio dediderunt magnamque
of-their-own-accord themselves to-Roman servitude surrendered and-the-great
civitatem suam Mazacam in honore Caesaris Caesaream
city their Mazaca in honor of-Caesar Caesarea
appellaverunt. post haec iterum sub Claudio imperatore
they-called after these-things again under Claudius the-emperor
rex eorum Archelaus Romae adveniens quasi amicus populi
king their Archelaus to-Rome coming as a-friend of-the-people
Romani ibique defunctus testamentali voce Cappadociam
Roman and-there having-died by-testamentary voice Cappadocia
Romanis reliquid et sic iam ex integro in provinciam
to-the-Romans left and thus now from the-whole into a-province
facta est. Pontus a Pompeio devicta cum suo rege Mitridate
made it-was Pontus by Pompey conquered with its king Mithridates
et facta provincia est. Paflagoniae Pylemenis rex amicus
and made a-province was of-Paphlagonia Pylaemenes the-king friend
populi Romani, a multis dum inquietaretur, Romanorum
of-the-people Roman by many while he-was-disturbed of-the-Romans
petiit auxilium. se quoque dum de inimicis ulcisceretur,
sought the-help himself also while on his-enemies he-avenged
defunctus Romanos per testamentum heredes reliquid.
having-died the-Romans by testament heirs left

§§ 227–240

Scipio defeats Antiochus at Magnesia, Servilius the Cilician pirates, and Cato takes Cyprus. Lucullus and Pompey overrun Armenia and Syria, Pompey takes Jerusalem, and the king of Greater Armenia surrenders his crown. Crassus loses his army to the Parthians, who pour molten gold into his mouth, before Ventidius avenges him by killing Pacorus.

Hactenus intra Taurum: nunc ulterius transgrediamur et quae
thus-far within the-Taurus now farther let-us-pass and what
patriae aut quibus subiugantibus populo Romano coniunctae
fatherlands or by-whom subjugating to-the-people Roman joined
sint, memorabimus. Anthiocus Syriae fortissimus rex magnum
were we-shall-relate Antiochus of-Syria the-bravest king a-great
apparatum belli contra populum Romanum commovit. xxx
apparatus of-war against the-people Roman stirred thirty
milia si quidem armatorum currusque falcatos quam plures,
thousand if indeed of-armed-men and-chariots scythed very many
elefantos innumeros turritos et ad instar murale in acie
elephants innumerable towered and to the-likeness of-a-wall in the-line
ordine sitos. cui obvians Scipio Africani Scipionis frater in
in-order placed whom meeting Scipio of-Africanus Scipio the-brother in
Asia ad Magnesiam civitatem commissoque proelio Anthiocus
Asia at Magnesia city and-joined battle Antiochus
victus est, percussumque foedus cum Romanis ab Asia
conquered was and-struck a-treaty with the-Romans from Asia
discessit et ultra Taurum ex senatus consilio regnare
withdrew and beyond the-Taurus by of-the-senate counsel to-reign
permissus est, filiosque eius in obsidato Romae deductos
permitted was and-sons his in hostageship to-Rome brought

post patris obitum regnare genitali loco concessit.
after of-their-father the-death to-reign in-their-native place it-allowed
Cilices cum Isauris piratae effecti et in mari magno
the-Cilicians with the-Isaurians pirates made and on the-sea great
saepe latrocinia concitantes a Servilio proconsule victi
often robberies stirring-up by Servilius the-proconsul conquered
et prostrati sunt. hic quoque Servilius primus Romanorum
and laid-low were this also Servilius first of-the-Romans
Tauri iugum pervium fecit triumphansque de eorum
of-the-Taurus the-ridge passable made and-triumphing over their
spoliis Isauricus Cilicusque vocatus est.
spoils Isauricus and-Cilicus called was
Cyprum Cato classe navigera directus invasit. negantibus
Cyprus Cato with-a-fleet ship-bearing sent invaded denying
Cypriis habere se aliquid magnas illis opes repperit
the-Cypriots to-have themselves anything great of-them the-wealth he-found
proscriptionibusque multavit. quod non ferens Gnosius rex
and-with-proscriptions punished which not bearing Gnosius king
eorum veneno hausto semet occidit et sic Cyprus Romana
their poison drunk himself killed and thus Cyprus Roman
facta provincia. Lybiam, id est Pentapolim, totam a primo
made province Libya that is the-Pentapolis whole by the-first
illo Ptholomeo Romanis sub libertate concessam tamen
that Ptolemy to-the-Romans under liberty granted yet
resistentibus dehinc Appionis consilium Romano populo
resisting thereafter of-Apion the-counsel to-the-Roman people
subdidit. Aegyptus omnis ab amicis Romanorum, id est
subjected Egypt all by friends of-the-Romans that is
Lagidis per Ptholomeos possessa. post haec Cleopatra et
the-Lagids through the-Ptolemies possessed after these-things Cleopatra and
Antonius iure proprio vindicantes et se et illa amittunt.
Antony by-right their-own claiming both themselves and it lose

Montes vero Armeniae primum per Lucullum Romana arma
the-mountains indeed of-Armenia first through Lucullus the-Roman arms
viderunt, per quem et in Hosroine Saracinorum filarchi
saw through whom also in Osrhoene of-the-Saracens the-phylarchs
devicti Romanis se dediderunt. Mesopotamiamque idem
conquered to-the-Romans themselves surrendered and-Mesopotamia the-same
ipse, Nitzebem quoque urbem invasit. post quem Pompeius
himself Nisibis also the-city invaded after whom Pompey
eadem loca ingrediens Romano confirmavit imperio. Syriam
the-same places entering by-Roman confirmed empire Syria
Coelen iusto proelio Tigrane devicto invaserat. Arabaes
Coele in-a-regular battle Tigranes conquered he-had-invaded the-Arabs
et Palestini eodem Pompeio ductante devicti sunt.
and Palestinians with-the-same Pompey leading conquered were
Babylonii autem crebro concertantes sepenumero victi,
the-Babylonians moreover often contending many-times conquered
numquam tamen ad integrum domiti sunt. quos tamen primum
never yet to the-full tamed were whom yet first
Lucius Sylla proconsul sub Arsacem eorum regem devicit ab
Lucius Sulla the-proconsul under Arsaces their king conquered by
eoque rogatus per legatos pacem concessit. secundo dum
him-and asked through envoys peace granted second while
Lucius Lucullus a Pontico regno Tigranem Armeniae regem
Lucius Lucullus from the-Pontic kingdom Tigranes of-Armenia king
cum decem et octo milibus superatum expelleret, omnemque
with ten and eight thousand overcome was-expelling and-all
Armeniam invasam ad Mesopotamiam venit, ibi Nitziben
Armenia invaded to Mesopotamia came there Nisibis
cum fratre regis Parthorum cepit, aequa sorte Persidam
with the-brother of-the-king of-the-Parthians took with-equal lot Persia
cupiens devastare, nisi Pompeius a senatu directus ei
desiring to-lay-waste unless Pompey by the-senate sent to-him

advenisset successor. hic etenim Pompeius ilico veniens, mox
had-come as-successor this for Pompey on-the-spot coming soon
nocturno proelio in minore Armenia super Mitridatem inruens,
in-a-night battle in lesser Armenia upon Mithridates rushing
xlii milia armatorum eius prosternens castraque succendit.
forty-two thousand of-armed-men his laying-low and-the-camp burned
unde Mitridatis cum uxore et duobus satellitibus fugiens
whence Mithridates with his-wife and two attendants fleeing
Bosforo venit nimiaque desperatione detentus venenum
to-the-Bosporus came and-by-excessive despair held poison
accepit. sed dum nec sic mors ei accederet, alterum e
took but when not so death to-him came the-other of
duobus satellitem rogavit, ut se perimeret. Pompeius autem
the-two attendants he-asked that him he-should-kill Pompey moreover
maioris Armeniae regem dum persequeretur, cur Tigrani contra
of-greater Armenia the-king while he-pursued why to-Tigranes against
Romanos auxilium commodasset, ille in Artaxata urbe regno
the-Romans help he-had-lent he in Artaxata city his-kingdom
deposito ultro diademam suam Pompeio optulit; sed
laid-down of-his-own-accord diadem his to-Pompey offered but
Pompeius pietate ductus ultro maiorem Armeniam ei
Pompey by-piety led of-his-own-accord greater Armenia to-him
concessit regnare, auferens ab eo Mesopotamiam et Syriam
granted to-rule taking-away from him Mesopotamia and Syria
partemque Foenicis cum Armenia. nam Bosforianis Colchisque
and-part of-Phoenicia with Armenia for over-the-Bosporans and-Colchians
Aristharcum regem Pompeius praeposuit Albanosque insequens
Aristarchus as-king Pompey set and-the-Albanians pursuing
Orodem regem eorum tertio superavit. ad postremum
Oroeses king their a-third-time overcame at the-last
rogatus pacem concessit. Hiberiam similiter cum Artace
asked peace granted Iberia likewise with Artaces

rege in deditionem excepit. Saracenos Arabasque exuperans
the-king into surrender received the-Saracens and-Arabs overcoming
Hierosolimam Iudeae captivavit. cum Persis foedus percusso.
Jerusalem of-Judea took-captive with the-Persians a-treaty struck
revertens Dafnensem agrum Antiochenis concessit ob nimiam
returning the-Daphnean field to-the-Antiochenes granted for the-excessive
loci amoenitatem pro munere.
of-the-place pleasantness as a-gift
His et aliis rebus in Syria bene gestis unius foedavit avaritia.
these and other affairs in Syria well done of-one defiled the-avarice
nam Crassus consul, dum Parthico inhiat auro, undecim legiones
for Crassus the-consul while for-Parthian he-gapes gold eleven legions
pene cum suo capite amisit. cuius conspectu et filius hostilibus
almost with his head lost whose in-sight also his-son by-hostile
telis effossus et ipse peremptus caputque eius praecisum
weapons dug-through and he-himself slain and-head his cut-off
cum dextera manu ad regem reportatum ludibrium fuit neque
with the-right hand to the-king carried-back a-mockery was nor
indigno: aurum enim liquidum in rictum oris infusum est,
undeservedly gold for molten into the-gaping of-the-mouth poured was
ut cuius animus arserat auri cupiditate, eius etiam mortuum
that whose mind had-burned of-gold with-the-desire his even dead
et exsangue corpus auro ureretur. reliqui vero infelicis
and bloodless body by-gold might-be-burned the-rest but of-the-unlucky
exercitus, quo quemque rapuit fuga, in Armeniam Celiciam
army where each snatched flight into Armenia Cilicia
Syriamque distracti vix cladis tantae nuntium retulerunt.
and-Syria scattered scarcely of-the-disaster so-great the-news brought-back
Hac ergo clade Parthi altius animos elevantes per
by-this therefore disaster the-Parthians higher their-spirits lifting through
Pacorum ducem Syriam invadunt ducemque Labinium, quem
Pacorus the-leader Syria invade and-the-leader Labienus whom

dudum ceperant, exercitui praeponentes contra socios, id est
formerly they-had-taken to-the-army setting-over against the-allies that is
Romanos in proelio dirigunt. sed Ventidius Bassus Persas
the-Romans in battle they-direct but Ventidius Bassus the-Persians
sub utroque duce Syriam populantes superatos effugat
under each leader Syria ravaging overcome puts-to-flight
Labiniumque interfecit, Pacorum vero regium iuvenem telis
and-Labienus killed Pacorus but the-royal youth by-weapons
undique circumseptum extinxit moxque caput eius dempto
on-all-sides surrounded he-destroyed and-soon head his cut-off
et circumlato per urbes que disciverant Syriam sine
and carried-around through the-cities which had-revolted Syria without
bello recepit. sic Crassianam cladem Ventidius Pacori caput
war recovered thus the-Crassian disaster Ventidius of-Pacorus with-head
Labiniique morte pensavit. nec sic contentus populus
and-of-Labienus with-death repaid nor so content the-people
Romanus Crassiano interitu oblivisci nisi adhuc saevit in
Roman the-Crassian death to-forget but still rages against
Parthos. nam Marcus Antonius in Madianea ingressus
the-Parthians for Marcus Antony into Media having-entered
contra eos arma commovit, ubi primum eos superans, dehinc,
against them arms stirred where at-first them overcoming thereafter
cum duabus legionibus inedia hiemeque corruptus vix in
with two legions by-want and-winter ruined scarcely into
Armenia Parthis sequentibus fugit ibique ereptus est. sub
Armenia the-Parthians following fled and-there snatched-away was under
Augusto dehinc Octaviano Armeni cum Parthis commixti
Augustus thereafter Octavian the-Armenians with the-Parthians mingled
per Claudium Caesarem nepotem Augusti ocius superantur.
by Claudius Caesar grandson of-Augustus speedily are-overcome
Armeni si quidem utilius rati Romanorum amicitiis
the-Armenians if indeed more-useful thinking of-the-Romans to-the-friendships

reconciliari et proprias sedes incolere, quam cum Parthis
to-be-reconciled and their-own seats to-inhabit than with the-Parthians
coniuncti et sedes perdere et Romanos infestos habere.
joined both their-seats to-lose and the-Romans hostile to-have

§§ 241–256

241–256 · AUGUSTUS' WARS AND CLEOPATRA

Under Augustus the Alpine and Danubian peoples are subdued, and Augustus himself leads an attack across a falling bridge. Antony, enslaved by Cleopatra, is defeated at Actium; both die in Egypt, she by serpents. Augustus closes Janus' gates, takes a census of the world, and in his reign Christ is born.

Sic quoque dum in partibus orientalium Romanus laborat
so also while in the-parts of-the-eastern the-Roman toils
exercitus, occiduae plagae infesti sunt. Norici in Alpibus
army of-the-western region hostile are the-Norici in the-Alps
Noricis habitantes credebant, quasi in rupes et nives bellum
Noric dwelling they-believed as-if into crags and snows war
non posset ascendere: sed mox omnes illius cardinis populos
not could to-climb but soon all of-that quarter the-peoples
Brennos Teutonios Cennos atque Vendilicos, per eodem
Breuni Teutonii Cenni and Vindelici through the-same
Claudio Caesarem Romanus vicit exercitus. quae tamen
Claudius Caesar the-Roman conquered army what yet
fuerit Alpinarum gentium feritas, facile est vel per mulieres
was of-the-Alpine nations the-fierceness easy it-is even through the-women
ostendere, quae deficientibus telis infantes suos adflictos
to-show who failing weapons infants their dashed
humi in ora militum adversa miserunt. nec minores
on-the-ground into the-faces of-the-soldiers opposite threw nor less

his saevitia Illyri pariter accenduntur. contra quos
than-these in-savagery the-Illyrians together are-inflamed against whom
ipse Augustus e vicino egressus pontem, unde aquas
himself Augustus from near having-gone-out a-bridge whence the-waters
transiret, fieri imperavit. dumque aquis et hostibus ad
he-might-cross to-be-made ordered and-while by-waters and enemies at
ascensum milites turbarentur, scutum ipse rapuit et
the-ascent the-soldiers were-thrown-into-confusion a-shield he-himself snatched and
viam primus ingressus est. tum agmine secuto cum subruptus
the-way first entered has then the-column following when undermined
multitudine pons succidisset, sauciis manibus et cruribus,
by-the-multitude the-bridge had-collapsed with-wounded hands and legs
speciosior sanguine et ipso periculo auctior terga ostium
more-splendid with-blood and by-very danger greater the-backs of-the-enemies
cecidit. Pannonii vero duobus acribus fluviis Drao
he-cut-down the-Pannonians but by-two fierce rivers the-Drave
Savoque vallantur. contra quos Duennium misit, qui eos plus
and-the-Save are-walled against whom Vinnius he-sent who them more
velociter vicit, quam eorum flumina cursu rapido currunt.
swiftly conquered than their rivers with-course rapid run
Dalmatae similiter silvis commanentes plurimam partem
the-Dalmatians likewise in-the-forests dwelling the-greatest part
latrocinando vastabant: ad quos edomandos Vibium mandat,
by-robbing laid-waste for whom to-be-tamed Vibius he-commissions
qui efferum genus fodere terras coegit aurumque venis
who the-savage race to-dig the-earth compelled and-the-gold from-the-veins
repurgare. Moesi vero quam feri, quam truces erant? ut
to-cleanse the-Moesians but how fierce how truculent they-were that
unus ducum ante aciem postulato silentio ‘qui vos
one of-the-leaders before the-battle-line asked-for silence who you
estis’? inquid. responsum est: ‘Romani gentium domini’. et
are he-says answer was Romans of-the-nations the-masters and

ille: ‘ita fiet’, inquid, ‘si nos viceritis’. sed mox
he so it-shall-be he-says if us you-shall-have-conquered but soon
ad bellum ventum est, nec classicum audire valuerunt: sic
to battle come it-was nor the-trumpet to-hear they-were-able thus
a Marcio superati sunt. Thraces autem antea saepe, tunc
by Marcius overcome they-were the-Thracians moreover before often then
tamen Romaetalca regnante sibi a Romanis disciscunt.
yet Rhoemetalces reigning themselves from the-Romans withdraw
nam is barbaros et disciplina et signis militaribus
for he the-barbarians both to-discipline and to-standards military
adsueverat: sed a Pisone perdomiti in ipsa captivitate rabiem
had-accustomed but by Piso thoroughly-tamed in very captivity madness
ostendebant: nam catenas, quibus legati erant, morsibus
they-showed for the-chains with-which bound they-were with-bites
vellicantes feritatem suam ipsi puniebant. Daciam
plucking the-fierceness their they-themselves punished Dacia
quoque ultra Danubium sitam exindeque saepius Dacos
also beyond the-Danube placed and-thence very-often the-Dacians
gelato Danubii alveo ad furta in Romania transeuntibus
on-the-frozen of-the-Danube bed for thefts into Romania crossing
Lentulo misso vicit, expulit atque subegit. Sarmatas quoque
Lentulus sent conquered expelled and subdued the-Sarmatians also
per eundem Lentulum ultra Danubium pepulit. qui nihil
through the-same Lentulus beyond the-Danube he-drove who nothing
aliud ubi degunt praeter nives pruinasque et silvas habent,
else where they-live except snows and-frosts and forests have
tantaque barbaries in illis est, ut nec intellegant pacem.
and-so-great barbarism in them is that not they-understand peace
Marmaridas vero et Garamantes in orientali hiemali plaga
the-Marmaridae but and Garamantes in the-eastern wintry region
per Quirinum subegit. Germanos Gallos Brittones Spanos
through Quirinius he-subdued the-Germans Gauls Britons Spaniards

Hiberes Astures Cantabros occiduali axe iacentes et
Iberians Astures Cantabri under-the-western pole lying and
post longum servitium desciscentes per se ipse Augustus
after long servitude revolting by himself himself Augustus
accedens rursus servire coegit Romanisque legibus vivere.
approaching again to-serve compelled and-by-Roman laws to-live
Cleopatra vero Alexandrinorum regina ex genere Lagidarum
Cleopatra but of-the-Alexandrians queen from the-race of-the-Lagids
Ptholomeorumque successor prius contra viri sui Ptholomei
and-of-the-Ptolemies successor first against of-husband her Ptolemy
insidias Gaium Iulium Caesarem interpellavit, qui ob stupri,
the-plots Gaius Julius Caesar appealed-to who for of-debauchery
ut perhibent, gratiam regnum eius confirmavit ipsamque
as they-report the-favor the-kingdom her confirmed and-herself
in urbem cum magna pompa Alexandriae remisit regnare.
into the-city with great pomp of-Alexandria sent-back to-reign
Cassius Iudea capta templum spoliavit. occiso vero in
Cassius Judea captured the-temple despoiled slain indeed in
curia Romae Caesare Octavianus nepus eius suscepit
the-senate-house at-Rome Caesar Octavian grandson his took-up
Augustus principatum, quem Antonius dum inviderat nihilque
Augustus the-rule whom Antony while he-envied and-nothing
laedere posset, urbem Romam ingreditur et ad partes
to-harm could the-city Rome enters and to the-parts
Aegypti quasi Romanae rei publicae provisor accedit. ubi
of-Egypt as-if of-the-Roman state public provider approaches where
iam viduam a viro regnantem repperiens Cleopatram
now widowed from her-husband reigning finding Cleopatra
se quoque cum illa consocians coepit sibi dominationem
himself also with her associating began for-himself domination
parare, nec tacitae, sed patriae nominis togae fascium
to-prepare nor quiet but of-his-fatherland of-name of-toga of-the-fasces

oblitum totum in monstrum illud ut mente ita animo
forgetful wholly into monstrosity that as in-mind so in-spirit
quoque cultuque desciverat. aureum in manu baculum, in
also and-in-attire he-had-fallen-away golden in hand a-staff at
latus acinaces, purporea vestis ingentibus obstricta gemmis.
the-side a-scimitar purple clothing with-huge bound gems
diadema deerat, ut regina rex et ipse frueretur. quod
a-diadem was-lacking that the-queen king also himself might-enjoy which
Augustus Caesar audiens a Brundisio Calabriae in Epiro,
Augustus Caesar hearing from Brundisium of-Calabria into Epirus
ut eum a coepta removeret tyrannide, transierat. nam
that him from the-begun he-might-remove tyranny had-crossed for
Antonius omne Actiacum litus iam classibus obsedebat. sed
Antony all the-Actian shore already with-fleets was-besieging but
mox ubi ad proelium vintum est et Caesaris classe illius
soon when to battle come it-was and of-Caesar by-the-fleet his
coepit turbare navigium, prima dux fugae regina
began to-throw-into-confusion navy first leader of-flight the-queen
cum aurea puppe veloque purporeo in altum dedit. mox
with golden stern and-sail purple to the-deep gave soon
secutus Antonius. sed instare vestigiis Caesar, itaque
having-followed Antony but to-press on-their-tracks Caesar and-so
nec praeparata in oceanum fuga nec munita praesidiis
neither prepared into the-ocean flight nor fortified with-garrisons
utraque Aegypti cornua Paretonium atque Pelusium profuere.
both of-Egypt horns Paraetonium and Pelusium availed
prope manu tenebantur. primum ferrum occupavit Antonius.
nearly by-hand they-were-held first the-sword seized Antony
regina ad pedes Augusti provoluta temptavit oculos ducis.
the-queen at the-feet of-Augustus rolled tried the-eyes of-the-leader
frustra quidem. nam pulchritudo intra pudicitiam principis
in-vain indeed for beauty within the-chastity of-the-prince

fuit. nec illa de vita, quae auferebatur, sed de parte
was nor she about life which was-taken-away but about a-part
regni laborabat. quod ubi desperavit a principe servarique
of-the-kingdom labored which when she-despaired by the-prince and-to-be-kept
se triumpho cognovit, incautiorem nancta custodiam, in
herself for-the-triumph learned a-less-careful having-got guard into
mausuleum se regum recepit ibique maximos, ut solebat,
the-mausoleum herself of-the-kings betook and-there the-greatest as she-was-wont
induta cultus in referto odoribus solio iuxta suum se
having-put-on attire in a-filled with-perfumes seat beside her herself
conlocavit Antonium admotisque ad venas serpentibus sic
placed Antony and-applied to her-veins serpents so
morte quasi somno soluta est. hic finis bellorum Augusti
by-death as-if by-sleep released was this the-end of-the-wars of-Augustus
Caesaris tam cum civibus quam cum extraneis. sic quoque
Caesar as-much with citizens as with foreigners so also
Augustus Caesar Octavianus, quo nullus imperatorum in
Augustus Caesar Octavian than-whom none of-the-emperors in
bellis felicior nec pace moderatior fuit, civilissimus in
wars more-fortunate nor in-peace more-moderate was most-civil in
omnibus. qui ab oriente in occidente, a septentrione in
all who from the-east to the-west from the-north to
meridie ac per totum oceani circulum cunctis gentibus
the-south and through the-whole of-the-ocean circle all the-nations
una pace conpositis Iani portas ipse tunc clausit et censum
by-one peace settled of-Janus the-gates himself then closed and the-census
Romae cum Tiberio agitans invenit hominum nonagies
at-Rome with Tiberius conducting found of-men ninety-times
trecenta septuaginta milia omnemque orbem venientis Iesu
three-hundred seventy thousand and-the-whole world of-the-coming Jesus
Christi notu pacatum censeri praecepit regnavitque ann.
Christ by-the-will pacified to-be-assessed ordered and-reigned years

lvi. sed imperii eius secundo et quadragensimo anno
fifty-six but of-empire his in-the-second and forty year
dominus Iesus Christus ex spiritu sancto et Maria virgine
the-Lord Jesus Christ from the-Spirit Holy and Mary the-virgin
deus verus et homo verus nasci dignatus est.
God true and man true to-be-born deigned has

§§ 257–273

257–273 · TIBERIUS TO COMMODUS

The emperors from Tiberius to Commodus are listed with their reigns and deeds: Christ's passion under Tiberius, Caligula's crimes, Claudius' conquest of Britain, Nero's fire and his killing of Peter and Paul, the destruction of Jerusalem, Trajan's eastern wars, and the Antonines.

quattuordecem residuos annos post domini adventum
fourteen remaining years after of-the-Lord the-coming
corporali praesentia in pace regnans et ipse singularem
in-bodily presence in peace reigning and himself sole
optenuit principatum et posteris eandem imperii potestatem
held rule and to-posterity the-same of-empire power
cum suo nomine Augusti derelinquens rebus excessit
with his name of-Augustus leaving from-affairs departed
humanis, successorem relinquens Tiberium prevignum suum.
human as-successor leaving Tiberius stepson his
Tiberius Augustus Caesar regnavit ann. xxiii. qui multos
Tiberius Augustus Caesar reigned years twenty-three who many
reges ad se blanditiis evocatos numquam ad propria regna
kings to himself by-blandishments summoned never to their-own kingdoms
remisit, in quibus et Archelaum Cappadocum rege. cuius
sent-back among whom also Archelaus of-the-Cappadocians king whose

et regnum, postquam defunctus est, in provinciam verso
also kingdom after died has into a-province turned
Mazacam civitatem eius de nomine suo Caesaream vocitavit.
Mazaca the-city his from name his Caesarea called
huius ergo xviii anno dominus noster Iesus Christus
of-him therefore in-the-eighteenth year Lord our Jesus Christ
sub Pontio Pilato in Iudaea carne passus est, non deitate.
under Pontius Pilate in Judea in-the-flesh suffered has not in-the-godhead
Gaius Caesar cognomento Caligula regnavit ann. iii menses x.
Gaius Caesar by-surname Caligula reigned years three months ten
hic namque Memmium Regulum coegit, ut uxorem suam sibi
he for Memmius Regulus compelled that wife his to-him
loco filiae coniugem daret strumentaque matrimonii
in-place of-a-daughter as-spouse he-should-give and-the-instruments of-marriage
ut pater conscriberet. haec et his similia perpetrans nec
as father he-should-write-up these-things and to-these like perpetrating nor
non et in templo Hierosolimitano Iovis statuam per Gaium
not also in the-temple of-Jerusalem of-Jupiter a-statue through Gaius
Petronium statuens et in Alexandria Iudeos per Flaccum
Petronius setting-up and in Alexandria the-Jews through Flaccus
Avilium praefectum oppraemens postremo a protectoribus suis
Avilius the-prefect oppressing at-last by guards his
in palatio Romae occisus est anno aetatis vicensimo nono.
in the-palace at-Rome slain was in-the-year of-age twenty ninth
Claudius dehinc huic succedens regnavit ann. xiii m.
Claudius thereafter to-him succeeding reigned years thirteen months
viiii. fecit etiam hic Claudius expeditionem in Brittania
nine made also this Claudius an-expedition into Britain
insulam, quam nemo ante Iulium Caesarem neque post eum
the-island which no-one before Julius Caesar nor after him
quisquam adire ausus fuerat. exercitum duxit ibique sine
anyone to-approach dared had an-army he-led and-there without

ullo proelio ac sanguine intra paucissimos dies plurimam
any battle and bloodshed within very-few days the-greatest
insulae partem in deditionem recepit. Orcadas autem
of-the-island part into surrender received the-Orkney moreover
insulas ultra Brittaniam in oceano positas Romano adiecit
islands beyond Britain in the-ocean placed to-the-Roman added
imperio. ac sexto quo profectus erat mensae Romae
empire and in-the-sixth in-which set-out he-had month to-Rome
repedavit ibique defunctus est annorum lxiiii.
returned and-there died has of-years sixty-four
Nero nepus Gai Caligulae regnavit ann. xiii m. viii.
Nero grandson of-Gaius Caligula reigned years thirteen months eight
tantaeque luxoriae fuit, ut frigidis et calidis lavaretur
and-of-such luxury was that in-cold and hot he-bathed
unguentis, etenim non solum quia non profuit rei publicae,
ointments for not only because not he-profited the-state public
immo obfuit nimis. nam duas legiones in Armenia cum ipsa
nay hurt-it greatly for two legions in Armenia with itself
provincia simul amisit, qui Parthico iugo servientes gravem
the-province at-once he-lost which to-the-Parthian yoke serving grave
infamiam Romanis dederunt. iuxta omne scelus et parricidium,
infamy to-the-Romans gave next-to every crime and parricide
quod in proprios parentes commiserat, addidit facinus, ut
which against his-own parents he-had-committed he-added the-deed that
ad instar Troiae Romam incenderet, manusque iniciens in
to the-likeness of-Troy Rome he-should-burn and-hands laying on
Christianos persecutionem concitat ipsosque doctores fidei
the-Christians persecution stirs-up and-very the-teachers of-the-faith
Petrum et Paulum in urbe interemit, alterum cruci figens,
Peter and Paul in the-city slew the-one to-the-cross fixing
alterum capite plectens. eoque cum dedecore regno
the-other in-the-head punishing and-him with disgrace from-the-kingdom

evulso Galba in Hiberia, Vitellius in Germania, Otho Romae
torn-out Galba in Iberia Vitellius in Germany Otho at-Rome
imperium arripuerunt. omnesque tamen celeri interitu perierunt.
the-empire seized and-all yet by-swift death perished
Vespasianus apud Iudaeam ab exercitu in regno ascitus
Vespasian in Judea by the-army to the-kingdom raised
regnavit ann. x. nam relicto filio suo Tito ad expugnationem
reigned years ten for left son his Titus for the-storming
Hierusolimorum ipse Romae profectus regnavit in pace.
of-Jerusalem himself to-Rome having-set-out reigned in peace
Titus filius Vespasiani idemque Vespasianus, debellator
Titus son of-Vespasian and-the-same Vespasian conqueror
Iudeae gentis, regnavit ann. duobus mensibus duobus. hic
of-the-Judean nation reigned years two months two he
namque secundum Ioseppi fidem undecies centena milia
for according-to of-Josephus the-credit eleven-times hundred thousand
Iudaeorum fame et gladio interemit et alia centum
of-the-Jews by-famine and by-sword killed and other hundred
milia captivorum publice vendidit. tantam multitudinem in
thousand of-captives publicly sold so-great a-multitude in
Hierosolymis autem paschalis festivitas adunaverat.
Jerusalem moreover the-paschal festival had-gathered
Domitianus frater Titi, filius Vespasiani, regnavit ann. xv
Domitian brother of-Titus son of-Vespasian reigned years fifteen
m. v tantaeque fuit superviae, ut se dominum ab
months five and-of-such was pride that himself lord by
omnibus primum appellari praeciperet multosque nobilium
all first to-be-called he-ordered and-many of-the-nobles
exilio relegans nonnullosque occidens de substantiis eorum
into-exile banishing and-some killing from substances their
aureas argenteasque sibi statuas fecit. manusque in
golden and-silver for-himself statues made and-hands on

Christianos iniciens, Iohannem apostolum et euangelistam,
the-Christians laying John the-apostle and evangelist
postquam in fervente oleo missum non potuisset extingui,
after into boiling oil thrown not he-could to-be-extinguished
Pathmo eum insulam exulem relegavit, ubi apocalypsim vidit.
to-Patmos him the-island an-exile banished where the-apocalypse he-saw
cuius crudelitatem non tolerantes Romani in palatio Romae
whose cruelty not tolerating the-Romans in the-palace at-Rome
interficere statuerunt omniaque quod constituerat inritum fore.
to-kill-him resolved and-all-things which he-had-decreed void to-be
Nerva admodum senes regnavit anno uno m. iiii. qui ut
Nerva very old reigned year one months four who as
privata vita lenis, lenior fuit in regno nec quicquam
in-private life gentle more-gentle was in the-kingdom nor anything
profuit rei publicae, nisi quod Traianum se vivente elegit.
profited the-state public except that Trajan himself living he-chose
Traianus pene omnium imperatorum potior regnavit an.
Trajan almost of-all the-emperors the-more-capable reigned years
xviii m. vi. hic enim de Dacis Scythisque triumphavit
eighteen months six he for over the-Dacians and-Scythians triumphed
Hiberosque et Sauromatas Osroenos Arabas Bosforanos
and-the-Iberians and Sauromatians Osrhoenians Arabs Bosporans
Colchos edomuit, postquam ad feritatem prorupissent.
Colchians tamed after to fierceness they-had-burst-out
Seleuciam et Tesifontem Babyloniamque pervasit et tenuit.
Seleucia and Ctesiphon and-Babylon he-overran and held
nec non et in mari rubro classem, unde Indiae fines
nor not also on the-sea Red a-fleet whence of-India the-borders
vastaret, instituit ibique suam statuam dedicavit et
he-might-lay-waste established and-there his statue dedicated and
post tot labores apud Seleuciam Isauriae profluvio ventris
after so-many labors at Seleucia of-Isauria by-a-flux of-the-belly

extinctus est anno aetatis lxiii. ossaque eius in urna
perished was in-the-year of-age sixty-third and-the-bones his in an-urn
aurea conlocata et in foro sub columna posita solusque
golden placed and in the-forum under the-column set and-alone
omnium imperatorum intra urbem sepultus.
of-all the-emperors within the-city buried
Adrianus Italicae Spania natus consubrinae Traiani filius
Hadrian at-Italica in-Spain born of-a-cousin of-Trajan the-son
regnavit ann. xxi. hic pene nil profuit rei publicae,
reigned years twenty-one he almost nothing profited the-state public
nisi quod dudum subversas Alexandriam et Hierusolymam
except that long-since overthrown Alexandria and Jerusalem
propriis reparavit expensis nonnullisque in locis publica relaxavit
at-his-own restored expense and-some in places public remitted
tributa. Hierusolimam si quidem suo de nomine Eliam
tributes Jerusalem if indeed his from name Aelia
appellans nulli Iudaeorum ingredi permisit. nam claret eum
calling to-none of-the-Jews to-enter he-permitted for it-is-clear him
invidum factis Traiani, quia mox ei successit, ilico nulla
envious of-the-deeds of-Trajan since soon to-him he-succeeded on-the-spot no
faciente necessitate exercitum ad se revocans Mesopotamiam
making necessity the-army to himself recalling Mesopotamia
Assyriamque et Armeniam Persis reliquid, Eufratem
and-Assyria and Armenia to-the-Persians left the-Euphrates
fluvium finem terminumque inter Parthos Romanosque
river the-end and-boundary between the-Parthians and-Romans
constituens. quo regnante Aquila Ponticus scripturas de
establishing who reigning Aquila of-Pontus the-scriptures from
Hebreo transtulit. Adrianus morbo apud Baias faciente obiit.
Hebrew translated Hadrian by-disease at Baiae making-it died

Antoninus cognomento Pius cum suis liberis Aurelio et
Antoninus by-surname Pius with his children Aurelius and
Lucio regnavit ann. xxii m. iii. et si non profuit
Lucius reigned years twenty-two months three and if not profited
quicquam Antoninus, nullam tamen lesionem eius res
at-all Antoninus no yet injury his the-state
publica sensit. defunctus est duodecimo urbis miliario, in
public felt died has at-the-twelfth of-the-city milestone in
villa sua Lorio nuncupata, anno aetatis septuagesimo sexto.
villa his Lorium named in-the-year of-age seventieth sixth
Marcus Antoninus, qui et Verus, et Lucius Aurelius
Marcus Antoninus who also Verus and Lucius Aurelius
Commodus affinitate coniuncti aequo iure imperium
Commodus by-kinship joined with-equal right the-empire
administraverunt. e quibus iunior contra Parthos arma
administered of whom the-younger against the-Parthians arms
movens magna egit et fortia Seleuciamque urbem eorum
moving great-things did and brave and-Seleucia city their
cum quadringenta milia pugnatorum cepit, e quibus cum
with four-hundred thousand of-fighters took over which with
magna gloria triumphavit. senior vero multis bellis sepe
great glory he-triumphed the-elder but in-many wars often
interfuit sepiusque per duces suos triumphum revexit,
took-part and-more-often through generals his a-triumph brought-back
maxime de gente Quadorum. sed unus in Alteno apoplexiam
especially over the-nation of-the-Quadi but one at Altinum apoplexy
passus defunctus est, alter in Pannonia morbo periit.
having-suffered died has the-other in Pannonia by-disease perished

Commodus, filius Antonini, regnavit ann. xiii magnumque
Commodus son of-Antoninus reigned years thirteen and-a-great
triumphum de gente revexit Germanica et post haec
triumph over the-nation brought-back German and after these-things
in domo Vestiliani strangulatus defecit.
in the-house of-Vestilianus strangled perished

§§ 274–295

274–295 · PERTINAX TO CARINUS

The emperors from Pertinax to Carinus pass in quick succession. Severus wins in the East and Britain; new Greek versions of the scriptures appear; Maximinus the Goth persecutes Christians; Valerian is captured by Shapur, and under Gallienus the empire is ravaged; Aurelian takes Odenathus' widow, ruler of the East; Carus dies by lightning.

Helvius Pertinax maior sexagenario cum praefecturam ageret,
Helvius Pertinax older than-sixty when the-prefecture he-held
ex senatus consulto imperator creatus regnavit m. vi.
by of-the-senate decree emperor created reigned months six
hic etenim obsecrante senatu, ut uxorem suam Augustam
he for begging the-senate that wife his Augusta
filiumque Caesarem appellaret, 'sufficere', inquid, 'debet, quod
and-son Caesar he-should-call to-suffice he-says it-ought that
ego ipse invitus regnavi, cum non merer'. nimis aequissimus
I myself unwilling have-reigned since not I-deserved too most-just
omniumque communis, quem Iulianus iuris peritus in palatio
and-of-all common whom Julianus of-law skilled in palace
eius peremit ipseque postea a Severo occisus est.
his slew and-himself afterward by Severus slain was

Severus genere Afer Tripolitanus, regnavit an. xviii
Severus by-race an-African of-Tripolis reigned years eighteen
ultusque occisionem Pertinacis in Iuliano, se quoque
and-avenged the-killing of-Pertinax on Julianus himself also
Pertinacem appellavit. hic etenim Parthos et Adiabennos
Pertinax called he for the-Parthians and Adiabenians
contra Romaniam insurgentes mirabiliter superavit. Arabas
against Romania rising wonderfully overcame the-Arabs
quoque interiores ita cecidit, ut regionem eorum Romanam
also inner so he-cut-down that the-region their a-Roman
provinciam faceret. sic quoque triumphans Parthicus Arabicus
province he-made so also triumphing Parthicus Arabicus
et Adiabennicus dictus est. hoc regnante Samaritis
and Adiabenicus called was this-one reigning from-the-Samaritans
quidam Symmachus Iudaeorum factus proselitus item divinas
a-certain Symmachus of-the-Jews become a-proselyte likewise the-divine
scripturas ex Hebreo sermone Greca lingua transfudit
scriptures from the-Hebrew speech into-the-Greek tongue translated
suamque condidit editionem. post quem pene tertio
and-his founded edition after whom almost in-the-third
anno secutus Theodotion Ponticus item suam in eodem
year following Theodotion of-Pontus likewise his in the-same
opere editionem scripturarum conposuit. Brittanicum bellum
work edition of-the-scriptures composed a-British war
exortum, unde Severus mirabiliter triumphavit.
arose whence Severus wonderfully triumphed
Antoninus cognomento Caracalla, filius Severi, regnavit ann.
Antoninus by-surname Caracalla son of-Severus reigned years
vii. nam ideo hoc nomen nanctus est, eo quod eiusdem
seven for for-this this name obtained he-has in-that that of-the-same
vestium genere Romae de manubiis erogans sibi nomen
of-garments a-kind at-Rome from the-spoils distributing to-himself the-name

Caracalla et vesti Antoniana dederit. sub hoc iterum
Caracalla and to-the-garment Antonian gave under this-one again
editio scripturarum divinarum, quam quintam nominamus, in
an-edition of-the-scriptures divine which the-fifth we-name at
Hiericho in doleo reperta est. hic etenim imperator, dum contra
Jericho in a-jar found was this for emperor while against
Persas movit procinctum, Osroene Edessa defunctus est.
the-Persians moved his-army in-Osrhoene at-Edessa died has
Macrinus praefecturam agens praetorianam imperator creatus
Macrinus the-prefecture holding praetorian emperor created
est regnavitque anno uno occiditurque Archilaide.
was and-reigned year one and-is-killed at-Archelais
Marcus Aurelius Antonini Caracallae filius templique
Marcus Aurelius of-Antoninus Caracalla son and-of-the-temple
Heliogabali sacerdos imperator factus regnavit ann. iiii.
of-Heliogabalus priest emperor made reigned years four
Emmaus in Iudaea constructa et Nicopolim nominata. tunc
Emmaus in Judea built and Nicopolis named then
et Africanus egregius temporum scriptor pro ipsa legationem
also Africanus distinguished of-the-times writer for it an-embassy
suscepit ad principem. sed imperator, dum nullum genus
undertook to the-emperor but the-emperor while no kind
obscenitatis in regno suo quod non faceret praetermittebat,
of-obscenity in reign his which not he-did he-omitted
occisus est tumultu militari.
slain was in-a-tumult military
Alexander Mamae filius ignobilis fortunae existens adhuc
Alexander of-Mamaea son of-ignoble fortune being still
iuvenis regni moderatione suscepit moxque contra Xersen
young of-the-kingdom the-governance took-up and-soon against Xerxes
regem Persarum arma arripiens mirabiliter de Parthorum spoliis
king of-the-Persians arms seizing wonderfully over of-the-Parthians the-spoils

triumphavit. sub huius item imperio in Nicopolim Actiacam, id
triumphed under his likewise rule at Nicopolis of-Actium that
est Epiro, editio quae sexta dicitur divinarum scripturarum in
is in-Epirus the-edition which sixth is-called of-the-divine scriptures in
dolio reperta est. ipseque Mogontiaco tumulto occiditur militari,
a-jar found was and-himself at-Mainz in-a-tumult is-killed military
cui successit Maximinus ex corpore militari in regno.
whom succeeded Maximinus from the-body military to the-kingdom
Maximinus genere Gothico, patre Micca Ababaque Alana
Maximinus by-race Gothic of-father Micca and-Ababa an-Alan
genitus matre, sola militum voluntate ad imperium
begotten mother alone of-the-soldiers by-the-will to the-empire
concedens, bellum adversus Germanos feliciter gessit indeque
attaining a-war against the-Germans successfully waged and-thence
revertens, contra Christianos movens intestino proelio, vix
returning against the-Christians moving in-internal battle scarcely
tres annos regnans, Aquileia a Puppieno occisus est.
three years reigning at-Aquileia by Pupienus slain was
Gordianus ammodo puer imperator factus vix regnavit
Gordian quite a-boy emperor made scarcely reigned
sex annos. hic etenim mox Romae ingressus est, ilico
six years he for soon to-Rome entered has at-once
Puppienum et Albinum, qui Maximino occidentes tyrannidem
Pupienus and Albinus who Maximinus killing tyranny
arripuissent, occidit Ianumque geminum aperiens ad Orientem
had-seized killed and-Janus twin opening to the-East
profectus Parthis intulit bellum indeque cum victoria
having-set-out on-the-Parthians brought war and-thence with victory
revertens fraude Philippi praefecti praetorii haut longe
returning by-the-fraud of-Philip the-prefect of-the-praetorium not far
a Romano solo interfectus est.
from the-Roman soil killed was

Philippus in imperio impudenter ingressus est regnavit ann.
Philip into the-empire shamelessly entered has reigned years
vii. hic etenim filium suum idem Philippum consortem
seven he for son his the-same Philip partner
regni fecit ipseque primus omnium imperatorum Christianus
of-the-reign made and-himself first of-all the-emperors Christian
effectus est tertioque anno imperii sui festivitatem Romanae
become has and-in-the-third year of-empire his the-festival of-the-Roman
urbis, millesimo anno quod expleverat, caelebravit
city in-the-thousandth year which it-had-completed celebrated
urbemque nominis sui in Thracia, que dicebatur Pulpudeva,
and-a-city of-name his in Thrace which was-called Pulpudeva
Philippopolim reconstruens nominavit.
Philippopolis rebuilding named
Decius e Pannonia inferiore Budalie natus occisis Philippis
Decius from Pannonia lower at-Budalia born slain the-Philips
utrisque regnavit an. uno et mensibus tribus. armaque in
both reigned year one and months three and-arms against
Christianos erecta ob Philipporum nominis odium. ipse
the-Christians raised for of-the-Philips name hatred he-himself
bellantibus Getis cum filio suo crudeli morte occubuit Abritto.
warring the-Getae with son his by-a-cruel death fell at-Abrittus
Gallus et Volusianus regnaverunt ann. ii m. iiii. hi cum
Gallus and Volusianus reigned years two months four these when
adversum Emilianum, qui in Moesia res novas moliebatur,
against Aemilianus who in Moesia things new was-plotting
ex urbe profecti essent, in Foro Flamminii interfecti sunt.
from the-city set-out had at the-Forum of-Flaminius killed were
Emilianus vero tertio mense invasae tyrannidis extinctus
Aemilianus but in-the-third month of-the-seized tyranny killed
est.
was

Valerianus et Gallienus, dum unus in Retia a militibus,
Valerian and Gallienus while one in Raetia by the-soldiers
alter Romae a senatu in imperio levarentur, regnaverunt
the-other at-Rome by the-senate to empire were-raised reigned
an. xv. Valerianus si quidem in Christianos persecutione
years fifteen Valerian if indeed against the-Christians persecution
commota statim a Sapore rege Persarum capitur ibique
stirred at-once by Shapur king of-the-Persians is-taken and-there
servitute miserabili consenescit. Gallienus illius exitum cernens
in-servitude wretched grows-old Gallienus his end seeing
Christianis pacem dedit. sed dum nimis in regno lasciviret
to-the-Christians peace gave but while too-much in the-reign he-wantoned
nec virile aliquid ageret, Parthi Syriam Ciliciamque
nor manly anything did the-Parthians Syria and-Cilicia
vastaverunt, Germani et Alani Gallias depraedantes Ravennam
laid-waste the-Germans and Alans the-Gauls plundering to-Ravenna
usque venerunt, Greciam Gothi vastaverunt, Quadi et
up-to came Greece the-Goths laid-waste the-Quadi and
Sarmatae Pannonias invaserunt, Germani rursus Spanias
Sarmatians the-Pannonias invaded the-Germans again the-Spains
occupaverunt. idcirco Gallienus Mediolani occisus est.
occupied therefore Gallienus at-Milan slain was
Claudius regnavit ann. i m. viiii. qui Gothos iam
Claudius reigned years one months nine who the-Goths already
per xv annos Illiricum Macedoniamque vastantes bello
through fifteen years Illyricum and-Macedonia laying-waste in-war
adortus incredibili strage delevit, scilicet ut in curia
having-attacked with-incredible slaughter destroyed namely so-that in the-senate-house
ei clypeus aureus et in Capitolio statua aurea poneretur.
to-him a-shield golden and in the-Capitol a-statue golden should-be-set
occisusque Sirmium est.
and-slain at-Sirmium was

Post cuius mortem Quintilius frater eius a senatu Augustus
after whose death Quintillus brother his by the-senate Augustus
appellatus octavo decimo imperii sui diae Aquilaeia occisus
called on-the-eighth tenth of-empire his day at-Aquileia slain
est.
was
Aurelianus Dacia Ripense oriundus regnavit an. v m. vi.
Aurelian of-Dacia Riparian sprung reigned years five months six
qui mox Tetricum apud Catalaunos prodente exercitum suum
who soon Tetricus at the-Catalauni betraying army his
Gallias recepit expeditioneque facta in Danubium Gothos magnis
the-Gauls recovered and-an-expedition made to the-Danube the-Goths in-great
proeliis profligavit cultoresque divini nominis persecutus est.
battles routed and-the-worshipers of-the-divine name persecuted has
Odenathus Palmyrenus ante ipsum collecta rusticorum manu
Odenathus of-Palmyra before him gathered of-rustics a-band
Persas de Mesopotamia expellens ipse ea loca invaserat.
the-Persians from Mesopotamia expelling himself those places had-invaded
quem uxor sua occisum Orientis tenebat imperium: contra
whom wife his slain of-the-East held the-empire against
quam expiditionem suscipiens Aurelianus apud Hymmas vicino
whom an-expedition undertaking Aurelian at Immae near
Antiochiae superavit Romaeque in triumpho suo vivam perduxit
to-Antioch overcame-her and-to-Rome in triumph his alive brought
ac dehinc secundo arripiens expeditionem inter Byzantium
and thereafter a-second seizing expedition between Byzantium
et Heracleam in Caeno Frurio viae veteris occiditur.
and Heraclea at Caeno- Phrurium of-the-road old is-killed

Tacitus regnavit ann. vi. quo occiso apud Pontem suscepit
Tacitus reigned years six who slain at Pontus took-up
imperium Florianus tenuitque diebus lxxxviii. similiterque et
the-empire Florianus and-held-it for-days eighty-eight and-likewise also
ipse apud Tharso interfectus est.
himself at Tarsus killed was
Probus regnavit an. vi m. iiii. hic etenim Gallos et Spanos
Probus reigned years six months four he for the-Gauls and Spaniards
vineas habere permisit. quo tempore Saturninus magister
vineyards to-have permitted at-which time Saturninus master
militum, dum ad restaurationem Antiochenae civitatis missus
of-the-soldiers while for the-restoration of-the-Antiochene city sent
fuisset, arrepta ibidem tyrannide mox oppressus est et
he-had-been seized there tyranny soon crushed was and
Appamiae interfectus. ipse quoque imperator Probus tumultu
at-Apamea killed himself also the-emperor Probus in-a-tumult
militari Sermio in turre quae vocatur Ferrata occisus est.
military at-Sirmium in the-tower which is-called Iron slain was
Carus cum filiis Carino et Numeriano regnavit an. ii,
Carus with his-sons Carinus and Numerian reigned years two
oriundus Narbona Galliae. hic admirabiliter pene omnem
sprung from-Narbo of-Gaul he admirably almost all
Persidam vastatam novilissimas eorum urbes occupavit Cochem
Persia laid-waste the-most-noble their cities occupied Coche
et Ctesifontem. bellum Sarmaticum feliciter superavit. ipse
and Ctesiphon the-war Sarmatian successfully overcame himself
quoque Carus super Tigridem amnem dum castra metaret,
also Carus on the-Tigris river while a-camp he-was-pitching
fulmine ictus occubuit.
by-lightning struck fell

Numerianus autem oculorum dolore tentus dum in lecticula
Numerian moreover of-the-eyes by-pain held while in a-litter
veheretur, soceri sui Apri insidiis occisus fetore
he-was-carried of-father-in-law his Aper by-the-plots slain by-the-stench
cadaveris vix tertio die est agnitus. Carinus vero apud
of-the-corpse scarcely on-the-third day was recognized Carinus but at
Margum in proelio victus occiditur.
Margus in battle conquered is-killed

§§ 296–312

296–312 · DIOCLETIAN TO VALENS

Diocletian takes Maximian as colleague and two Caesars, who defeat the Persians and rebels. A lacuna in the text falls at the persecution. Julian dies on his Persian campaign, Jovian cedes Nisibis, and Valentinian and Valens divide the empire while Valens, an Arian, persecutes the orthodox.

Dioclitianus Delmata, scribe filius, imperator electus regnavit
Diocletian a-Dalmatian of-a-scribe son emperor chosen reigned
ann. xx. hic etenim mox in regno levatus est, ilico
years twenty he for soon to the-kingdom raised was at-once
Aprum in militum contione percussit, iurans sine suo scelere
Aper in of-the-soldiers the-assembly struck swearing without his crime
illum Numerianum interemisse. et mox in consortio suo
him Numerian to-have-killed and soon into partnership his
Maximianum Herculium ascivit. qui Maximianus rusticorum
Maximian Herculius took who Maximian of-rustics
multitudine oppressa, quos Bacaudas dicunt, pacem Galliis
the-multitude crushed whom Bagaudae they-call peace to-the-Gauls
reddidit. quo tempore Carausius sumpta purpura Brittanias
restored at-which time Carausius taken the-purple the-Britains

occupaverat, Narseus rex Persarum Horienti bellum intulerat,
had-occupied Narses king of-the-Persians on-the-East war had-brought
Quinquegentiani Africam infestaverant, Achilleus Egyptum
the-Quinquegentiani Africa had-infested Achilleus Egypt
invaserat. ob quae Constantius et Galerius Maximianus
had-invaded for which-things Constantius and Galerius Maximian
Caesares adsumuntur in regno. quorum Constantius, Claudii
as-Caesars are-taken in the-kingdom of-whom Constantius of-Claudius
ex filia nepus fuit: Galerius in Dacia non longe a Serdica
from a-daughter grandson was Galerius in Dacia not far from Serdica
natus. atque ut eos Dioclitianus etiam adfinitate coniungeret,
born and that them Diocletian also by-kinship might-join
Constantius prevignam Herculii Theodoram accepit, ex qua
Constantius the-stepdaughter of-Herculius Theodora received from whom
et sex liberos procreavit: Galerius autem Valeriam Dioclitiani
also six children he-begot Galerius moreover Valeria of-Diocletian
filiam accepit, utrique pristino matrimonio repudiantes.
the-daughter received both their-former marriage repudiating
Carporum si quidem gens tunc devicta et in Romanum
of-the-Carpi if indeed the-nation then conquered and into the-Roman
solum translata est. tunc etenim primus omnium imperatorum
soil transferred was then for first of-all the-emperors
Dioclitianus adorari se ut deum praecepit et gemmas
Diocletian to-be-adored himself as a-god ordered and gems
vestibus calciamentisque inseruit diademaque in capite, cum
in-his-clothes and-shoes inserted and-a-diadem on his-head when
ante eum omnes clamidem tantum purpuream, ut a privatis
before him all a-cloak only purple that from private-men
discernerentur, habebant et ut ceteri iudices salutabantur.
they-might-be-distinguished had and as other judges were-saluted
adsumpta ergo unusquisque principum expeditione Dioclitianus
taken therefore each of-the-princes an-expedition Diocletian

Aegypti tyrannum octavo mense devictum provinciam cunctam
of-Egypt the-tyrant in-the-eighth month conquered the-province whole
subegit. Maximianus Herculius in Africa Quinquegentianos
subdued Maximian Herculius in Africa the-Quinquegentiani
exsuperavit. Constantius iuxta Lingonas una die lx milia
overcame Constantius near the-Lingones in-one day sixty thousand
Alamannorum cecidit. Galerius Maximianus victus primo
of-the-Alamanni cut-down Galerius Maximian conquered in-the-first
proelio a Narseo ante carpentum Dioclitiani purpuratus
battle by Narses before the-carriage of-Diocletian clad-in-purple
cucurrit. qua verecundia conpunctus secundo viriliter
ran by-which shame stung in-the-second manfully
dimicavit, superavit Narseum, uxores eius abegit ac liberos,
fought overcame Narses wives his drove-off and children
et condigno honore a Dioclitiano susceptus est. post quam
and with-fitting honor by Diocletian received was after which
victoriam mirabiliter Dioclitianus et Maximianus Romae
victory wonderfully Diocletian and Maximian at-Rome
triumphaverunt antecedentibus sibi liberis uxoribusque
triumphed going-before themselves the-children and-wives
regis Persarum praedaque illa ingenti gentium diversarum.
of-the-king of-the-Persians and-booty that huge of-nations diverse
sic quoque concitata persecutione in Christianos Dioclitianus
so also stirred persecution against the-Christians Diocletian
∗∗∗ Cappadociamque defunctus est Constantius.
(lacuna) and-Cappadocia died has Constantius
Iulianus apostata regnavit an. uno m. viii, relictaque
Julian the-apostate reigned year one months eight and-abandoned
Christianitate ad idolorum cultura conversus est multosque
Christianity to of-idols the-worship turned is and-many
blanda persecutione inliciens ad sacrificandum idolis conpulit.
by-a-coaxing persecution enticing to sacrificing to-idols compelled

ipse si quidem vir egregius et rei publicae necessarius
himself if indeed a-man excellent and to-the-state public necessary
Parthis ingenti apparatu intulit bellum. ubi proficiscens
on-the-Parthians with-huge apparatus brought war where setting-out
Christianorum post victoriam sanguinem diis suis votavit
of-the-Christians after victory the-blood to-gods his vowed
nonnullaque Parthorum oppida in deditione accepit multaque
and-some of-the-Parthians towns into surrender received and-many-things
vi populatus est, castraque aliquandiu apud Ctesifontem
by-force ravaged has and-camp for-some-time at Ctesiphon
habuit. unde egressus, dolo cuiusdam transfugae in
held whence having-gone-out by-the-guile of-a-certain deserter into
deserta perductus, cum vi sitis, ardore solis confectus
the-desert led when by-the-force of-thirst by-the-heat of-the-sun exhausted
periret exercitus, ipse tantorum discriminum anxius, dum per
perished the-army himself of-such dangers anxious while through
vasta deserti incautius evagatur, ab obvio quodam hostium
the-wastes of-the-desert too-incautiously wanders by a-chance certain of-the-enemies
equite conto ilia percussus interiit anno aetatis
horseman with-a-pike in-the-flank struck perished in-the-year of-age
suae trecesimo tertio. post quem sequenti diae ab exercitu
his thirtieth third after whom on-the-following day by the-army
Iobianus primicerius domesticorum in regno ascitus est.
Jovian chief of-the-household-guards to the-kingdom raised was
Iobianus regnavit menses octo. qui mox rerum necessitate
Jovian reigned months eight who soon of-affairs by-necessity
conpulsus Nitzibim et magnam Mesopotamiae partem Sapori
compelled Nisibis and great of-Mesopotamia part to-Shapur
Parthorum regi contradedit ipseque odore prunarum
of-the-Parthians king handed-over and-himself by-the-smell of-coals
offucatus defunctus est Dadasthanae anno aetatis xxxiii.
choked died has at-Dadastana in-the-year of-age thirty-third

Valentinianus et Valens regnaverunt ann. xiii m. v. nam
Valentinian and Valens reigned years thirteen months five for
Pannones erant Cibalenses utrimque germani. in Nicomedia
Pannonians they-were Cibalenses on-both-sides brothers in Nicomedia
tribunatum Valentinianus agebat, qui imperator creatus fratrem
the-tribunate Valentinian was-holding who emperor created his-brother
Valentem consortem regni adsumpsit. ipse vero egregius et
Valens as-partner of-the-kingdom took he but excellent and
Aureliani similis moribus, nisi quod severitatem eius nimiam
to-Aurelian like in-character except that severity his excessive
et parcitatem quidam crudelitatem et avaritiam causabantur.
and frugality some cruelty and avarice alleged
relicto germano Orientali in regno ipse Esperium tenuit. quo
left his-brother the-Eastern in kingdom himself the-West held at-which
tunc regnante alter Valentinianus in Brittania tyrannidem
then reigning another Valentinian in Britain tyranny
adsumens in continenti oppressus est. Constantinopolim
assuming on the-continent crushed was at-Constantinople
quoque Procopius quidam contra Valentem insurgens nihilque
also Procopius a-certain against Valens rising and-nothing
praevalens urbe egreditur, et in Frygiam Salutariam
prevailing from-the-city goes-out and in Phrygia Salutaris
tyrannizans extinctus est, multique partis Procopianae caesi
tyrannizing killed was and-many of-the-party Procopian cut-down
atque proscripti. Valens ab Eudoxio Arrianorum episcopo suasus
and proscribed Valens by Eudoxius of-the-Arians the-bishop persuaded
et baptizatus contra orthodoxos infestus insurgit. Gratianum
and baptized against the-orthodox hostile rises Gratian
filium suum Valentinianus Ambianis imperatorem constituit,
son his Valentinian at-Amiens emperor established
quem habuit de Severa priore iugale et contra Saxones
whom he-had from Severa former wife and against the-Saxons

Burgutionesque, qui plus lxxx milia armatorum primum
and-Burgundians who more eighty thousand of-armed-men first
Reni in limbo castra metassent, movit procinctum, sed
of-the-Rhine on the-border a-camp had-measured moved his-army but
apoplexia subito et sanguinis eruptione Bregitione defunctus est.
by-apoplexy suddenly and of-blood an-eruption at-Brigetio died has
Tunc Gratianus Valentiniano fratre de Iustina secunda
then Gratian Valentinian his-brother from Justina second
uxore natu in regno consortem adsumit. nam Valentinianus
wife born into the-kingdom as-partner takes for Valentinian
senior dudum laudante Severa uxore sua pulchritudine Iustinae
the-elder formerly praising Severa wife his the-beauty of-Justina
sibi eam sociavit in matrimonio legesque propter illam
to-himself her joined in marriage and-laws because-of her
concessit, ut omnes viri, qui voluissent, inpune bina
granted that all men who should-have-wished with-impunity two
matrimonia susciperent, quia ideo populosas fore gentes,
marriages might-undertake because therefore populous to-be the-nations
quia hoc apud eos solemne est et multarum uxorum unus
because this among them customary is and of-many wives one
maritus auditur. acceptaque ergo, ut diximus, Valentinianus
husband is-heard-of taken therefore as we-have-said Valentinian
Iustina edidit ex ipsa quattuor filios, Valentinianum supra
Justina begot from her four children Valentinian above
dictum imperatorem et Gratam Iustamque et Gallam. de
said emperor and Grata and-Justa and Galla from
qua Galla dehinc Theodosius imperator Flacilla defuncta,
which Galla thereafter Theodosius the-emperor Flacilla having-died
quae Archadium Honoriumque pepererat, Placidiam generavit,
who Arcadius and-Honorius had-borne Placidia begot
quae mater fuit moderni Valentiniani iunioris imperatoris.
who mother was of-the-present Valentinian the-younger emperor

sed nos ad propositum redeamus. Valens imperator lege data,
but we to the-purpose let-us-return Valens the-emperor a-law given
ut monachi militarent, nolentesque iussit interfici.
that monks should-serve-as-soldiers and-the-unwilling he-ordered to-be-killed
quando et Theodosius Theodosii imperatoris postea pater
when also Theodosius of-Theodosius of-the-emperor afterward the-father
multique nobilium occisi sunt Valentis insania. Gratianus
and-many of-the-nobles slain were of-Valens by-the-madness Gratian
imperator Alamannorum plus xxx milia apud oppidum
the-emperor of-the-Alamanni more thirty thousand at the-town
Argentarium Gallie in bello prostravit Galliasque pacavit.
Argentaria of-Gaul in war laid-low and-the-Gauls pacified

§§ 313–330

313–330 · THE HUNS, ADRIANOPLE, AND THEODOSIUS

Fleeing the Huns, the Goths are received into the empire, starve, rebel, and burn Valens in a hut. Theodosius restores the state and defeats two usurpers. Under Arcadius and Honorius, Rufinus, Gildo, and Stilicho betray the state, Alaric takes Rome, and Boniface lets the Vandals into Africa.

gens Hunnorum super Gothos inruens certos ex ipsis
the-nation of-the-Huns upon the-Goths rushing certain of them
subiugat, alios fugat. qui venientes in Romania sine
subjugates others puts-to-flight who coming into Romania without
armorum suscepti depositione per avaritiam ducis Maximi
of-arms received the-laying-down through the-avarice of-the-general Maximus
fame conpulsi rebellare coacti sunt, superatisque Romanis
by-famine driven to-rebel forced were and-overcome the-Romans
in congressione funduntur in Tracias. contra quos Valens
in the-encounter are-poured into the-Thracias against whom Valens

ab Antiocia exire conpulsus in Thraciam proficiscitur
from Antioch to-go-out compelled into Thrace sets-out
ibique lacrimabili bello commisso imperator sagitta
and-there a-lamentable war joined the-emperor by-an-arrow
saucius in casa deportatur vilissima, ubi supervenientibus
wounded into a-hut is-carried very-mean where coming-up
Gothis igneque supposito incendio concrematus est. Gothi
the-Goths and-fire set-under by-the-fire burned-up was the-Goths
vero occiso imperatore iam securi ad urbem properant
but slain the-emperor now secure to the-city hasten
Constantinopolitanam, ubi tunc Dominica Augusta Valentis
Constantinopolitan where then Domnica Augusta of-Valens
uxor multa pecunia plebi largita ab urbis
the-wife much money to-the-commons having-lavished from of-the-city
vastatione hostes submovit regnumque cognatis, usque
the-devastation the-enemies removed and-the-kingdom for-his-kinsmen all-the-way
dum ille Theodosium ordinasset, fideliter viriliterque servavit.
until he Theodosius had-appointed faithfully and-manfully kept
Theodosius Spanus, Italicae divi Traiani civitatis a
Theodosius a-Spaniard of-Italica of-the-divine Trajan city by
Gratiano Augusto apud Sirmium post Valentis interitum
Gratian Augustus at Sirmium after of-Valens the-death
factus est imperator regnavitque an. xvii; veniensque
made was emperor and-reigned years seventeen and-coming
Thessalonica ab Acolio sancto episcopo baptizatus est
to-Thessalonica by Acholius the-holy bishop baptized was
ammodumque religiosus ecclesiae enituit propagator rei
and-very religious of-the-church shone-forth as-propagator of-the-state
publiceque defensor eximius. nam Hunnos et Gothos, qui
and-public defender outstanding for the-Huns and the-Goths who
eam sub Valente defetigassent, diversis proeliis vicit atque
it under Valens had-wearied in-diverse battles he-conquered and

a prava vastatione conpescuit. cum Persis quoque petitus
from wicked devastation restrained with the-Persians also asked
pacem pepigit. Maximum autem tyrannum, qui Gratianum
peace he-made Maximus moreover the-tyrant who Gratian
interficerat et sibi Gallias vindicabat, apud Mediolanum,
had-killed and to-himself the-Gauls claimed at Milan
una cum Valentiniano imperatore adgrediens ab Oriente,
together with Valentinian the-emperor attacking from the-East
clausit cepit occidit. Eugenium quoque tyrannum atque
shut-in took killed Eugenius also the-tyrant and
Arbogasten divino auxilio praeditus vicit deletis eorum
Arbogast by-divine help endowed he-conquered destroyed of-them
decem milibus pugnatorum. hic etenim Eugenius confisus
ten thousand of-fighters this for Eugenius trusting
viribus Arbogasti postquam apud Viennam Valentinianum
in-the-forces of-Arbogast after at Vienne Valentinian
extincxerat, regnum invasit, sed mox simul cum vita
he-had-destroyed the-kingdom invaded but soon together with life
imperium perdidit. nam occiso Arbogaste desperans sua
the-empire lost for slain Arbogast despairing with-his
se manu peremit. omnesque inimicos Theodosius superatos
himself hand killed and-all enemies Theodosius overcome
in pace rebus humanis apud Mediolanum excessit utramque
in peace from-affairs human at Milan departed both
rem publicam utrisque filiis quietam relinquens. corpus eius
the-state public to-both sons quiet leaving body his
eodem anno Constantinopolim adlatum atque sepultum.
in-the-same year to-Constantinople brought and buried
Archadius et Honorius fratres filii Theodosii imperatoris
Arcadius and Honorius brothers sons of-Theodosius of-the-emperor
utrumque imperium divisis tantum sedibus tenere coeperunt,
both empire with-divided only seats to-hold began

id est Archadius senior Constantinopolitanam urbem,
that is Arcadius the-elder the-Constantinopolitan city
Honorius vero Romanam. tunc Rufinus patricius Archadio
Honorius but the-Roman then Rufinus the-patrician for-Arcadius
principi insidias tendens Halaricum Gothorum regem, ut
the-prince plots laying Alaric of-the-Goths king that
Grecias devastaret, missis clam pecuniis invitavit. porro
the-Greeces he-should-lay-waste sent secretly moneys invited moreover
detectus Rufinus ab Italiae militibus et Archadio cum Gaina
detected Rufinus by of-Italy the-soldiers and to-Arcadius with Gainas
comite missus, ante portas urbis detruncatus est caputque
the-count sent before the-gates of-the-city beheaded was and-head
eius et dextera manus Constantinopolim ad ludibrium
his and right hand to-Constantinople for mockery
circumductum uxoremque eius exulatam opes cunctas
led-around and-wife his exiled the-wealth all
Eutropius spado promeruit. Gildo tunc Africae comis a
Eutropius the-eunuch earned Gildo then of-Africa count by
Theodosio dudum ordinatus, ac si iuvenilem regnum utrumque
Theodosius long-ago appointed as if youthful the-kingdom both
despiciens, sibi velle coepit Africam optinere et a fratre
despising for-himself to-wish began Africa to-hold and by brother
proprio Mascezel dum se vidisset detectum oppressionique
his-own Mascezel when himself he-had-seen detected and-to-overthrow
vicinum, propria se manu peremit. Gaina vero supra
near with-his-own himself hand killed Gainas but above
nominatus comis Constantinopolim civile bellum commovens
named the-count at-Constantinople civil war stirring
totam urbem igni ferroque turbavit fugiensque Hellisponto
the-whole city with-fire and-sword troubled and-fleeing on-the-Hellespont
piratico ritu vivebat. contra quem navali proelio dato multi
in-piratical manner lived against whom a-naval battle given many

Gothorum eius extincti. ipse quoque bello evadens mox
of-the-Goths his killed himself also from-the-war escaping soon
tamen capite plectitur. post cuius oppressionem Isauri
yet with-the-head is-punished after whose overthrow the-Isaurians
per montem Tauri discursantes ingens dispendium rei
through the-mount Taurus ranging huge loss to-the-state
publicae inportarunt. contra quos Narbazaicus directus maius
public brought against whom Narbazaicus sent greater
continuo rependit incommodum. Hesperia vero plaga in
at-once repaid harm the-Western but region in
regno Honorii imperatoris primum Radagaisus Scytha cum
the-reign of-Honorius of-the-emperor first Radagaisus the-Scythian with
ducenta milia suorum inundavit. quem Huldin et Sarus
two-hundred thousand of-his flooded whom Huldin and Sarus
Hunnorum Gothorumque reges superantes omnes captivos,
of-the-Huns and-of-the-Goths kings overcoming all the-captives
quos retulerant, singulis aureis vendiderunt. Stilico vero
whom they-had-brought-back for-single gold-pieces sold Stilicho but
comis, cuius duae filiae Maria et Hermantia singulae
the-count whose two daughters Maria and Thermantia each
uxores Honorii principis fuere et utraeque virgines sunt
wives of-Honorius the-prince were and both virgins have
defunctae, spraeto Honorio regnumque eius inhians Alanorum
died scorned Honorius and-the-kingdom his coveting of-the-Alans
Suavorum Vandalorumque gentes donis pecuniisque inlectas
of-the-Suevi and-of-the-Vandals the-nations by-gifts and-moneys enticed
contra regnum Honorii excitavit, Eucherium filium suum
against the-kingdom of-Honorius roused Eucherius son his
paganum et Christianis insidias molientem cupiens
a-pagan and against-the-Christians plots contriving desiring
Caesarem ordinare. qui cum eodem filio suo detecto dolo
as-Caesar to-appoint who with the-same son his detected the-guile

occisus est. quo anno et Archadius Orientalis imperator,
slain was in-which year also Arcadius the-Eastern emperor
regnans post obitum patris ann. xiii, defunctus est.
reigning after the-death of-his-father years thirteen died has
Theodosius iunior Archadii filius loco patris successit
Theodosius the-younger of-Arcadius son in-the-place of-his-father succeeded
in imperio, aduliscens egregius, regnavitque an. xliii.
in the-empire a-youth outstanding and-reigned years forty-three
Halaricus rex Vesegotharum vastatam Italiam Romam ingressus
Alaric king of-the-Visigoths laid-waste Italy Rome entered
est opesque Honorii Augusti depraedatas Placidiam sororem
has and-the-wealth of-Honorius Augustus plundered Placidia sister
eius duxit captivam, quam post haec Ataulfo successori
his led captive whom after these-things to-Athaulf successor
suo, in matrimonio ut acciperet, delegavit. Constantinus
his in marriage that he-should-receive-her he-assigned Constantine
tunc quidam Gallias occupatas invasit imperio filiumque
then a-certain the-Gauls occupied invaded with-empire and-son
suum Constantem ex monacho Caesarem ordinavit. sed
his Constans from a-monk Caesar appointed but
mox ipse apud Arelatum, filius eius apud Viennam regnum
soon himself at Arles son his at Vienne the-kingdom
cum vita amiserunt. itemque eorum exitu inmemores Iobinus
with life lost and-likewise of-their end unmindful Jovinus
et Sebastianus ibi in Galliis tyrannide moliuntur: sed et
and Sebastian there in the-Gauls tyranny attempt but also
ipsi ilico esse desierunt. Haeraclianus post haec
they-themselves at-once to-be ceased Heraclianus after these-things
cum septingentis et tribus navibus armatis ad urbem
with seven-hundred and three ships armed to the-city
Romam depraedandam advenit; contra quem Marinus comis
Rome to-be-plundered came against whom Marinus the-count

egressus sic eum perterruit, ut tantum cum una nave
having-gone-out so him terrified that only with one ship
Chartagine fugiret, ubi mox ingressus interfectusque est. Valia
to-Carthage he-fled where soon entered and-killed was Wallia
rex Vesegotharum facta pace cum Honorio Placidiam sororem
king of-the-Visigoths made peace with Honorius Placidia sister
eius reddidit, quam Constantio patricio, qui eam revocaverat,
his returned whom to-Constantius the-patrician who her had-recalled
in matrimonio iungens Honorius rebus humanis excessit.
in marriage joining Honorius from-affairs human departed
Maximus et Iovinus de Spanias ferro vincti abducti atque
Maximus and Jovinus from the-Spains with-iron bound led-away and
interfecti sunt. Iohannes vero Honorio defuncto regnum
killed were John but Honorius having-died the-kingdom
occidentalem invasit. contra quem Placidia creatam Augustam
western invaded against whom Placidia created Augusta
et Valentinianus filius eius Caesar diriguntur. quem et dolo
and Valentinian son her Caesar are-sent whom also by-the-guile
potius Asparis et Ardaburis quam virtute Aetii superant.
rather of-Aspar and of-Ardabur than by-the-valor of-Aetius they-overcome
occisoque Iohanne tyranno Valentinianus Ravenna imperator
and-slain John the-tyrant Valentinian at-Ravenna emperor
a patruele Theodosio ordinatur. cuius germana Honoria dum
by his-cousin Theodosius is-appointed whose sister Honoria when
ad aulae decus virginitatem suam cogeretur custodire,
for of-the-court the-honor virginity her she-was-compelled to-keep
clam misso clientulo Attilam Hunnorum regem invitat in
secretly sent a-little-client Attila of-the-Huns king invites into
Italia. cumque veniente Attila votum suum nequivit explere
Italy and-when coming Attila wish her she-could-not to-fulfill
facinusque, quod cum Attila non fecerat, cum Eugenio
and-the-crime which with Attila not she-had-done with Eugenius

procuratori suo committit. quam ob rem tenta a germano
steward her she-commits which for thing held by her-brother
et in Constantinopolim Theodosio principi destinata est.
and to Constantinople to-Theodosius the-prince sent was
post haec iii anno Valentinianus imperator a Roma
after these-things in-the-third year Valentinian the-emperor from Rome
Constantinopolim ob suscipiendam in matrimonio Eudoxiam
to-Constantinople for receiving in marriage Eudoxia
Theodosii principis filiam venit datamque pro munere
of-Theodosius the-prince the-daughter came and-given as a-gift
soceri sui totam Illyricum celebratis nuptiis ad sua
of-father-in-law his all Illyricum celebrated the-nuptials to his
regna cum uxore secessit. Africana provincia per Bonifatium
kingdoms with his-wife withdrew the-African province through Boniface
comitem Vandalis tradita et a Romano iure subtracta
the-count to-the-Vandals handed-over and from the-Roman right withdrawn
est, quia Bonifatius, dum in offensa Valentiniani venisset,
was because Boniface when into displeasure of-Valentinian he-had-come
malo publico se defendere voluit invitatoque ab Spaniis
by-the-ill public himself to-defend wished and-invited from the-Spains
Gizerico Vandalorum rege dolum quod conceperat peperit.
Gaiseric of-the-Vandals king the-guile which he-had-conceived brought-forth

§§ 331–345

Attila ravages the Balkans. Marcian restores the East and outlives his enemies; in the West Valentinian is murdered and Gaiseric sacks Rome. Leo makes and unmakes Western emperors and kills Aspar, and under Zeno Odoacer deposes Augustulus, ending the Western empire after 522 years.

Hunnorum rex Attila iunctis secum Gepidas cum
of-the-Huns the-king Attila joined with-himself the-Gepids with
Ardarico, Gothosque cum Valamir, diversasque alias nationes
Ardaric and-the-Goths with Valamir and-diverse other nations
suis cum regibus, omnem Illyricum Traciamque et utramque
their with kings all Illyricum and-Thrace and both
Daciam, Mysiam et Scythiam populatus est. contra quem
Dacia Moesia and Scythia ravaged has against whom
Arnegisclus magister militum Mysiae egressus a
Arnegisclus master of-the-soldiers of-Moesia having-gone-out from
Marcianopolim fortiter dimicavit, equoque sub se decidente
Marcianopolis bravely fought and-his-horse under him falling-down
praeventus est, et nec sic quiescens bellare, occisus est.
overtaken was and not so resting from-warring slain was
Marcianus imperator regnavit an. vi m. vi. hic etenim mox
Marcian the-emperor reigned years six months six he for soon
defuncto Theodosio in regno ascitus Pulcheriam germanam
having-died Theodosius to the-kingdom raised Pulcheria sister
Theodosii, quae in palatio iam matura mulier virginitatem
of-Theodosius who in the-palace already mature woman her-virginity
servaverat, in matrimonio adsumens regnum quod delicati
had-kept in marriage taking the-kingdom which the-delicate
decessores prodecessoresque eius per annos fere sexaginta
predecessors and-forerunners his through years about sixty

vicissim imperantes minuerant, divina provisione sic reparavit,
in-turn ruling had-diminished by-divine providence so restored
ut exultatio ingens cunctis adcresceret. nam cum Parthis et
that exultation huge in-all grew for with the-Parthians and
Vandalis omnino infestantibus pacem instituit, Attilae minas
Vandals altogether harassing peace he-established of-Attila the-threats
conpescuit, Novades Blemmesque Ethiopia prolapsos per
restrained the-Nobades and-Blemmyes from-Ethiopia slipped-out through
Florum Alexandrinae urbis procuratorem sedavit et pepulit a
Florus of-the-Alexandrian city the-procurator he-calmed and drove from
finibus Romanorum, obitumque Attilae et Zenonis Isauri
the-borders of-the-Romans and-the-death of-Attila and of-Zeno the-Isaurian
interitum, antequam moriretur, felix conperit infelicium:
the-end before he-died happy learned of-the-unhappy
omniumque inimicorum suorum colla domini virtute
and-of-all enemies his the-necks of-the-Lord with-the-power
calcans sexto anno sextoque mense regnans in pace quievit.
trampling in-the-sixth year and-sixth month reigning in peace rested
Valentinianus autem occidentalis imperator dolo Maximi
Valentinian moreover the-western emperor by-the-guile of-Maximus
patricii, cuius etiam fraude Aetius perierat, in campo Martio,
the-patrician whose also by-fraud Aetius had-perished in the-field of-Mars
per Optilam et Thraufistilam Aetii satellites iam percusso
by Optila and Thraustila of-Aetius attendants already struck
Eraclio spadone truncatus est. imperium quoque eius idem
Heraclius the-eunuch cut-down was the-empire also his the-same
Maximus invasit tertioque tyrannidis suae mense membratim
Maximus invaded and-in-the-third of-tyranny his month limb-by-limb
Romae a Romanis discerptus est. Gizericus tunc rex Vandalorum
at-Rome by the-Romans torn-apart was Gaiseric then king of-the-Vandals
ab Eudoxia Valentiniani uxore invitatus ex Africa Romam
by Eudoxia of-Valentinian the-wife invited from Africa Rome

ingressus est eamque urbem rebus omnibus expoliatam eandem
entered has and-that city of-things all despoiled the-same
Eudoxiam cum duabus filiabus secum in Africa rediens duxit.
Eudoxia with two daughters with-himself into Africa returning led
Leo Bessica ortus progeniae Asparis patricii potentia ex
Leo of-Bessian having-sprung stock of-Aspar the-patrician by-the-power from
tribuno militum factus est imperator. cuius nutu mox loco
tribune of-the-soldiers made was emperor whose by-nod soon in-place
Valentiniani apud Ravennam Maiorianus Caesar est ordinatus,
of-Valentinian at Ravenna Majorian Caesar was appointed
qui tertio necdum anno expleto in regno apud Dertonam
who in-the-third not-yet year completed in the-reign at Dertona
occiditur locoque eius sine principis iussu Leonis Severianus
is-killed and-in-place his without of-the-prince the-order of-Leo Severianus
invasit: sed et ipse tyrannidis sui tertio anno expleto
invaded but also himself of-tyranny his in-the-third year completed
Romae occubuit. tunc Leo Anthemium divi Marciani
at-Rome fell then Leo Anthemius of-the-divine Marcian
generum ex patricio Caesarem ordinans Romae in imperio
the-son-in-law from patrician Caesar appointing at-Rome in the-empire
distinavit Bigelemque Getarum regem per Ardaburem Asparis
sent and-Bigelis of-the-Getae king through Ardabur of-Aspar
filium interemit. Basiliscum cognatum suum, id est fratrem
the-son slew Basiliscus kinsman his that is the-brother
Augustae Verinae Africam dirigens cum exercitu, qui navali
of-Augusta Verina to-Africa sending with an-army who in-a-naval
proelio Chartaginem saepe adgrediens ante ea victus cupiditate
battle Carthage often attacking before it conquered by-greed
pecuniis vendidit regi Vandalorum, quam in Romanorum
for-moneys sold to-the-king of-the-Vandals than into of-the-Romans
potestatem redigeret. Asparum autem patricium cum filiis
power he-should-bring Aspar moreover the-patrician with his-sons

Ardaburem et Patriciolum Zenonis generi sui instinctu in
Ardabur and Patriciolus of-Zeno son-in-law his at-the-instigation in
palatio trucidavit occisoque Romae Anthemio Nepotem filium
the-palace slaughtered and-slain at-Rome Anthemius Nepos son
Nepotiani copulata nepte sua in matrimonio apud Ravennam
of-Nepotian joined niece his in marriage at Ravenna
per Domitianum clientem suum Caesarem ordinavit. qui
through Domitian client his Caesar appointed who
Nepus regno potitus legitimo Glycerium, qui sibi
Nepos of-the-kingdom having-gained lawful Glycerius who on-himself
tyrannico more regnum inposuisset, ab imperio expellens in
in-tyrannical manner the-kingdom had-imposed from the-empire expelling in
Salona Dalmatiae episcopum fecit. sic quoque Leo Leonem
Salona of-Dalmatia bishop made so also Leo Leo
iuniorem ex Ariagne filia nepotem suum in imperio
the-younger from Ariadne his-daughter grandson his in the-empire
ordinans Orientale anno regni sui sexto decimo obiit.
appointing Eastern in-the-year of-reign his sixth tenth died
Leo iunior mox paucis mensibus puerilem, ordinante
Leo the-younger soon for-a-few months childish directing
tamen patre, rexisset imperium, manu sua genitorem
yet his-father he-had-ruled the-empire with-hand his father
suum Zenonem coronans imperatoremque constituens rebus
his Zeno crowning and-emperor establishing from-affairs
humanis excessit.
human departed
Zenon natione Isaurus gener Leonis imperatoris regnavit
Zeno by-nation an-Isaurian son-in-law of-Leo of-the-emperor reigned
ann. xvii. hic etenim dum processibus Chalcedona degeret,
years seventeen he for while on-excursions at-Chalcedon he-stayed
subito Verina Augusta socrus sua fratrem suum Basiliscum
suddenly Verina Augusta mother-in-law his brother her Basiliscus

in imperio inducens Augustum in urbe appellavit. quod
into the-empire leading-in Augustus in the-city called which
conperiens Zenon Chalcedona sine aliqua rei publicae
learning Zeno from-Chalcedon without any of-the-state public
lesione Isauriam secessit, malens se solum cum Ariagne
injury to-Isauria withdrew preferring himself alone with Ariadne
Augusta exulari quam sui causa rei publicae aliquid
Augusta to-be-exiled than on-his account to-the-state public any
ex bellis civilibus incommodum provenire. quod Basiliscus
from wars civil harm to-come which Basiliscus
cognoscens Zenonisque fugam laetatus Marcum filium suum
learning and-of-Zeno the-flight rejoicing Marcus son his
Caesarem ordinavit. qui perfidia Nestoriana inflatus multa
Caesar appointed who with-the-perfidy Nestorian puffed-up many-things
contra ecclesiam temptavit protinus agere: sed volente deo ante
against the-church tried at-once to-do but willing God before
inflatus crepuit quam penitens stare potuerat. nam revertens
puffed-up he-burst than penitent to-stand he-could for returning
Zenon rursus in regno proprio et eum et patrem et
Zeno again into the-kingdom his-own both him and father and
matrem in exilio oppidi Lemni provinciae Cappadociae
mother into exile of-the-town of-Limnae of-the-province of-Cappadocia
destinavit. ubi quia caritas dei et proximi in illos refrixerat,
sent where because the-love of-God and of-neighbor in them had-grown-cold
frigore consumpti sunt vitaque cum regno amiserunt.
by-cold consumed they-were and-life with the-kingdom lost
parte vero Esperia Nepotem imperatorem Orestes fugatum
in-the-part indeed Western Nepos the-emperor Orestes put-to-flight
Augustulum suum filium in imperium conlocavit. sed mox
Augustulus his son in the-empire placed but soon
Odoacer genere Rogus Thorcilingorum Scirorum Herolorumque
Odoacer by-race a-Rugian of-the-Torcilingi of-the-Sciri and-of-the-Heruli

turbas munitus Italiam invasit Augustulumque imperatorem
with-the-throngs protected Italy invaded and-Augustulus the-emperor
de regno evulsum in Lucullano Campaniae castello
from the-kingdom torn in the-Lucullan of-Campania castle
exilii poena damnavit. sic quoque Hesperium regnum
of-exile by-the-penalty condemned so also the-Western kingdom
Romanique populi principatum, quod septingentesimo nono
and-of-the-Roman people the-rule which in-the-seven-hundredth ninth
urbis conditae anno primus Augustorum Octavianus
of-the-city founded year first of-the-Augusti Octavian
Augustus tenere coepit, cum hoc Augustulo periit anno
Augustus to-hold began with this Augustulus perished in-the-year
decessorum regni imperatorum quingentesimo vicesimo
of-the-predecessors of-the-reign emperors five-hundredth twentieth
secundo: Gothorum dehinc regibus Romam tenentibus.
second of-the-Goths thereafter the-kings Rome holding

§§ 346–359

346–359 · THEODORIC, ZENO, AND ANASTASIUS

Theodoric son of Triarius dies when a spear on his wagon pierces him. Theodoric son of Theodemir goes to Constantinople, and Zeno sends him to Italy, where he defeats and kills Odoacer. Ariadne's plot against Illus fails, Illus and Leontius rebel and are beheaded, and Anastasius struggles with Isaurians and Vitalian.

Theodoricus autem Triarii filius cognomento Strabo rex
Theodoric moreover of-Triarius son by-surname Strabo king
Gothorum ascitis suis usque ad Anaplum quarto
of-the-Goths summoned his all-the-way to Anaplus at-the-fourth
urbis milio armatus advenit: nulli tamen Romanorum
of-the-city milestone armed came to-none yet of-the-Romans

noxius continuo reversus porro Inlyricum properans dum
harmful at-once having-returned further to-Illyricum hastening while
inter suorum moventia plaustra progreditur, iacentis super
among of-his the-moving wagons he-proceeds lying upon
carpentum teli acumen paviscentisque equi sui inpulsione
a-carriage of-a-weapon by-the-point and-of-the-panicking horse his by-the-jolt
fixus transverberatus interiit et rei publicae diem festum
pierced transfixed perished and to-the-state public a-day festal
morte sua donavit. Valamero rege Gothorum in bello Scirorum
by-death his gave Valamir king of-the-Goths in the-war of-the-Sciri
defuncto Theodemir in regno fratris successit cum
having-died Theodemir in the-kingdom of-his-brother succeeded with
Vidimero fratre et filio Theodorico. sed missa sorte Vidimero
Vidimer his-brother and son Theodoric but cast the-lot to-Vidimer
cum Vidimero filio partes Hesperias, Theodemir cum filio
with Vidimer his-son the-parts Western to-Theodemir with his-son
Theodorico Illyricum Thraciasque vastandas obvenit. relictaque
Theodoric Illyricum and-the-Thracias to-be-laid-waste fell and-left
ergo Pannonia alter Italiam, alter Illyricum suscepit
therefore Pannonia the-one Italy the-other Illyricum took-up
populandum: sed utrique reges mox sortita loca ingressi
to-be-ravaged but both kings soon the-allotted places entered
sunt, ilico rebus humanis excedunt, Vidimer Italia, Illyrico
have at-once from-affairs human depart Vidimer in-Italy in-Illyricum
Theodemir. relictis filiis decesserunt, quorum Vidimer ab
Theodemir left their-sons died of-whom Vidimer by
Italis proeliis victus, ad partes Galliae Spaniaeque omissa
the-Italians in-battles conquered to the-parts of-Gaul and-Spain abandoned
Italia tendit: Theodoricus vero Zenonis Augusti humanitate
Italy heads Theodoric but of-Zeno Augustus by-the-kindness
pellectus Constantinopolim venit, ubi magister militum
enticed to-Constantinople came where master of-the-soldiers

praesentis effectus consulis ordinarii triumphum ex publico
of-the-presence made of-consul ordinary a-triumph from public
dono peregit. sed quia tunc, ut diximus, Odoacer regnum
gift performed but because then as we-have-said Odoacer the-kingdom
Italiae occupasset, Zenon imperator cernens iam gentes illam
of-Italy had-occupied Zeno the-emperor seeing now nations that
patriam possidere, maluit Theodorico ac si proprio iam clienti
fatherland to-possess preferred to-Theodoric as if his-own already client
eam committi quam illi quem nec noverat. secumque
it to-be-committed than to-him whom not-even he-knew and-with-himself
ita deliberans, ad partes eum Italiae mandans, Romanum illi
so deliberating to the-parts him of-Italy sending the-Roman to-him
populum senatumque commendat. obansque rex gentium
people and-senate commends and-exulting king of-the-nations
et consul Romanus Theodoricus Italiam petiit magnisque
and consul Roman Theodoric Italy sought and-in-great
proeliis fatigatum Odoacrum Ravenna in deditione suscepit.
battles wearied Odoacer at-Ravenna into surrender received
deinde vero ac si suspectum Ravenna in palatio iugulans
then indeed as if suspect at-Ravenna in the-palace cutting-his-throat
regnum gentis sui et Romani populi principatum prudenter
the-kingdom of-nation his and of-the-Roman people the-rule prudently
et pacifice per triginta annos continuit. Illus autem
and peacefully through thirty years held Illus moreover
Isaurus, magister officiorum et Zenoni imperatori in privata
the-Isaurian master of-offices and to-Zeno the-emperor in private
vita amicissimus caritateque coniunctus, dum secreto in
life most-friendly and-by-affection joined while in-secret in
detractionem Ariagnes Augustae cum eius viro locutus est, in
detraction of-Ariadne Augusta with her husband spoken has into
zelo Augustum concitavit. qui deliberans eam perimere uni
jealousy Augustus roused who deliberating her to-kill to-one

suorum rem tacite demandavit. quod dum ille agere nititur,
of-his the-thing silently entrusted which while he to-do strives
cuidam cubiculariae prodit scelus eadem nocte facturum.
to-a-certain bedchamber-woman he-betrays the-crime on-the-same night about-to-commit
regina scelus cognovit suoque in lectulo eandem qui
the-queen the-crime learned and-her in bed the-same-woman who
rem suggesserat conlocatam in episcopio ad Acacium
the-thing had-suggested placed into the-bishop's-house to Acacius
neminem scientem subterfugit. posteraque diae Zeno rem
no-one knowing escaped and-on-the-next day Zeno the-thing
aestimans perpetratam, dum, lucto quodam quasi gerens,
thinking accomplished while mourning a-certain as-if bearing
neminem suscipit, Acacius episcopus ingressus et facti
no-one he-receives Acacius the-bishop having-entered and of-the-deed
arguit impietatem veniaeque fidem exposcit Augustamque
reproves the-impiety and-of-pardon a-pledge demands and-Augusta
suspicionis innoxiam compromittit acceptamque fidem veniae
of-suspicion innocent promises and-received the-pledge of-pardon
pactione Augusta revertitur. secumque dum crebro
by-the-agreement Augusta returns and-with-herself while often
deliberat, qua sorte de inimico suo exigat ultionem,
she-deliberates by-what lot from enemy her she-may-exact vengeance
nanctam (ut opinata est) oportunitatem uni suorum mandat
having-got as thought she-had an-opportunity to-one of-her she-entrusts
in abditis stanti, ut Illo a se recedenti perimeret. qui parens
in hiding standing that Illus from her withdrawing he-should-kill who obeying
praeceptis reginae, dum avidus ferit in capite ense,
the-orders of-the-queen while greedily he-strikes on the-head with-a-sword
non cervices, ut cupiebat, sed aurem illius amputavit. quod
not the-neck as he-desired but the-ear his cut-off which
periculum evadens Illus mox ab urbe recedens Zenonique
danger escaping Illus soon from the-city withdrawing and-to-Zeno

infestus Orientem invasit. contra quem Leontius directus ab
hostile the-East invaded against whom Leontius sent and-by
ipsoque pellacibus verbis inlectus diademam arripuit simulque
him with-seductive words enticed the-diadem seized and-together
Leontius et Illus rei publicae inimici effecti tyranni
Leontius and Illus of-the-state public enemies become tyrants
in partes Syriae et Isauriae dibacchantur additoque super
in the-parts of-Syria and of-Isauria revel and-added over
solito Isauris dono omnes simul conspirant contra
the-customary to-the-Isaurians gift all together conspire against
Zenonem, cuius thesauros in Papirio castello monitissimo
Zeno whose treasures in the-Papirian castle most-fortified
repertos desaeviunt. sed non post multum ab exercito Zenonis
found they-rage but not after much by the-army of-Zeno
in eodem castello capti decollatique sunt et capita eorum
in the-same castle taken and-beheaded were and the-heads their
Constantinopolim adlata praefixaque astilibus tabuerunt. sic
to-Constantinople brought and-fixed on-spears rotted so
quoque Zenon superatis inimicis suis in bona pace quievit.
also Zeno overcome enemies his in good peace rested
Anastasius ex silentiario subito ab Ariagne Augusta in
Anastasius from silentiary suddenly by Ariadne Augusta into
imperio sumptus simulque imperator et maritus innotuit,
the-empire taken and-at-once emperor and husband became-known
regnavitque ann. xxvii m. ii. contra quem Isauri
and-reigned years twenty-seven months two against whom the-Isaurians
dum sibi quod illis tyrannus ille adiecerat donativum
when to-themselves what to-them tyrant that had-added a-donative
et Zenon reconciliationis gratia invitus largierat ab
and Zeno of-reconciliation for-the-sake unwilling had-lavished by
isto fraudantur, arma arripiunt. consertoque proelio iuxta
him are-defrauded arms seize and-joined battle near

Cotziaium Frygiae civitatem castra metati pene per
Cotyaeum of-Phrygia city a-camp having-measured almost through
sex continuos annos rei publicae adversantur: ubi et
six continuous years the-state public oppose where also
Lilingis, eorum et in bello et in consilio praevius, quamvis
Lilingis their both in war and in counsel leader although
pedibus ob corporis debilitate signis, eques tamen in
on-foot because-of of-body weakness sluggish horseman yet in
bello acerrimus, dum peremptus fuisset, omnes Isauri
war most-fierce when slain he-had-been all the-Isaurians
fugierunt atque dispersi sunt et devicti et perquaquam
fled and scattered were and conquered and everywhere
exilio relegati urbesque eorum nonnullae solo usque
into-exile banished and-the-cities their some to-the-ground up-to
prostratae. variis namque sub Anastasio milis proeliis
laid-low by-various for under Anastasius the-soldier battles
fatigatus et nunc Illyrico cum Saviniano et Mundone
wearied and now in-Illyricum with Savinianus and Mundo
ad Margum, nunc cum Pumpeio ad Adrianopolim, nunc
at the-Margus now with Pompeius at Adrianople now
cum Aristo ad Tzortam, nunc cum Parthis in Syriam,
with Aristus at the-Tzurta now with the-Parthians in Syria
ut omittam intestina clade et pugnas in foro regiae
to omit internal slaughter and fights in the-forum of-the-royal
civitatis, ad postremo contra Italiam plus piratico quam
city at the-last against Italy more by-piratical than
publico Marte concertans, frustratus est. sed et quod plus
by-public warfare contending frustrated was but also what more
fuit dolendum, contra ultimum suum famulum Vitalianum
was to-be-lamented against the-lowest his servant Vitalian
de Scythiam per sex annos civile bellum extraxit. is si
from Scythia through six years civil war drew-out he if

quidem Vitalianus cum lx milibus armatorum tertio pene
indeed Vitalian with sixty thousand of-armed-men a-third-time almost
non rei publicae sed regi infestus accedens multa
not to-the-state public but to-the-king hostile approaching many
suborbana regiae urbis praedis spoliisque adtrivit. contra
suburban of-the-royal city with-plunders and-spoils wore-down against
quem dum Hypatius nepus Caesaris cum exercitu numeroso
whom while Hypatius nephew of-the-emperor with an-army numerous
pugnaturus egreditur, ante ab Hunnis auxiliaribus capitur et
about-to-fight goes-out before by the-Huns auxiliaries be-is-taken and
Vitaliano mula insedens turpiter venditur, antequam aperto
to-Vitalian on-a-mule sitting shamefully is-sold before in-open
proelio parte adversa sese inimicum ostenderet. post quem
battle on-the-side opposite himself an-enemy he-showed after whom
item Rufinus Alathortque mag. mil. saepe superati,
likewise Rufinus and-Alathar masters of-the-soldiers often overcome
saepe inrisi ab eo et spreti sunt. sic quoque diversis partibus
often mocked by him and spurned were so also on-diverse sides
inimicorum vallatus agminibus Anastasius saepe congemuit
of-enemies walled-in with-columns Anastasius often groaned
nullique tamen meruit inimicorum suorum vindictam audire:
and-on-none yet earned of-enemies his the-vengeance to-hear
sicut nec ipse ecclesiae iura servavit, immo maerens et
as not himself of-the-church the-rights kept nay grieving and
furens maior octogenario aetatis anno regnique vicesimo et
raging older than-eighty of-age in-the-year and-of-reign twentieth and
octavo rebus humanis excessit, contritaque res publica
eighth from-affairs human departed and-crushed the-state public
vix Iustino ei succedente quantolum respiravit.
scarcely Justin to-him succeeding a-little breathed

§§ 360–373

Justin destroys his rivals and names Justinian his successor. Justinian crushes the usurpers Hypatius and Pompeius at the circus, makes peace with Persia, and sends Belisarius against the Vandals. In Italy Theodahad kills Amalasuntha; Belisarius takes Sicily and Naples, and the Goths make Vitiges king.

Iustinus ex comite scubitorum a senatu imperator electus
Justin from count of-the-guards by the-senate emperor chosen
ann. regnavit viiii. qui mox inhiantes regno suo Amantium
years reigned nine who soon coveting kingdom his Amantius
praepositum palatii, Andream et Misahel et Ardaburem
the-provost of-the-palace Andrew and Misael and Ardabur
cubicularios sentiens aflixit. nam Amantium et Andream
chamberlains perceiving struck-down for Amantius and Andrew
ferro truncavit, Misahelu et Ardaburem Serdica in exilio
with-the-sword he-cut-down Misael and Ardabur to-Serdica into exile
misit. Theocritum quoque satellitem Amantii, quem idem
sent Theocritus also the-attendant of-Amantius whom the-same
Amantius ad regnandum clam praeparaverat, conpraehensum
Amantius for reigning secretly had-prepared seized
carceratumque saxis contusit ingentibus salsumque in
and-imprisoned with-stones crushed huge and-into-the-salt in
gurgite iacuit, sepultura cum imperio, cui inhiaverat,
the-whirlpool threw of-burial with the-empire which he-had-coveted
eum privans: foedusque cum Vitaliano percussit et ad
him depriving and-a-treaty with Vitalian struck and to
se evocitum magistrum militum praesentis et consulem
himself summoned master of-the-soldiers of-the-presence and consul
ordinarium fecit: quem rursus in suspicionem habens facti
ordinary made whom again in suspicion holding of-the-deed

prioris xvi vulneribus in palatio cum Celeriano et
former with-sixteen wounds in the-palace with Celerianus and
Paulo satellitibus effosum peremit. hic quoque imperator
Paulus attendants dug-through killed this also emperor
ante quarto mense obitus sui, senectute sua consulens
before in-the-fourth month of-death his for-old-age his providing
et rei publicae utilitatibus, Iustinianum ex sorore
and for-the-state public advantages Justinian from sister
sua nepotem consortem regni successoremque imperii
his nephew as-partner of-the-reign and-successor of-the-empire
ordinans, rebus humanis excessit.
appointing from-affairs human departed
Iustinianus imperator regnat iam iubante domino ann.
Justinian the-emperor reigns now with-the-help-of the-Lord years
xxiiii. qui ut sceptris genio a suo avunculo
twenty-four who as to-the-scepters by-the-genius from his uncle
mancipatus est, mox Parthos bella moventes destinato
handed-over was soon the-Parthians wars moving with-an-appointed
exercitu conpescuit et fines proprios tutans Parthorum
army restrained and the-borders his-own protecting of-the-Parthians
saepe multos adflixit. postea vero facientibus peccatis in
often many struck-down afterward indeed causing-it sins on
die sabbati sancti paschae inito certamine, exercitui et
the-day of-the-sabbath holy of-Easter entered the-battle by-the-army and
non ducis instinctu in fluvio Eufrate, fugiens Parthos,
not of-the-general instigation into the-river Euphrates fleeing the-Parthians
Romanus numerosus ruit exercitus. Illyricumque saepe ab
the-Roman numerous rushed army and-Illyricum often by
Herulis Gipidisque et Bulgaris devastantibus per suos
the-Heruli and-Gepids and Bulgars devastating through his
iudices frequenter obstitit viriliterque cecidit. post haec
judges frequently he-opposed and-manfully cut-down after these-things

Hypatium Pompeiumque regni sui insidiatoribus coacta civili
Hypatius and-Pompeius of-kingdom his plotters gathered civil
manu circum ingressis et Hypatio torque aureo redemito
band the-circus having-entered and Hypatius with-a-torque golden crowned
pro diademate locoque imperatoris iam occupante,
instead-of a-diadem and-the-place of-the-emperor already occupying
Pompeium vero sub clamidem luricatum et iam palatio
Pompeius but under his-cloak cuirassed and already the-palace
invadentem, utrumque detentum ante fores palatii captum
invading both held before the-doors of-the-palace taken
catenatumque discussit amputatisque eorum capitibus ante
and-chained he-shattered and-cut-off their heads before
eos fecit imperium perdere quam haberent. sociosque
they made-them the-empire to-lose than they-had-it and-the-associates
eorum, qui evaserant a caede, proscriptos, veluti grande
their who had-escaped from the-slaughter proscribed as-if a-great
hoste prostrato de manubiis triumphavit. eodemque anno
enemy laid-low over the-spoils he-triumphed and-in-the-same year
post diuturnum immanemque laborem, quod contra Parthos
after the-long and-immense labor which against the-Parthians
Romanorum fuisset gestum sudoribus, per Rufinum patricium
of-the-Romans had-been carried-on with-sweats through Rufinus the-patrician
perque Hermogenem magistrum officiorum et utrumque
and-through Hermogenes master of-the-offices and each
legatum directum a principe pax depicta est foedusque
envoy sent by the-prince peace depicted was and-a-treaty
initum et munera ab utroque sibi invice principe
entered and gifts by each to-the-other in-turn prince
distinata. mox quoque soluto de Orientali parte exercitu
sent soon also loosed from the-Eastern part the-army
eundem ductorem, quem dudum Orienti transmiserat, elegit
the-same commander whom formerly to-the-East he-had-sent-over he-chose

Belesarium, cui numerosos fortissimosque milites deputatis
Belisarius to-whom numerous and-bravest soldiers assigned
ad australem plagam contra Vandalos mittit. quo favente deo
to the-southern region against the-Vandals he-sends whom favoring God
qua venerat facilitate, ea celeritate Vandalos superavit,
with-what he-had-come ease with-that speed the-Vandals overcame
Lybiamque ad corpus totius rei publicae iungens, Gelimer
and-Libya to the-body of-the-whole state public joining Gelimer
regem opesque Chartaginis in urbe regia principi spectante
the-king and-the-wealth of-Carthage in the-city royal to-the-prince looking-on
populo optulit. cuius notu remuneratus consulque ordinarius
the-people presented whose by-nod rewarded and-consul ordinary
mox designatus, de manubiis Vandalicis Belesarius triumphavit.
soon designated over the-spoils Vandalic Belisarius triumphed
In Italia vero Theodorico rege defuncto Athalaricus nepus
in Italy but Theodoric the-king having-died Athalaric grandson
eius ipso ordinante successit, octo annos quamvis pueriliter
his he-himself appointing succeeded eight years although childishly
vivens matre tamen regente Amalasuentha degebat, quando
living his-mother yet ruling Amalasuntha he-spent when
et Gallias diu tentas Francis repetentibus reddidit.
also the-Gauls long held to-the-Franks seeking-them-back restored
mortuoque Athalarico mater sua Theodahadum consubrinum
and-having-died Athalaric mother his Theodahad cousin
suum regni sui participem faciens non post multum
her of-kingdom her partner making not after much
ipso iubente occisa est. et quia dudum se suoque
he-himself ordering slain was and because formerly herself and-her
filio commendaverat principi Iustiniano, is mortem eius
son she-had-commended to-the-prince Justinian he death her
audiens doluit nec passus est inultum transire. sed mox
hearing grieved nor suffered has-he unavenged to-pass but soon

eundem ducem belli, qui Poenorum domitor fuerat
the-same leader of-war who of-the-Carthaginians the-tamer had-been
et de opibus Vandalicis triumphans adhuc in fascibus
and over the-wealth Vandalic triumphing still in the-fasces
erat, agmini diversarum praeponens nationum ad partes
was to-the-column of-diverse setting-him-over nations to the-parts
Hesperias destinavit. qui primo accessu mox Siciliam
Western sent who at-the-first approach soon Sicily
pervadit duce eius Sinderith superato: ubi dum aliquantum
overruns general its Sinderith overcome where while some
temporis ob ordinandam patriam resederet, conperit in
of-time for setting-in-order the-fatherland he-stayed he-learned in
Africa civilia bella intestinoque proelio dibacchari. nam
Africa civil wars and-in-internal battle to-revel for
Stotzas pene ultimus militum et Martini clientulus mag.
Stotzas almost the-last of-the-soldiers and of-Martin a-little-client master
mil., tyrannidem arripiens auctorque seditiosorum effectus
of-the-soldiers tyranny seizing and-author of-the-seditious become
Cyrillum Marcellum Faram aliosque diversos iudices dolo
Cyril Marcellus Pharas and-other diverse judges by-guile
peremptis in duce Solomone saeviebat totamque Africam
slain against the-general Solomon raged and-the-whole Africa
tyrannico ritu vastabat. emenso ergo Belesarius a
in-tyrannical manner laid-waste crossed therefore Belisarius from
Sicilia in Africa pelago solita felicitate, rebelles
Sicily into Africa the-sea with-the-accustomed good-fortune the-rebels
fugat, provinciam liberat Solomonemque rursum Chartagine
puts-to-flight the-province frees and-Solomon again at-Carthage
conlocans Siciliam redit. ubi mox Evermud Theodahadi
placing to-Sicily returns where soon Evermud of-Theodahad
Gothorum regis gener, qui contrarius cum exercitu
of-the-Goths king the-son-in-law who opposing with an-army

venerat, cernens prosperitatem consulis ultro se ad
had-come seeing the-prosperity of-the-consul of-his-own-accord himself to
partes dedit victoris hortaturque, ut iam anhelantem suique
the-side gave of-the-victor and-urges that now panting and-at-his
adventui suspectam subveniret Italiam. constructo
arrival suspecting he-should-come-to-the-aid-of Italy built
ergo Belesarius exercitu et tam navali quam equistri
therefore Belisarius an-army and as-well naval as equestrian
agmine ductans, vallavit Neapolim paucisque diebus eam
column leading walled-in Naples and-in-a-few days it
obsidens per aquaeductum noctu invasit et tam Gothis
besieging through the-aqueduct at-night invaded and as-well the-Goths
qui aderant quam Romanis rebellantibus interfectis urbem
who were-present as the-Romans rebelling killed the-city
plenissime spoliavit. quod Theodahadus animadvertens, Vitiges
most-fully despoiled which Theodahad noticing Vitiges
unum inter alios ductorem exercitus praeponens contra
one among others as-commander of-the-army setting-over against
Belesarium dirigit. qui Campania ingressus mox ad campos
Belisarius sends who Campania having-entered soon to the-plains
venisset Barbaricos, ilico exercitus favore, quod contra
had-come Barbarian at-once of-the-army by-the-favor which against
Theodahadum suspectum habebat, excepit, et 'quid', inquid,
Theodahad suspicion it-had he-received and what he-says
'vultis'? ad illi: 'tollatur', inquiunt, 'de medio, qui cum
do-you-wish but they let-him-be-taken they-say from the-midst who with
sanguine Gothorum et interitu sua cupit scelera excusari'.
the-blood of-the-Goths and the-destruction his desires crimes to-be-excused
factoque impetu in eo consona voce Vitigis regem
and-made a-rush upon him with-harmonious voice Vitiges king
denuntiant. at ille regno levatus, quod ipse optaverat,
they-proclaim but he to-the-kingdom raised which he-himself had-wished

mox populi vota consentit, directisque e sociis
soon of-the-people to-the-wishes consents and-sent from associates
Theodahadum Ravenna revertentem extinguit. regnoque suo
Theodahad to-Ravenna returning destroys and-the-kingdom his
confirmans, expeditionem solvit et privata coniuge repudiata
confirming the-expedition loosed and his-private wife repudiated
regiam puellam Maathesuentam Theodorici regis neptem
the-royal maiden Matasuntha of-Theodoric the-king granddaughter
sibi plus vi copolat quam amori. dumque ille novis
to-himself more by-force joins than by-love and-while he in-new
nuptiis delectatur Ravenna, consul Belesarius Romanam urbem
nuptials delights at-Ravenna the-consul Belisarius the-Roman city
ingressus est exceptusque ab illo populo quondam Romano et
entered has and-received by that people once Roman and
senatu iam pene ipso nomine cum virtute sepulto confestim
senate now almost very with-the-name with valor buried at-once
vicina occupat loca urbium oppidorumque monimina.
the-neighboring occupies places of-cities and-of-towns the-strongholds

§§ 374–388

374–388 · THE GOTHIC WAR AND THE END

Belisarius defeats Vitiges and brings him to Constantinople, while the Persians sack Antioch. Totila revives the Goths and takes Rome and Sicily, Germanus dies on the march, and in Africa John Troglita subdues the Moors. Jordanes ends with the Lombards' victory over the Gepids and the state's daily troubles from the Bulgars and Slavs.

primaque Getica congressione Hunnila ductante Perusinum
and-in-the-first Getic encounter with-Hunila leading the-Perusine
ad oppidum superat et plus quam septem milibus trucidatis
at town overcomes and more than seven thousand slaughtered
reliquos Ravennam usque proturbat. secundo vero ipso
the-rest to-Ravenna up-to drives and-in-the-second indeed himself
Vitigis Romanas arces vallante congreditur machinasque illius
with-Vitiges the-Roman citadels walling-in engages and-the-engines his
et turres, quibus urbem adire temptabat, igne consumptis
and towers with-which the-city to-approach he-was-trying by-fire consumed
per anni spatium quamvis inaedia laborans deludit. post
through of-a-year the-space although by-want laboring he-mocks after
haec ad Ariminum persecutus exindeque eum effugatum
these-things to Ariminum having-pursued and-thence him put-to-flight
Ravenna clausum in deditionem suscepit, atque unus consul
at-Ravenna shut-in into surrender received and one consul
dum contra Getas dimicat, pene pari eventu de Francis, qui
while against the-Getae he-fights almost equal outcome over the-Franks who
cum Theodeperto rege suo plus ducenta milia advenerant,
with Theudebert king their more two-hundred thousand had-come
triumphavit. sed quia ad alia occupatus alibi noluit
triumphed but because with other-things occupied elsewhere not-he-wished

implicari, rogantibus Francis pacem concessit et sine
to-be-entangled asking the-Franks peace he-granted and without
suorum dispendio de fines Italos expulit sumptoque rege
of-his loss from the-borders Italian expelled and-taken the-king
et regina simulque et opes palatii ad principem qui
and the-queen and-together also the-wealth of-the-palace to the-prince who
eum miserat reportavit. sicque intra pauci temporis spatium
him had-sent brought-back and-thus within of-little time the-space
Iustinianus imperator per fidelissimum consulem duo regna
Justinian the-emperor through a-most-faithful consul two kingdoms
duasque res publicas suae dicioni subegit.
and-two states public to-his dominion subdued
Quod Parthus conperiens facibusque invidiae exardescens
which the-Parthian learning and-with-the-torches of-envy blazing
in Syriam movit procinctum, et Callinicum Soras
into Syria moved his-army and Callinicum Sura
Neocaesariamque devastans Anthiochiam venit. ubi Germanus
and-Neocaesarea laying-waste to-Antioch came where Germanus
patricius cum Iustino filio suo eodemque consule postquam
the-patrician with Justin son his and-the-same consul after
ab Africana provincia remeasset, dum adventum Parthorum
from the-African province he-had-returned when the-coming of-the-Parthians
obviare nequit, relicta urbe ad partes secessit Ciliciae.
to-meet he-could-not abandoned the-city to the-parts withdrew of-Cilicia
Persi vero vacuam ab exercitu Anthiochiam nancti
the-Persians but empty of army Antioch having-got
populumque per Orontis alveum ad Seleuciam maritimam
and-the-people along of-the-Orontes the-bed to Seleucia maritime
cum militibus mixtis fugientem aspiciunt nec secuntur, sed
with soldiers mixed fleeing they-see nor follow but
predas per urbem certatim diripiunt vicinasque urbes
plunders through the-city vying they-snatch and-the-neighboring cities

et oppida partim invasa partim pecuniae quantitate multata
and towns partly invaded partly of-money by-the-quantity fined
praetereunt et totius Cylesyriae bona sibi unius in
they-pass-by and of-the-whole Coele-Syria the-goods for-himself of-one in
anni spatium pene Parthus adsumit. nec sic quoque recedit,
of-a-year the-space almost the-Parthian takes nor so also withdraws
sed iugiter adversum Romanam rem publicum dimicat. contra
but continually against the-Roman state public fights against
quem Vandalicus Geticusque consul solite distinatur. qui etsi
whom the-Vandalic and-Getic consul as-usual is-sent who even-if
non ut reliquas gentes eum edomuit, tamen ut intra suos se
not as the-other nations him tamed yet that within his himself
fines recollegeret conpulit, fuissetque et de hac gente
borders he-should-draw-back compelled and-would-have-been also over this nation
felici duci parta victoria, ni clades Italiae, quae post
for-the-fortunate general won victory had-not the-disaster of-Italy which after
eius discessum emerserat, celerem ei successorem dedisset
his departure had-emerged a-swift to-him successor given
Martinum. qui etsi viribus inpar, consilio tamen quamvis
Martin who even-if in-strength unequal in-counsel yet although
cum Constantiano coniuncto non minor, dum resisti contra
with Constantianus joined not less when to-be-resisted against
Parthos non praevalet, ne bella diu teneret, pacem effecit.
the-Parthians not he-prevails lest the-wars long he-should-hold peace effected
Cladem vero quam diximus in Esperia plaga ut liquidius
the-disaster indeed which we-mentioned in the-Western region that more-clearly
lector cognoscat, apertius memorabo. egrediente Belesario
the-reader may-know more-openly I-shall-relate going-out Belisarius
consule ab Italia et ut diximus, rege regina opesque
the-consul from Italy and as we-have-said the-king the-queen and-the-wealth
palatii ad principem reportante Gothi, qui trans Padum
of-the-palace to the-prince carrying-back the-Goths who beyond the-Po

in Liguria consistebant, recrudiscentes animos ad bella
in Liguria were-stationed reopening their-spirits to wars
consurgunt et ordinato sibi regulo Heldebado militi
rise and appointed for-themselves as-kinglet Hildebad to-the-soldiery
existunt adversi: contra quos dum non unius, sed diversorum
stand-forth opposed against whom while not of-one but of-diverse
temptat varius apparatus, illi fortiores effecti persistunt
tries varied equipment they stronger made persist
annique spatio vix emenso Heldebadus interficitur et
and-of-a-year the-space scarcely passed Hildebad is-killed and
loco eius succedit Erarius: qui et ipse vix anno expleto
in-place his succeeds Eraric who also himself scarcely a-year completed
peremptus est et in regno. malo Italiae Baduila iuvenis
slain was and to the-kingdom to-the-ill of-Italy Baduila a-youth
nepus asciscitur Heldebadi. qui mox et sine mora Faventino
nephew is-taken of-Hildebad who soon and without delay the-Faventine
in oppido Emiliae soli proelio commisso Romanum
at town of-Emilia of-the-soil battle joined the-Roman
superavit exercitum: et nec diu post haec item per
overcame army and not long after these-things likewise through
suos ad Mucellos annonariae Tusciae feliciter dimicans
his-men at the-Mucella of-the-annonarian Tuscia successfully fighting
iudices fugat, exercitum partim donis, partim blanditiis
the-judges puts-to-flight the-army partly by-gifts partly by-blandishments
sibi consociat totamque Italiam cum ipsa Roma pervadit
to-himself he-allies and-the-whole Italy with very Rome he-overruns
omniumque urbium munimenta distruens, cunctos senatores
and-of-all the-cities the-fortifications destroying all the-senators
nudatos demolita Roma Campaniae terra transmutat. contra
stripped demolished Rome of-Campania to-the-land transfers against
quem, ut superius diximus, Belesarius de Oriente diregitur
whom as above we-have-said Belisarius from the-East is-sent

cum paucis, ratus omnem exercitum, quem demiserat,
with a-few thinking the-whole army which he-had-sent-down
integrum reperire. et ideo postquam Ravenna ingressus
intact to-find and therefore after Ravenna entered
est nec cum quibus ei obviaret invenit, remensoque
he-has nor with whom him he-might-meet he-found and-recrossed
Adriatico mare Epiro revertitur, ubi Iohannes et Valerianus
the-Adriatic sea to-Epirus returns where John and Valerian
ei coniuncti, dum in contiones et iurgia concertant,
to-him joined while in assemblies and quarrels they-contend
Totila qui Baduila hostile opus in Italia peragit. Belesarius
Totila who Baduila hostile work in Italy carries-out Belisarius
quoque inpatiens tantae crudelitati navali classe a Sicilia
also impatient of-so-great cruelty with-a-naval fleet from Sicily
solvens, per Tyrreni maris aestum Romano portu se
casting-off through of-the-Tyrrhenian sea the-surge in-the-Roman port himself
recepit statione egressusque ad urbem quam ut destructam
received at-anchorage and-having-gone-out to the-city which as destroyed
et desolatam adtendit, condoluit, hortansque socios
and desolate he-observes he-grieved and-urging his-companions
ad reparationem tantae urbis accingitur. ubi necdum
to the-repair of-so-great a-city girds-himself where not-yet
vallo circumseptus infestum experitur Totilam, sed
with-a-rampart surrounded hostile he-experiences Totila but
solitis victoriis intrepidus, quamvis cum paucis contra
with-the-accustomed victories undaunted although with a-few against
eum egressus, sic effugavit, ut plus fugientes Tiberi
him having-gone-out so he-put-to-flight that more fleeing in-the-Tiber
demergerentur quam gladio caderent. indeque hortatus
were-drowned than by-the-sword fell and-thence having-urged
exercitus regreditur Siciliam, quatenus et Romae annonae
the-army he-returns to-Sicily so-that both for-Rome of-grain

faceret cupiam et vicinus ad fretum Totilanem turbaret
he-might-make plenty and near to the-strait Totila he-might-disturb
in Campania commorantem. sed ut adsolet, rerum mutatio et
in Campania lingering but as is-wont of-affairs the-change and
principum voluntate diversa. quiescenti in domino Theodora
of-the-princes by-the-will diverse resting in the-Lord Theodora
Augusta evocatur ad urbem Belesarius de Siciliam. post
Augusta is-summoned to the-city Belisarius from Sicily after
cuius discessum Totila securus iterata rabie tradentibus
whose departure Totila secure with-renewed madness betraying-it
Isauris invadit Romam: et sic sumptis undique viribus
the-Isaurians invades Rome and thus taken from-all-sides forces
militarique vallatus auxilio ingreditur capitque Siciliam. contra
and-by-military walled-in help enters and-takes Sicily against
quem Germanus patricius dum exire disponit cum exercitu,
whom Germanus the-patrician while to-go-out he-arranges with an-army
Mathesuentham Theodorici regis neptem et a Vitigis
Matasuntha of-Theodoric the-king granddaughter and by Vitiges
mortuo derelictam, tradente sibi principe in matrimonio
having-died left handing-her to-him the-prince in marriage
sumptam, in Sardicense civitate extremum halitum fudit,
taken in the-Serdican city the-last breath poured-out
relinquens uxorem gravidam, quae post eius obitum postumum
leaving his-wife pregnant who after his death a-posthumous
ei edidit filium vocavitque Germanum: qua felicitate sibi
to-him bore son and-called-him Germanus which good-fortune for-himself
Totila conperta totam pene insultans Romanis devastat Italiam.
Totila learned the-whole almost insulting the-Romans lays-waste Italy
Africa vero a Mauris dudum perempto Solomone Stotzas
in-Africa indeed by the-Moors formerly slain Solomon Stotzas
et Iohannes invicem singulari certamine corruunt; aliusque
and John mutually in-single combat fall and-another

Iohannis, qui Stotzas iunior dicebatur, suscepta tyrannide
John who Stotzas the-younger was-called taken-up tyranny
Guntharic mag. militum secum suadet. qui interfecto
Guntharic master of-the-soldiers with-himself persuades who killed
Areobinda iugalem eius neptem imperatoris sibi cupiens
Areobindus the-wife his niece of-the-emperor to-himself desiring
sociare praevenitur ab Artabane. qui eum in convivio
to-join is-forestalled by Artabanes who him at a-banquet
trucidatum neptemque imperatoris ereptam ad urbem principi
slaughtered and-the-niece of-the-emperor rescued to the-city to-the-prince
dirigit cum honore, simulque ferreis vinculis conligatum
sends with honor and-together with-iron chains bound
ei tyrannum destinavit Iohannem, qui Stotzam peremptum
to-him the-tyrant he-sent John who Stotzas slain
in eadem successerat tyrannide. quem in urbem praefectus
in the-same had-succeeded tyranny whom in the-city the-prefect
discussum manibusque truncatis, ad exemplum ceterorum in
examined and-hands cut-off for an-example of-the-rest on
patibulo fixit. Iohannem dehinc patricium cognomine Troglitam
a-gibbet fixed John thereafter the-patrician by-surname Troglita
Africae procuratione commissa, Artabanus evocatus mag.
of-Africa the-procuratorship entrusted Artabanes recalled of-master
militum praesentis accepit dignitatem. nec diu intercedente in
of-the-soldiers of-the-presence received the-dignity nor long intervening on
ipso principe manus inicere gestiens detectus et conprobatus
very the-prince hands to-lay longing detected and proven
pietate tamen principale inpunitus permansit et quasi
by-the-piety yet princely unpunished remained and as-if
benivolus contra Totilanem Sicilia cum Liberio patricio
well-disposed against Totila to-Sicily with Liberius the-patrician
properavit. Iohannes vero in Africana provincia feliciter degens
hastened John but in the-African province successfully living

Mauros partis adversae per Pacificos Mauros superatos,
the-Moors of-the-party opposed through the-Pacified Moors overcome
una die decem et septem eorum praefectos extincxit,
in-one day ten and seven their prefects destroyed
pacemque totius Africae iubante domino impetravit.
and-the-peace of-whole Africa with-the-help-of the-Lord obtained
Langobardorum gens, socia Romani regni principibus,
of-the-Lombards the-nation allied of-the-Roman kingdom to-the-princes
et Theodahadi sororis filiam dante sibi imperatore in
and of-Theodahad of-the-sister the-daughter giving to-them the-emperor in
matrimonio iungens regi suo, contra emulos Romanorum
marriage joining to-king their against the-rivals of-the-Romans
Gepidas una die pugna commissa eorum pene castra pervasit,
the-Gepids in-one day battle joined their almost camp overran
ceciderunt*que* ex utraque parte amplius lx milia; nec par, ut
and-fell from each side more sixty thousand nor equal as
ferunt, audita est in nostris temporibus pugna a diebus Attilae
they-say heard was in our times a-battle from the-days of-Attila
in illis locis, praeter illa quae ante hanc contigerat sub Calluce
in those places except those which before this had-happened under Calluc
mag. mil. idem cum Gepidas aut certe Mundonis cum
master of-the-soldiers the-same with the-Gepids or certainly of-Mundo with
Gothis, in quibus ambobus auctores belli pariter conruerunt.
the-Goths in which both the-authors of-the-war together fell
Hi sunt casus Romanae rei publicae preter instantia
these are the-misfortunes of-the-Roman state public besides the-pressing
cottidiana Bulgarum, Antium et Sclavinorum. que si quis
daily of-the-Bulgars Antes and Sclaveni which if anyone
scire cupit, annales consulumque seriem revolvat sine
to-know desires the-annals and-of-the-consuls the-series let-him-unroll without
fastidio repperietque dignam nostri temporis rem publicam
weariness and-he-will-find worthy of-our time the-state public

tragydiae. scietque unde orta, quomodo aucta, qualiterve
of-tragedy and-he-will-know whence it-arose how increased or-how
sibi cunctas terras subdiderit et quomodo iterum eas ab
to-itself all lands it-subjected and how again them by
ignaris rectoribus amiserit. quod et nos pro captu
ignorant rulers it-lost which also we according-to the-capacity
ingenii breviter tetigimus, quatenus diligens lector latius
of-wit briefly have-touched so-that the-diligent reader more-widely
ista legendo cognoscat.
these-things by-reading may-know

ISIDORE OF SEVILLE

Historia de Regibus Gothorum

The History of the Goths, Vandals, and Suevi

Prologus

PROLOGUE · IN PRAISE OF SPAIN

Isidore praises Spain as the most beautiful of lands, mother of princes and peoples, rich in crops, olives, vines, metals, horses, and purple, temperate in climate and fertile in rulers. Rome once desired and won her, but now the flourishing nation of the Goths has seized and loves her, and enjoys her in security.

Omnium terrarum, quæque sunt ab occiduo usque ad
of-all lands which-ever are from the-west all-the-way to
Indos, pulcherrima es, o sacra, semperque felix principum,
the-Indians the-most-beautiful you-are O sacred and-ever happy of-princes
gentiumque mater Hispania. Jure tu nunc omnium regina
and-of-nations mother Spain by-right you now of-all queen
provinciarum, a qua non Occasus tantum, sed etiam
of-the-provinces from whom not the-West only but also
Oriens lumina mutuat. Tu decus, atque ornamentum orbis,
the-East lights borrows you the-glory and ornament of-the-world
illustrior portio terræ: in qua gaudet multum ac
the-more-illustrious portion of-the-earth in which rejoices much and
largiter floret Geticæ gentis gloriosa fecunditas.
abundantly flourishes of-the-Getic nation the-glorious fruitfulness
Merito te omnium ubertate gignentium indulgentior
deservedly you of-all with-the-fertility of-things-produced more-indulgent
natura ditavit. Tu baccis opima, uvis proflua, messibus
nature has-enriched you with-berries rich with-grapes flowing with-harvests
læta, segete vestiris, oleis inumbraris, vite prætexeris.
glad with-crop you-are-clothed with-olives you-are-shaded with-the-vine you-are-fringed
Tu florulenta campis, montibus frondua, piscosa littoribus.
you flowery in-plains in-mountains leafy fishy in-shores
Tu sub mundi plaga gratissima sita, nec æstivo solis
you under of-the-world the-region most-pleasing placed neither by-summer of-the-sun

ardore torreris, nec glaciali rigore tabescis, sed temperata
heat are-you-scorched nor by-icy stiffness do-you-waste but in-temperate
cœli zona præcincta, zephyris felicibus enutriris. Quidquid
of-heaven zone girded by-zephyrs happy you-are-nourished whatever
enim arva fecundum, quidquid metalla pretiosum, quidquid
for the-fields fruitful whatever the-metals precious whatever
animantia pulchrum et utile ferunt parturis. Nec illis
the-living-creatures beautiful and useful bear you-bring-forth nor to-those
amnibus posthabenda, quos clara speciosorum gregum fama
rivers to-be-held-second which famous of-handsome herds the-fame
nobilitat.
ennobles
Tibi cedet Alphæus equis, Clitumnus armentis, quanquam
to-you shall-yield the-Alpheus in-horses the-Clitumnus in-herds although
volucres per spatia quadrigas olympicis sacer palmis
winged through the-spaces chariots at-the-Olympic sacred for-palms
Alpheus exerceat, et ingentes Clitumnus juvencos capitolinis
the-Alpheus exercises and huge the-Clitumnus bullocks on-the-Capitol
olim immolaverit victimis. Tu nec Etruriæ saltus uberior
once has-sacrificed as-victims you neither of-Etruria the-glades richer
pabulorum requiris, nec lucos Molorchi palmarum plena
in-pastures do-you-seek nor the-groves of-Molorchus of-palms full
miraris, nec equorum cursu tuorum eleis curribus
do-you-admire nor of-horses at-the-course your at-the-Elean chariots
invidebis. Tu superfusis fecunda fluminibus, tu aurifluis
shall-you-envy you with-overflowing fruitful rivers you with-gold-flowing
fulva torrentibus. Tibi fons equi genitor. Tibi vellera
tawny torrents for-you the-spring the-horse begetter for-you fleeces
indigenis fucata conchyliis ad rubores tyrios inardescunt.
with-native dyed shellfish to blushes Tyrian glow

Tibi fulgurans inter obscura penitorum montium lapis
for-you flashing amid the-dark of-inmost mountains a-stone
jubare contiguo vicini solis accenditur.
with-radiance adjoining of-the-neighboring sun is-kindled
Alumnis igitur, et gemmis dives et purpuris, rectoribus
in-nurslings therefore and in-gems rich and in-purples in-rulers
pariter et dotibus imperiorum fertilis, sic opulenta es
together and in-endowments of-empires fertile so opulent you-are
principibus ornandis, ut beata pariendis. Jure itaque te
in-princes to-be-adorned as blessed in-bearing-them by-right and-so you
jam pridem aurea Roma caput gentium concupivit, et licet
already long-ago golden Rome the-head of-nations desired and though
te sibimet eadem Romulea virtus primum victrix spoponderit,
you for-itself the-same Romulean valor first victorious had-betrothed
denuo tamen Gothorum florentissima gens post multiplices in
anew yet of-the-Goths the-most-flourishing nation after manifold in
orbe victorias certatim rapuit et amavit, fruiturque hactenus
the-world victories vying seized and loved and-enjoys up-to-now
inter regias infulas et opes largas, imperii felicitate secura.
amid royal fillets and wealth abundant of-empire in-happiness secure

Historia Gothorum §§ 1–8

1–8 · ORIGINS TO ULFILAS

The Goths are an ancient people, Getae rather than Gog and Magog. They help Pompey against Caesar, ravage Greece and Asia until Claudius defeats them, and are beaten by Constantine. Athanaric persecutes the Christians among them; Valens sends Arian teachers, and Ulfilas gives them letters and the Scriptures in Gothic, after which they hold the Arian error 213 years.

Gothorum antiquissimam esse gentem certum est: quorum
of-the-Goths most-ancient to-be the-nation certain it-is whose
originem quidam de Magog, filio Japhet, suspicantur educi
origin some from Magog son of-Japheth suspect to-be-drawn
a similitudine ultimæ syllabæ, et magis de Ezechiele
from the-likeness of-the-last syllable and more from Ezekiel
propheta id colligentes. Retro autem eruditio eos magis
the-prophet it gathering formerly however learning them rather
Getas quam Gog et Magog appellare consuevit. Gens
Getae than Gog and Magog to-call has-been-accustomed a-nation
fortissima etiam Judæam terram vastatura describitur.
most-brave even the-Judean land about-to-lay-waste is-described
Interpretatio autem nominis eorum in linguam nostram tecti,
the-interpretation moreover of-the-name of-them into tongue our covered
quo significatur fortitudo; et re vera, nulla enim gens in
by-which is-signified bravery and in-thing true none for nation in
orbe fuit quæ Romanum imperium adeo fatigaverit ut hi.
the-world was which the-Roman empire so-much has-wearied as these
Isti enim sunt quos etiam Alexander vitandos pronuntiavit,
these for are whom even Alexander to-be-avoided pronounced
Pyrrhus pertimuit, Cæsar exhorruit. (Ex Oros.) Per multa
Pyrrhus dreaded Caesar shuddered-at from Orosius through many

quippe retro sæcula ducibus usi sunt, postea regibus,
for back ages leaders used they-have afterward kings
quorum oportet tempora per ordinem cursim exponere, et
whose it-befits the-times in order hastily to-set-out and
quo nomine actuque regnaverint, de historiis libata retexere.
by-what name and-deed they-reigned from histories sipped to-unweave
Anno ante æram conditam xii, dum pro arripiendo
in-the-year before the-era founded twelfth while for seizing
reipublicæ imperio, Cn. Pompeius et C. Julius Cæsar
of-the-state the-command Gnaeus Pompey and Gaius Julius Caesar
arma civilia commovissent, Gothi, ad præbendum Pompeio
arms civil had-stirred the-Goths for furnishing to-Pompey
auxilium, in Thessaliam adversus Cæsarem pugnaturi venerunt.
help into Thessaly against Caesar about-to-fight came
Ubi dum in Pompeii exercitu Æthiopes, Indi, Persæ, Medi,
where while in of-Pompey the-army Ethiopians Indians Persians Medes
Græci, Armeni, Scythæ, ac reliquæ Orientis gentes evocatæ
Greeks Armenians Scythians and the-other of-the-East nations summoned
adversus Julium dimicassent, isti præ cæteris Cæsari fortius
against Julius had-fought these beyond the-others to-Caesar more-bravely
restiterunt. Quorum Cæsar copia et virtute turbatus
resisted of-whom Caesar by-abundance and valor troubled
fertur fugam meditatus esse, nisi nox prælio finem
is-said flight pondered to-have unless night to-the-battle an-end
dedisset. Tunc Cæsar ait nec Pompeium scire vincere, nec
had-given then Caesar said neither Pompey to-know to-conquer nor
Cæsarem posse vinci. Nam si Pompeius vincere nosset,
Caesar to-be-able to-be-conquered for if Pompey to-conquer had-known
hodie cum tam asperis viris Cæsarem superasset.
today with so harsh men Caesar he-would-have-overcome

Æra ccxciv. Anno imperii Valeriani et Gallieni
Era two-hundred-ninety-four in-the-year of-the-rule of-Valerian and Gallienus
primo, Gothi, descensis montibus Alpibus, quibus
first the-Goths descended from-the-mountains the-Alps which
inhabitabant, Græciam, Macedoniam, Pontum, Asiam atque
they-inhabited Greece Macedonia Pontus Asia and
Illyricum vastaverunt. Ex quibus Illyricum et Macedoniam
Illyricum laid-waste of which Illyricum and Macedonia
15 ferme annis tenuerunt. Deinde a Claudio Imperatore
for-fifteen almost years they-held then by Claudius the-emperor
superati sedes proprias repetunt. Romani autem Claudium
overcome seats their-own seek-again the-Romans moreover Claudius
Augustum pro eo quod tam fortissimam gentem a finibus
Augustus for that that so very-brave a-nation from the-borders
reipublicæ removisset, insigni gloria honorantes, in foro
of-the-state he-had-removed with-distinguished glory honoring in the-forum
illi aureum clypeum, in capitolio auream statuam collocaverunt.
to-him a-golden shield on the-Capitol a-golden statue placed
Æra ccclxix, anno xxvi imperii Constantini,
Era three-hundred-sixty-nine in-the-year twenty-sixth of-the-rule of-Constantine
Gothi, Sarmatarum regionem aggressi, copiosissimis super
the-Goths of-the-Sarmatians the-region having-attacked in-most-abundant upon
Romanos irruerunt agminibus, vehementi virtute cuncta gladio
the-Romans rushed columns with-vehement valor all-things with-sword
et deprædatione vastantes. Adversus quos idem Constantinus
and plunder laying-waste against whom the-same Constantine
aciem instruxit, ingentique certamine vix superatos ultra
a-battle-line drew-up and-in-huge contest scarcely overcome beyond
Danubium expulit, ne diversis gentibus virtutis gloria clarus,
the-Danube expelled not diverse over-nations of-valor in-glory famous
sed de Gothorum victoria amplius gloriosus. Quem Romani,
but over of-the-Goths the-victory more glorious whom the-Romans

acclamante senatu, publica laude prosecuti sunt quod tantam
acclaiming the-senate with-public praise attended have because so-great
gentem vicerit, quod patriam rempublicam reformaverit.
a-nation he-had-conquered because the-ancestral state he-had-reformed
Æra cdvii, anno v imperii Valentis, primus
Era four-hundred-seven in-the-year fifth of-the-rule of-Valens first
Gothorum gentis administrationem suscepit Athanaricus,
of-the-Goths of-the-nation the-administration took-up Athanaric
regnans annos xiii, qui, persecutione crudelissima adversus
reigning years thirteen who a-persecution most-cruel against
fidem commota, voluit se exercere contra Gothos, qui
the-faith stirred wished himself to-exercise against the-Goths who
in gente sua Christiani habebantur, ex quibus plurimos, qui
in nation his Christians were-held of whom very-many who
Idolis immolare non acquieverunt, martyres fecit; reliquos
to-idols to-sacrifice not agreed martyrs he-made the-rest
autem multis persecutionibus affectos, dum pro multitudine
moreover with-many persecutions afflicted while for their-multitude
horreret interficere, dedit licentiam, imo magis coegit de
he-shuddered to-kill gave leave nay rather compelled from
regno suo exire, atque in Romani soli migrare provincias.
kingdom his to-go-out and into of-the-Roman soil to-migrate the-provinces
Æra cdxv, anno xiii imperii Valentis, Gothi in
Era four-hundred-fifteen in-the-year thirteenth of-the-rule of-Valens the-Goths at
Istrum adversus semetipsos in Athanarico et Fridigerno divisi
the-Ister against themselves into Athanaric and Fritigern divided
sunt, alternis sese cædibus depopulantes. Sed Athanaricus
were with-alternate each-other slaughters ravaging but Athanaric
Fridigernum Valentis imperatoris suffragio superat. Hujus
Fritigern of-Valens of-the-emperor by-the-support overcomes of-this
rei gratia legatos cum muneribus ad eumdem imperatorem
thing for-the-sake envoys with gifts to the-same emperor

mittit, et doctores propter suscipiendam Christianæ fidei
he-sends and teachers for receiving of-the-Christian faith
regulam poscit. Valens autem a veritate catholicæ fidei
the-rule demands Valens moreover from the-truth of-the-catholic faith
devius, et Arianæ hæresis perversitate detentus, missis
straying and of-the-Arian heresy by-the-perversity held sent
hæreticis sacerdotibus, Gothos persuasione nefanda sui erroris
heretical priests the-Goths by-persuasion wicked of-his error
dogmati aggregavit, et in tam præclaram gentem virus
to-the-dogma gathered and into so illustrious a-nation the-poison
pestiferum semine pernicioso transfudit, sicque errorem quem
pestilential with-seed ruinous transfused and-thus the-error which
recens credulitas ebibit, tenuit, diuque servavit.
recent credulity drank-up it-held and-long kept
Tunc Gulfilas eorum Gothorum episcopus Gothicas litteras
then Ulfilas their of-the-Goths bishop Gothic letters
condidit, et scripturas Novi ac Veteris Testamenti in
founded and the-scriptures of-the-New and Old Testament into
eamdem linguam convertit. Gothi autem, statim ut litteras
the-same tongue turned the-Goths moreover at-once as letters
et legem habere cœperunt, instruxerunt sibi dogmatis
and law to-have they-began built for-themselves of-dogma
sui Ecclesias, talia juxta eumdem Arium de ipsa divinitate
their churches such according-to the-same Arius about very divinity
documenta tenentes, ut crederent Filium Patri majestate
teachings holding that they-believed the-Son than-the-Father in-majesty
esse minorem, et æternitate posteriorem. Spiritum autem
to-be less and in-eternity later the-Spirit moreover
sanctum, nec Deum esse, neque substantiam Patris existere,
holy neither God to-be nor of-the-substance of-the-Father to-exist
sed per Filium creatum esse, utriusque ministerio deditum,
but through the-Son created to-be of-both to-the-ministry devoted

et amborum obsequio subditum. Aliam quoque Patris
and of-both to-the-service subject another also of-the-Father
sicut personam, sic et naturam asserentes; aliam Filii,
as person so also nature asserting another of-the-Son
aliam denique Spiritus sancti, ut jam non (secundum sanctæ
another finally of-the-Spirit holy that now not according-to of-the-holy
Scripturæ traditionem) unus Deus et Dominus coleretur,
Scripture the-tradition one God and Lord might-be-worshiped
sed, juxta idololatriæ superstitionem, tres dii venerarentur.
but according-to of-idolatry the-superstition three gods should-be-venerated
Cujus blasphemiæ malum per decessum temporum, regumque
of-which blasphemy the-evil through the-passing of-times and-of-kings
successum, annis ccxiii tenuerunt. Qui tandem
the-succession for-years two-hundred-thirteen they-held who at-last
reminiscentes salutis suæ, renuntiaverunt inolitæ perfidiæ, et
remembering salvation their renounced the-ingrown perfidy and
per Christi gratiam ad unitatem fidei catholicæ pervenerunt.
through of-Christ the-grace to the-unity of-the-faith catholic came

Historia Gothorum §§ 9–18

9–18 · VALENS, ALARIC, AND THE SACK OF ROME

Driven out by the Huns, the Goths enter the empire, rebel, and burn Valens. Athanaric dies in Constantinople and the Goths serve Rome, then choose Alaric. Radagaisus is starved out by Stilicho. Alaric sacks Rome but spares those in the churches and returns the vessels of Saint Peter, and dies soon after.

Æra cdxvi, anno xiv imperii Valentis, Gothi, qui
Era four-hundred-sixteen in-the-year fourteenth of-the-rule of-Valens the-Goths who
primum Christianos a terra sua expulerant, rursus ipsi
first the-Christians from land their had-expelled again themselves

ab Hunnis cum rege suo Athanarico expulsi sunt; transitoque
by the-Huns with king their Athanaric expelled were and-crossed
Danubio, cum vim ferre non possent Valentis imperatoris,
the-Danube when the-force to-bear not they-could of-Valens of-the-emperor
sese non depositis armis tradunt, et Thraciam ad
themselves not laid-down their-arms surrender and Thrace for
inhabitandum accipiunt. Sed ubi viderunt se opprimi
inhabiting receive but when they-saw themselves to-be-oppressed
a Romanis contra consuetudinem propriæ libertatis, ad
by the-Romans against the-custom of-their-own liberty to
rebellandum coacti sunt. Thraciam ferro incendiisque
rebelling forced they-were Thrace with-sword and-fires
depopulantur, deletoque Romanorum exercitu, ipsum Valentem
they-ravage and-destroyed of-the-Romans the-army very Valens
jaculo vulneratum, in quadam villa fugientem, succenderunt,
by-a-javelin wounded in a-certain farmhouse fleeing they-burned
ut merito ipse ab eis vivus temporali cremaretur
so-that deservedly he by them alive with-a-temporal should-be-burned
incendio, qui tam pulchras animas ignibus æternis tradiderat.
fire who so beautiful souls to-fires eternal had-handed-over
Invenerunt autem eo prælio Gothi confessores priores
found moreover in-that battle the-Goths confessors earlier
Gothos, quos dudum propter fidem a terra sua expulerant,
Goths whom formerly because-of the-faith from land their they-had-expelled
et voluerunt eos sibi ad prædæ societatem conjungere.
and wished them to-themselves for of-plunder fellowship to-join
Qui, cum non acquievissent, aliquanti interfecti sunt. Alii,
who when not they-had-agreed some killed were others
montuosa loca tenentes, et refugia sibi qualiacunque
mountainous places holding and refuges for-themselves of-whatever-sort
construentes, non solum perseveraverunt Christiani catholici,
building not only persevered as-Christians catholic

sed etiam in concordia Romanorum, a quibus dudum
but also in the-concord of-the-Romans by whom formerly
excepti fuerant, permanserunt.
received they-had-been remained
Æra cdxix, anno imperii Theodosii Hispani iii,
Era four-hundred-nineteen in-the-year of-the-rule of-Theodosius the-Spaniard third
Athanaricus cum Theodosio jus amicitiamque disponens, mox
Athanaric with Theodosius right and-friendship arranging soon
Constantinopolim pergit, ibique quinto decimo die postquam
to-Constantinople goes and-there on-the-fifth tenth day after
fuerat a Theodosio honorabiliter susceptus interiit. Gothi
he-had-been by Theodosius honorably received died the-Goths
autem, proprio rege defuncto, aspicientes benignitatem
moreover their-own king having-died looking-at the-kindness
Theodosii imperatoris, inito fœdere, Romano se imperio
of-Theodosius of-the-emperor entered a-treaty to-the-Roman themselves empire
tradiderunt et fuerunt cum Romanis xxviii annis.
surrendered and were with the-Romans twenty-eight years
Æra cdxx, anno imperii Theodosii iv, Gothi,
Era four-hundred-twenty in-the-year of-the-rule of-Theodosius fourth the-Goths
patrocinium Romani fœderis recusantes, Alaricum regem
the-patronage of-the-Roman treaty refusing Alaric as-king
sibi constituunt, indignum judicantes Romanæ esse
for-themselves appoint unworthy judging to-the-Roman to-be
subditos potestati, eosque sequi, quorum jam pridem leges
subject power and-them to-follow whose already long-ago laws
imperiumque respuerant, et de quorum se societate
and-rule they-had-spurned and from whose themselves fellowship
prælio triumphantes averterant.
in-battle triumphing they-had-turned-away

Æra cdxxxvii, anno imperii Honorii et Arcadii
Era four-hundred-thirty-seven in-the-year of-the-rule of-Honorius and Arcadius
quinto, Gothi, in Alarico et Radagaiso divisi, dum
fifth the-Goths into Alaric and Radagaisus divided while
semetispsos in duabus regni partibus variis cædibus
themselves in two of-the-kingdom parts with-various slaughters
lacerarent, ob excidium Romanorum concordes effecti,
they-tore for the-destruction of-the-Romans in-concord made
consilium in commune constituunt, parique intentione ad
a-counsel in common they-establish and-with-equal intent for
prædandas quascunque regiones Italiæ ab invicem dividuntur.
plundering whatever regions of-Italy from each-other are-divided
Æra cdxliii, anno Honorii et Arcadii xi, rex
Era four-hundred-forty-three in-the-year of-Honorius and Arcadius eleventh the-king
Gothorum Radagaisus, genere Scytha, cultui idololatriæ
of-the-Goths Radagaisus by-race a-Scythian to-the-worship of-idolatry
deditus, barbaricæ immanitatis feritate sævissimus, cum
devoted of-barbarous savagery in-fierceness most-cruel with
ducentis armatorum millibus Italiæ partes vehementi vastatione
two-hundred of-armed-men thousand of-Italy the-parts with-vehement devastation
aggreditur, spondens in contemptum Christi Romanorum
attacks promising in contempt of-Christ of-the-Romans
sanguinem diis suis libare, si vinceret. Cujus exercitus,
the-blood to-gods his to-pour-out if he-conquered whose army
a Stilicone duce Romano in montuosis Thusciæ locis
by Stilicho general Roman in the-mountainous of-Tuscia places
circumclusus, fame est potius quam ferro consumptus.
surrounded by-famine was rather than by-sword consumed
Ipse postremum rex captus et interfectus est.
he-himself at-last the-king captured and killed was

Æra cdxlvii, anno imperii Arcadii xv, exstincto
Era four-hundred-forty-seven in-the-year of-the-rule of-Arcadius fifteenth destroyed
Radagaiso, Alaricus consors regni, nomine quidem
Radagaisus Alaric partner of-the-kingdom in-name indeed
Christianus, sed professione hæreticus, dolens tantam
a-Christian but in-profession a-heretic grieving so-great
multitudinem Gothorum a Romanis exstinctam, in vindictam
a-multitude of-the-Goths by the-Romans destroyed for vengeance
sanguinis suorum adversus Romam prælium gessit, obsessamque
of-the-blood of-his against Rome battle waged and-besieged
impetu, igne, gladiis, irrumpit, sicque Urbs cunctarum
with-assault with-fire with-swords breaks-into and-thus the-City of-all
gentium victrix, Gothicis triumphis victa succubuit, eisque
nations victress by-Gothic triumphs conquered succumbed and-to-them
capta subjugataque servivit. Tam autem Gothi clementes ibi
captured and-subjugated served so moreover the-Goths merciful there
exstiterunt, ut votum antea darent, quod si ingrederentur
stood-forth that a-vow before they-gave that if they-should-enter
Urbem, quicunque Romanorum in locis Christi inveniretur,
the-City whoever of-the-Romans in the-places of-Christ should-be-found
in vastationem Urbis non mitteretur. Post hoc igitur votum,
into the-devastation of-the-City not would-be-sent after this therefore vow
aggressi Urbem, omnibus et mors et captivitas indulta
having-attacked the-City to-all both death and captivity remitted
est, qui ad sanctorum limina confugerunt. Sed et qui
was who to of-the-saints the-thresholds fled but also those-who
extra loca martyrum erant, et nomen Christi et sanctorum
outside the-places of-the-martyrs were and the-name of-Christ and of-the-saints
nominaverunt, et ipsis simili misericordia pepercerunt.
named also them with-like mercy they-spared

In reliquis autem, etsi præda hostium patuit, feriendi
in the-rest moreover though the-plunder of-the-enemies lay-open of-striking
tamen immanitas refrenata est. Incursantibus autem in illa
yet the-savagery restrained was rushing moreover in that
vastitate per Urbem Gothis, dum quidam potens virginem
devastation through the-City the-Goths while a-certain powerful-one a-virgin
consecratam ætate provectam reperisset, eamque honeste
consecrated in-age advanced had-found and-her honorably
admoneret ut, si quid apud se auri argentique esset,
admonished that if anything with herself of-gold and-silver there-was
proferret: illa fideli conscientia, quod habuit protulit;
she-should-bring-forth she with-faithful conscience what she-had brought-forth
cumque ille vasorum formam et pulchritudinem ex illa antiqua
and-when he of-the-vessels the-form and beauty from that ancient
Romanorum opulentia miraretur, virgo ait: Hæc vasa mihi
of-the-Romans opulence wondered-at the-virgin said these vessels to-me
de sacrario Petri apostoli deposita sunt; præsume, si audes.
from the-sanctuary of-Peter the-apostle entrusted are presume if you-dare
Ego sacram hostiam dare non audeo. Gothus ille ad nomen
I the-sacred victim to-give not dare the-Goth that at the-name
apostoli magno pavore perterritus, regi hoc per nuntium
of-the-apostle with-great fear terrified to-the-king this through a-messenger
refert, qui confestim rex reportari omnia ad sacrarium
reports who at-once the-king to-be-carried-back all-things to the-sanctuary
sancti Petri per virginem illam summa cum reverentia jussit,
of-holy Peter by virgin that highest with reverence ordered
dicens: Cum Romanis gessi bellum, non cum apostolis Dei.
saying with the-Romans I-have-waged war not with the-apostles of-God
Redit igitur virgo reverentissimis officiis honorata, redeunt et
returns therefore the-virgin with-most-reverent offices honored return also
cum illa omnes qui ei se sociaverant, super capita sua
with her all who to-her themselves had-joined upon heads their

vasa illa aurea et argentea cum hymnis et canticis reportantes,
vessels those golden and silver with hymns and songs carrying-back
exertis undique jussu regis ob defensionem armatorum
drawn-out on-all-sides by-order of-the-king for defense of-armed-men
custodiis. Concurrunt undique ad voces canentium de
with-guards run-together from-all-sides at the-voices of-those-singing from
latibulis agmina Christianorum. Concurrunt etiam et pagani,
hiding-places the-columns of-the-Christians run-together also also pagans
atque admisti inter eos, dum servos Christi se esse
and mingled among them while servants of-Christ themselves to-be
fingunt, etiam et ipsi calamitatis excidium evaserunt.
they-feign also also they-themselves of-the-calamity the-destruction escaped
Hac tempestate Gothi Placidiam Theodosii principis
at-this time the-Goths Placidia of-Theodosius the-prince
imperatoris filiam, Arcadii et Honorii imperatorum
emperor the-daughter of-Arcadius and of-Honorius the-emperors
sororem, cum ingenti auri argentique thesauro Romæ
the-sister with a-huge of-gold and-of-silver treasure at-Rome
capiunt; adeptisque multis opibus Romanorum, tertia
take and-having-gained much wealth of-the-Romans on-the-third
die, incensa eversaque in partibus Urbe, discedunt; inde
day burned and-overturned in parts the-City depart thence
conscensis navibus, cum ad Siciliam exiguo ab Italia freto
boarded ships when to Sicily by-a-small from Italy strait
divisam transire disponerent, infesto mari periclitati multum
divided to-cross they-arranged on-the-hostile sea endangered a-large
exercitum perdiderunt. Quibus tanta fuit gloria de Romanæ
army they-lost to-whom so-great was the-glory from of-the-Roman
urbis obtentu, ut in ejus comparatione nihil se mali
city the-gaining that in its comparison nothing themselves of-ill
passos tempestate illa arbitrarentur, damna naufragii
to-have-suffered in-storm that they-thought the-losses of-shipwreck

eventu victoriæ compensantes. Mors Alarici confestim
by-the-outcome of-victory compensating the-death of-Alaric at-once
secuta, vigesimo octavo regni anno defunctus est in Italia.
followed in-the-twentieth eighth of-reign year died has in Italy

Historia Gothorum §§ 19–29

19–29 · ATHAULF TO ATTILA

Athaulf marries Placidia, in whom some see Daniel's prophecy fulfilled, and is murdered at Barcelona. Wallia makes peace with Honorius, destroys the Silingi and Alans in Spain, and is given Aquitaine. Theodoric fights Rome, then joins Aetius to defeat Attila on the Catalaunian Plains, where he dies; portents foretell the battle, and the Huns, God's scourge, destroy themselves.

Æra cdxlviii, anno imperii Honorii xvii, et
Era four-hundred-forty-eight in-the-year of-the-rule of-Honorius seventeenth and
primo Theodosii Minoris, Alarico post captam Urbem
first of-Theodosius the-Younger Alaric after the-captured City
defuncto, Athaulfus a Gothis Italiæ regno præficitur
having-died Athaulf by the-Goths of-Italy over-the-kingdom is-set
annis vi. Iste, quinto regni anno de Italia recedens, Gallias
for-years six he in-the-fifth of-reign year from Italy withdrawing the-Gauls
adiit, Placidiam Theodosii imperatoris filiam, quam
approached Placidia of-Theodosius of-the-emperor the-daughter whom
Romæ Gothi ceperant, conjugem sibi assumpsit. In qua
at-Rome the-Goths had-taken as-wife for-himself took in which
prophetia Danielis a quibusdam creditur fuisse completa,
the-prophecy of-Daniel by some is-believed to-have-been fulfilled
qui ait filiam regis Austri conjungendam regi
who says the-daughter of-the-king of-the-South to-be-joined to-the-king
Aquilonis, nulla tamen de germine ejus sobole subsistente.
of-the-North no yet from the-seed her offspring surviving

Sicut, et idem in sequentibus propheta subjungit dicens:
as also the-same in the-following prophet subjoins saying
Nec stabit semen ejus. Nullus enim de utero illius exstitit
nor shall-stand seed his none for from womb her stood-forth
genitus, qui patris in regno succederet. Athaulfus autem
born who of-his-father in the-kingdom should-succeed Athaulf moreover
dum, relictis Galliis, Hispanias peteret, a quodam suorum
while left the-Gauls the-Spains he-sought by a-certain-one of-his
apud Barcinonam inter familiares fabulas jugulatur.
at Barcelona amid familiar talks has-his-throat-cut
Æra cdliv, ann. imperii Honorii xxii post
Era four-hundred-fifty-four in-the-year of-the-rule of-Honorius twenty-second after
obitum Athaulfi, a Gothis Sigericus princeps electus est,
the-death of-Athaulf by the-Goths Sigeric prince chosen was
qui, dum ad pacem cum Romanis esset promptissimus, mox
who while for peace with the-Romans he-was most-ready soon
a suis est interfectus.
by his-men was killed
Æra et anno quo supra, Walia Sigerico succedens, tribus
in-the-Era and year as above Wallia to-Sigeric succeeding for-three
annis regnum tenuit, belli causa princeps a Gothis
years the-kingdom held of-war for-the-sake prince by the-Goths
effectus, sed ad pacem divina providentia ordinatus, mox
made but for peace by-divine providence ordained soon
enim cum regnare cœpit, fœdus cum imperatore Honorio
for when to-reign he-began a-treaty with the-emperor Honorius
pepigit, Placidiam sororem ejus, quæ a Gothis Romæ
made Placidia sister his who by the-Goths at-Rome
capta fuerat, ei honorifice reddidit, promittens imperatori
captured had-been to-him honorably returned promising to-the-emperor
propter rempublicam omne certamen implendum. Itaque
on-account-of the-state every contest to-be-fulfilled and-so

ad Hispanias per Constantium patricium evocatus, Romani
to the-Spains by Constantius the-patrician summoned of-the-Roman
nominis causa cædes magnas Barbaris intulit.
name for-the-sake slaughters great on-the-Barbarians brought
Wandalos Selinguos in Bætica omnes bello exstinxit. Alanos,
the-Vandals Silingi in Baetica all in-war destroyed the-Alans
qui Vandalis et Suevis potentabantur, adeo cecidit,
who over-the-Vandals and Suevi held-power so cut-down
ut exstincto Atace rege ipsorum, pauci qui superfuerant,
that destroyed Ataces king their the-few who had-survived
oblito regni nomine, Gunderici regis Vandalorum, qui
forgotten of-kingdom the-name of-Gunderic king of-the-Vandals who
in Gallecia resederat, se regimini subjugarent. Confecto
in Gallicia had-settled themselves to-the-rule subjected completed
igitur Walia bello Hispaniæ, dum instructa navali acie,
therefore by-Wallia the-war of-Spain while drawn-up a-naval battle-line
in Africam transire disponeret, in freto Gaditani maris
to Africa to-cross he-arranged in the-strait of-the-Gaditan sea
vi gravissimæ tempestatis effractus, memor etiam
by-the-force of-a-most-grievous storm broken mindful also
illius sub Alarico naufragii, omisso navigationis periculo,
of-that under Alaric shipwreck omitted of-navigation the-danger
relictis Hispaniis, Gallias repetit; dataque ei ab imperatore
left the-Spains the-Gauls seeks-again and-given to-him by the-emperor
ob meritum victoriæ secunda Aquitania cum quibusdam
for the-merit of-victory second Aquitaine with certain
civitatibus confinium provinciarum usque ad Oceanum.
cities of-the-bordering provinces all-the-way to the-Ocean
Æra cdlvii, anno imperii Honorii xxv, Rege
Era four-hundred-fifty-seven in-the-year of-the-rule of-Honorius twenty-fifth the-king
Walia defuncto, Theuderedus successit in regno annis xxxiii.
Wallia having-died Theodoric succeeded in the-kingdom for-years thirty-three

Qui regno Aquitanico non contentus, pacis Romanæ
who with-the-kingdom Aquitanian not content of-the-peace Roman
fœdus recusat, pleraque municipia Romanorum vicina
the-treaty refuses very-many municipalities of-the-Romans neighboring
sedibus suis occupat, Arelas nobilissimum Galliæ oppidum
to-seats his occupies Arles the-noblest of-Gaul town
multa vi obsessum oppugnat. A cujus obsidione, imminente
much force besieged assaults from whose siege impending
virtute Aetii Romanæ militiæ ducis, non impunitus abscedit.
by-the-valor of-Aetius of-Roman soldiery general not unpunished he-withdraws
Remoto igitur Valentiniani imperatoris jussu a potestate
removed therefore of-Valentinian of-the-emperor by-order from power
militari Aetio, dum Theuderedus Narbonensi urbi diutina
military Aetius while Theodoric to-the-Narbonese city by-long
obsidione ac fame esset infestus, rursus a Litorio, Romanæ
siege and by-famine was hostile again by Litorius of-Roman
militiæ duce, Hunnis auxiliantibus, effugatur. Litorius autem,
soldiery general the-Huns helping he-is-put-to-flight Litorius moreover
dum primum res prosperas adversus Gothos gessisset, denuo
while first affairs prosperous against the-Goths he-had-waged again
dæmonum signis aruspicumque responsis deceptus, bellum
of-the-demons by-signs and-of-the-soothsayers answers deceived war
cum Gothis imprudenter iniit, amissoque Romano exercitu,
with the-Goths imprudently entered and-lost the-Roman army
miserabiliter superatus interiit. Fecitque intelligi quantum
wretchedly overcome perished and-he-caused to-be-understood how-much
illa quæ cum eodem periit multitudo prodesse potuerit, si fide
that which with him perished multitude to-profit could if faith
potius quam fallacibus dæmoniorum ostentis uti maluisset.
rather than deceitful of-the-demons portents to-use he-had-preferred

Exstincto igitur Litorio, pace deinde Theuderedus cum
destroyed therefore Litorius peace then Theodoric with
Romanis inita, denuo adversus Hunnos, Galliarum provincias
the-Romans entered again against the-Huns of-the-Gauls the-provinces
sæva populatione vastantes, atque urbes plurimas evertentes,
with-savage ravaging laying-waste and cities very-many overturning
in campis Catalaunicis, auxiliante Aetio, duce Romano, aperto
in the-plains Catalaunian helping Aetius general Roman in-open
Marte conflixit, ibique præliando victor occubuit. Gothi autem,
battle clashed and-there fighting victor fell the-Goths moreover
dimicante Thurismundo, Theuderedi regis filio, adeo fortiter
fighting Thorismund of-Theodoric the-king son so bravely
congressi sunt, ut inter primum prælium et postremum
engaged have that between the-first battle and the-last
trecenta fere millia hominum in eo certamine prostrarentur.
three-hundred about thousand of-men in that contest were-laid-low
Multa eodem tempore cœli et terræ signa præcesserunt,
many at-the-same time of-heaven and of-earth signs preceded
quorum prodigiis tam crudele bellum significaretur. Nam,
by-whose portents so cruel a-war was-signified for
assiduis terræmotibus factis, a parte Orientis luna fuscata
frequent earthquakes made from the-part of-the-East the-moon darkened
est, a solis occasu stella cometes apparuit, atque ingenti
was from of-the-sun the-setting a-star comet appeared and of-huge
magnitudine aliquandiu fulsit. Ab Aquilonis plaga cœlum
size for-some-time shone from of-the-North the-region the-sky
rubens, sicut ignis aut sanguis effectum est, permistis per
reddening as fire or blood made was mingled through
igneum ruborem lineis clarioribus in speciem hastarum
the-fiery redness lines brighter into the-likeness of-spears

rutilantium deformatis. Nec mirum ut tam ingenti cæsorum
glowing shaped nor wonder that so huge of-the-slain
strage divinitus tam multa signorum demonstraretur ostensio.
slaughter divinely so many of-signs should-be-demonstrated the-showing
Hunni autem, usque ad internecionem pene cæsi cum
the-Huns moreover all-the-way to annihilation almost cut-down with
rege suo Athila, relictis Galliis, Italiam perfugiunt, aliquantis
king their Attila left the-Gauls into-Italy flee some
civitatibus irruptis. Qui et ibi partim fame, partim
cities broken-into who also there partly by-famine partly
cœlestibus plagis percussi, interierunt. Misso insuper a
by-heavenly plagues struck perished sent moreover by
Marciano imperatore exercitu, forti plaga cæduntur,
Marcian the-emperor an-army with-a-strong blow they-are-cut-down
affectique nimium ac diminuti, sedes proprias repetunt, ad
and-afflicted excessively and diminished seats their-own they-seek-again to
quas rex eorum Attila, mox, ut remeavit, occubuit.
which king their Attila as-soon as he-returned fell
Post ejus obitum Hunnorum gens proprio se insuper
after his death of-the-Huns the-nation by-its-own itself moreover
excidio devastavit. Statimque inter filios ejus de obtinendo
destruction devastated and-at-once among the-sons his about obtaining
regno magna sunt exorta certamina. Atque ita Hunni, qui
the-kingdom great were arisen contests and so the-Huns who
tot cladibus antea diminuti fuerant, rursum mutuis
by-so-many disasters before diminished had-been again with-mutual
sese gladiis conciderunt. In quibus illud mirum est, ut,
each-other swords cut-down in which that wonderful is that
dum omne prælium detrimentum habeat populorum, isti vice
while every battle loss has of-peoples these the-turn

versa cadendo proficiant. Sed proinde est quia in disciplinam
reversed by-falling profit but therefore it-is because for the-discipline
fidelium positi sunt, sicut populus est gentis Persarum.
of-the-faithful placed they-are as the-people is of-the-nation of-the-Persians
Virga enim furoris Dei sunt, et quoties indignatio ejus
the-rod for of-the-fury of-God they-are and as-often-as the-indignation his
adversus fideles procedit, per eos flagellantur, ut, eorum
against the-faithful proceeds by them they-are-scourged that their
afflictionibus emendati, a sæculi cupiditate et peccato
by-afflictions corrected from of-the-world desire and sin
semetipsos coerceant, et cœlestis regni hæreditatem
themselves they-may-restrain and of-the-heavenly kingdom the-inheritance
possideant. Adeo autem hæc gens horrida est, ut cum
may-possess so moreover this nation horrid is that when
famem in bello fuerit passa, venam tangat equi, et sic
famine in war it-has suffered the-vein it-touches of-a-horse and thus
excludat hausto sanguine famem.
shuts-out drunk blood famine

Historia Gothorum §§ 30–43

30–43 · THORISMUND TO THEUDIS

Thorismund is killed by his brothers. Theodoric II crushes the Suevi and is killed by Euric, who takes much of Spain, Arles and Marseilles, and gives the Goths written laws. Alaric II falls to Clovis; Gesalic flees and dies; Theodoric of Italy rules Spain; Amalaric is killed. The Arian Theudis tolerates the Church, his Goths under Theudisclus rout the Franks, and he is murdered.

Æra cdxc, anno primo imperii Marciani,
Era four-hundred-ninety in-the-year first of-the-rule of-Marcian
Turismundus, filius Theuderedi, provehitur ad regnum
Thorismund son of-Theodoric is-advanced to the-kingdom
anno uno. Qui dum in ipsis regni sui exordiis feralis ac
for-year one who while in very of-reign his beginnings deadly and
noxius hostilia inspiraret, et multa ageret insolentius,
harmful hostile-things he-breathed and many-things did too-insolently
a Theuderico et Frigdarico fratribus est occisus.
by Theodoric and Frederic his-brothers was slain
Æra cdxci, anno ii imperii Marciani,
Era four-hundred-ninety-one in-the-year second of-the-rule of-Marcian
Theudericus, post fraternam necem, in regnum succedens,
Theodoric after fraternal murder into the-kingdom succeeding
imperavit annis xiii, qui pro eo quod imperatori Avito
ruled years thirteen who for that that to-the-emperor Avitus
sumendi imperialis fastigii cum Gallis auxilium præbuisset,
of-taking the-imperial summit with the-Gauls help he-had-furnished
ab Aquitania in Hispaniam, cum ingenti multitudine
from Aquitaine into Spain with a-huge multitude
exercitus, et cum licentia ejusdem Aviti imperatoris,
of-army and with the-leave of-the-same Avitus of-the-emperor

ingreditur, anno regni quinto. Cui cum magna copia rex
enters in-the-year of-reign fifth whom with great force king
Suevorum Recchiarius occurrens, duodecimo ab Asturicensis
of-the-Suevi Rechiar meeting at-the-twelfth from of-the-Asturican
urbis milliario, apud fluvium qui Urbicus appellatur, inito
city milestone at the-river which Urbicus is-called entered
mox certamine, superatus est, cæsis Suevorum agminibus,
soon a-contest overcome was slain of-the-Suevi the-columns
aliquantis captis, plurimisque fugatis. Ipse postremo rex
some taken and-very-many put-to-flight himself at-last the-king
telo saucius fugit, præsidioque suorum carens, ad
by-a-weapon wounded fled and-of-the-protection of-his lacking at
locum Portucale capitur, regique Theuderico vivus offertur.
the-place Portucale is-taken and-to-the-king Theodoric alive is-offered
Quo perempto, multis qui de priore certamine superfuerant
whom slain many who from the-former contest had-survived
sese tradentibus, aliquantis nihilominus trucidatis, regnum
themselves surrendering some nevertheless slaughtered the-kingdom
pene destructum est, finitumque Suevorum regnum.
almost destroyed was and-ended of-the-Suevi the-kingdom
Reliqui autem Suevi qui remanserant in extrema parte
the-rest moreover the-Suevi who had-remained in the-farthest part
Gallæciæ, Massilæ filium, nomine Maldram, sibi regem
of-Gallicia of-Massila the-son by-name Maldras for-themselves as-king
constituunt: regnum reparatur Suevorum. Occiso Recchiario,
appoint the-kingdom is-restored of-the-Suevi slain Rechiar
Theudericus de Gallæcia ad Lusitaniam victor succedens,
Theodoric from Gallicia to Lusitania victor advancing
dum Emeritensem urbem deprædari moliretur, sanctæ
while the-Emeritan city to-plunder he-strove of-the-holy

martyris Eulaliæ ostentis perterritus, cum omni protinus
martyr Eulalia by-the-portents terrified with all at-once
exercitu discedit, et Gallias repetit.
his-army departs and the-Gauls seeks-again
Mox deinde partem unam exercitus, duce Ceurila, ad Bæticam
soon then part one of-the-army as-leader Cyrila to the-Baetic
provinciam mittit, partem aliam sub Singerico et Nepotiano
province he-sends part other under Sunieric and Nepotian
ducibus ad Gallæciam dirigit, qui Suevos apud Lucum sæva
as-leaders to Gallicia directs who the-Suevi at Lugo with-savage
deprædatione vastaverunt. In Galliis autem Agrippinus comes
plunder laid-waste in the-Gauls moreover Agrippinus a-count
et civis, Ægidio comiti Romano æmulus, ut Gothorum
and citizen to-Aegidius the-count Roman a-rival that of-the-Goths
mereretur auxilia, Narbonam tradidit Theuderico. Post aliquot
he-might-earn the-aid Narbonne handed-over to-Theodoric after some-time
legati a Remismundo Masdræ filio rege Suevorum missi,
envoys by Remismund of-Maldras son king of-the-Suevi sent
ad Theudericum venerunt, pacem amicitiamque poscentes.
to Theodoric came peace and-friendship asking
Similiter Theudericus ad Remismundum remittit cum
likewise Theodoric to Remismund sends-back with
armorum adjectione, vel munerum, directa etiam conjuge,
of-arms the-addition or of-gifts sent also a-wife
quam haberet. Sallanem quoque legatum denuo Theudericus
whom he-might-have Sallanes also as-envoy again Theodoric
mittit ad Remismundum. Qui, reversus ad Gallias,
sends to Remismund who having-returned to the-Gauls
Theudericum ab Eurico fratre suo reperit interfectum.
Theodoric by Euric brother his finds slain

Æra div, ann. imperii Leonis viii, Euricus pari
Era five-hundred-four in-the-year of-the-rule of-Leo eighth Euric equal
scelere quo frater succedit in regnum ann. xvii.
crime with-which his-brother succeeds into the-kingdom years seventeen
In quo honore provectus, et crimine, statim legatos ad
in which honor advanced and crime at-once envoys to
Leonem imperatorem dirigit. Nec mora, partes Lusitaniæ
Leo the-emperor sends nor delay the-parts of-Lusitania
magno impetu deprædatur. Exercitum inde alium mittit,
with-great assault plunders an-army thence another he-sends
qui captam inde Pampilonam et Cæsaraugustam, misso
which taken thence Pamplona and Saragossa sent
exercitu, capit, superiorem quoque Hispaniam in potestatem
an-army takes upper also Spain into his-power
submittit. Tarraconensis etiam provinciæ nobilitatem, quæ
submits of-the-Tarraconensis also province the-nobility which
ei repugnaverat, exercitus irruptione evertit. In Gallias
to-him had-resisted of-the-army with-the-irruption overturns into the-Gauls
autem reversus, Arelatum urbem et Massiliam bellando
moreover having-returned Arles the-city and Marseilles by-warring
obtinuit, suoque regno utrasque adjecit.
obtained and-his to-the-kingdom both added
Iste quodam die, congregatis in colloquio Gothis, tela quæ
he on-a-certain day assembled in a-parley the-Goths the-weapons which
omnes habebant in manibus, a parte ferri vel acie,
all had in their-hands from the-part of-the-iron or in-the-edge
alia viridi, alia roseo, alia croceo, alia nigro colore naturalem
some green some rose some saffron some black in-color the-natural
ferri speciem vidit aliquandiu habuisse mutatam. Sub hoc
of-iron appearance he-saw for-some-time to-have-had changed under this
rege Gothi legum statuta in scriptis habere cœperunt, nam
king the-Goths of-laws the-statutes in writings to-have began for

antea tantum moribus et consuetudine tenebantur. Obiit
before only by-customs and usage they-were-held died
Arelati Euricus rex, morte propria defunctus.
at-Arles Euric the-king by-death his-own having-died
Æra dxxi, ann. x imperii Zenonis, Eurico
Era five-hundred-twenty-one in-the-year tenth of-the-rule of-Zeno Euric
mortuo, Alaricus, filius ejus, apud Tolosanam urbem princeps.
having-died Alaric son his at the-Tolosan city prince
Gothorum constituitur, regnans ann. xxiii, adversus quem
of-the-Goths is-appointed reigning years twenty-three against whom
Fludujus Francorum princeps Galliæ regnum affectans,
Clovis of-the-Franks prince of-Gaul the-kingdom aspiring-to
Burgundionibus sibi auxiliantibus, bellum movet, fusisque
with-the-Burgundians him helping war moves and-routed
Gothorum copiis, ipsum postremo regem apud Pictavium
of-the-Goths the-forces the-very at-last king at Poitiers
superatum interficit. Theudericus autem Italiæ rex, dum
overcome kills Theodoric moreover of-Italy king when
interitum generi comperisset, confestim ab Italia
the-death of-his-son-in-law he-had-learned at-once from Italy
proficiscitur, Francos proterit, partem regni, quam manus
sets-out the-Franks crushes the-part of-the-kingdom which the-hand
hostium occupaverat, recepit, Gothorum juri restituit.
of-the-enemies had-occupied recovered of-the-Goths to-jurisdiction restores
Æra dxlv, ann. xvii imperii Anastasii,
Era five-hundred-forty-five in-the-year seventeenth of-the-rule of-Anastasius
Gisaleicus, superioris regis filius ex concubina creatus,
Gesalic of-the-former king son from a-concubine begotten
Narbonæ princeps efficitur, regnans annos quatuor; sicut genere
at-Narbonne prince is-made reigning years four as by-birth
vilissimus, ita infelicitate et ignavia summus. Denique dum
most-base so in-unhappiness and cowardice supreme finally when

eadem civitas a Gundebado Burgundionum rege direpta fuisset,
the-same city by Gundobad of-the-Burgundians king plundered had-been
iste cum multo sui dedecore, et cum magna suorum clade,
he with much his disgrace and with great of-his slaughter
apud Barcinonam se contulit, ibique moratus quousque etiam
to Barcelona himself betook and-there having-stayed until also
regni fascibus a Theuderico fugæ ignominia privaretur.
of-the-kingdom of-the-fasces by Theodoric of-flight by-the-ignominy he-was-deprived
Inde profectus ad Africam, Vandalorum suffragium poscit,
thence having-set-out to Africa of-the-Vandals the-support demands
quo in regnum posset restitui. Qui, dum non impetrasset
by-which into the-kingdom he-could to-be-restored who when not he-had-obtained
auxilium, mox de Africa rediens, ob metum Theuderici
help soon from Africa returning for fear of-Theodoric
Aquitaniam petiit, ibique anno uno delitescens, in Hispaniam
Aquitaine sought and-there for-year one lurking into Spain
revertitur, atque a Theuderici regis duce duodecimo a
returns and by of-Theodoric the-king the-general at-the-twelfth from
Barcinona urbe milliario, commisso prælio superatus, in
Barcelona city milestone joined battle overcome into
fugam vertitur, captusque trans fluvium Druentium Galliarum
flight is-turned and-taken beyond the-river Durance of-the-Gauls
interiit, sicque prius honorem, postea vitam amisit.
perished and-thus first his-honor afterward his-life lost
Æra dxlix, anno xxi imperii Anastasii,
Era five-hundred-forty-nine in-the-year twenty-first of-the-rule of-Anastasius
Theudericus Junior, cum jamdudum consul et rex a Zenone
Theodoric the-Younger when long-since consul and king by Zeno
imperatore Romæ creatus fuisset, peremptoque Odouacro rege
the-emperor at-Rome created he-had-been and-slain Odoacer king
Ostrogothorum, atque devicto fratre ejus Honoulfo et trans
of-the-Ostrogoths and conquered brother his Onoulf and beyond

confinia Danubii effugato, xlix annis in Italia regnasset,
the-borders of-the-Danube put-to-flight forty-nine years in Italy had-reigned
rursus exstincto Gisaleico rege Gothorum, Hispaniæ regnum
again destroyed Gesalic king of-the-Goths of-Spain the-kingdom
xv annis obtinuit, quod superstes Amalarico nepoti
for-fifteen years obtained which surviving to-Amalaric grandson
suo reliquit. Inde Italiam repetens, aliquandiu omni cum
his he-left thence Italy seeking-again for-some-time all with
prosperitate regnavit, per quem etiam urbi Romæ dignitas
prosperity reigned through whom also to-the-city of-Rome dignity
non parva est restituta. Muros namque ejus iste redintegravit,
not small was restored the-walls for its he restored
cujus rei gratia a Senatu inauratam statuam meruit.
of-which thing for-the-sake from the-Senate a-gilded statue he-earned
Æra dlxiv, ann. imperii Justiniani i, Regresso
Era five-hundred-sixty-four in-the-year of-the-rule of-Justinian first having-returned
in Italiam Theuderico, et ibidem defuncto, Amalaricus
to Italy Theodoric and there having-died Amalaric
nepos ejus v annis regnavit. Qui, cum a Childeberto
grandson his for-five years reigned who when by Childebert
Francorum rege apud Narbonam prælio superatus fuisset, ad
of-the-Franks king at Narbonne in-battle overcome he-had-been to
Barcinonam trepidus fugit, effectusque omnium contemptibilis,
Barcelona fearful fled and-made of-all contemptible
ab exercitu jugulatus Narbonæ in foro interiit.
by the-army with-throat-cut at-Narbonne in the-forum perished
Æra dlxix, anno imperii Justiniani vi, post
Era five-hundred-sixty-nine in-the-year of-the-rule of-Justinian sixth after
Amalaricum Theudis in Hispania creatus, in regnum annis
Amalaric Theudis in Spain created into the-kingdom for-years
xvii, mensibus v, qui dum esset hæreticus, pacem tamen
seventeen months five who though he-was a-heretic peace yet

concessit Ecclesiæ. Adeo ut licentiam catholicis episcopis
granted to-the-Church so that leave to-catholic bishops
daret in unum apud Toletanam urbem convenire, et
he-gave into one at the-Toletan city to-come-together and
quæcunque ad Ecclesiæ disciplinam necessaria exstitissent,
whatever for of-the-Church the-discipline necessary had-stood
libere licenterque disponere. Eo regnante, dum Francorum
freely and-without-hindrance to-arrange him reigning while of-the-Franks
reges cum infinitis copiis in Hispaniam convenissent,
the-kings with infinite forces into Spain had-come-together
et Tarraconensem provinciam bello depopularent, Gothi,
and the-Tarraconensian province in-war were-ravaging the-Goths
duce Theudisclo, obicibus Hispaniæ interclusis, Francorum
as-leader Theudisclus the-barriers of-Spain shut-off of-the-Franks
exercitum multa cum admiratione victoriæ prostraverunt.
the-army much with admiration of-victory laid-low
Dux idem, prece atque ingenti pecunia sibi oblata,
the-general the-same by-prayer and by-huge money to-himself offered
viam fugæ hostibus residuis unius diei noctisque spatio
a-way of-flight to-the-enemies remaining of-one day and-night for-the-space
præbuit. Cætera infelicium turba, cui transitus collati
furnished the-rest of-the-unhappy throng to-which the-crossing of-the-granted
temporis non occurrit, Gothorum perempta gladio concidit.
time not occurred of-the-Goths slaughtered by-sword fell
Post tam felicis successum victoriæ, trans fretum inconsulte
after so happy the-success of-victory across the-strait imprudently
Gothi se gesserunt. Denique, dum adversus milites,
the-Goths themselves conducted finally when against the-soldiers
qui Septem oppidum, pulsis Gothis, invaserant, Oceani
who Septem the-town driven-out the-Goths had-invaded of-the-Ocean
freta transissent, idemque castrum magna vi certaminis
the-straits they-had-crossed and-the-same fort with-great force of-contest

expugnarent, adveniente die Dominico, deposuerunt arma,
were-storming coming the-day of-the-Lord they-laid-down their-arms
ne diem sacrum prælio funestarent. Hac igitur occasione
lest the-day sacred with-battle they-should-defile this therefore occasion
reperta, milites repentino incursu aggressi, exercitum mari
found the-soldiers in-sudden incursion having-attacked the-army by-sea
undique terraque conclusum, ignavum atque inermem adeo
on-all-sides and-land shut-in idle and unarmed so
prostraverunt, ut ne unus quidem superesset qui tantæ
laid-low that not one even survived who of-so-great
cladis excidium præteriret.
disaster the-destruction might-escape
Nec mora, prævenit mors debita principem. Vulneratur enim
nor delay overtook death owed the-prince he-is-wounded for
a quodam in palatio, qui jamdudum dementis speciem,
by a-certain-one in the-palace who long-since of-a-madman the-appearance
ut regem deciperet, simulaverat. Finxit enim arte
that the-king he-might-deceive had-feigned he-pretended for by-art
insaniam, perfoditque principem, quo vulnere ille prostratus
madness and-stabbed the-prince by-which wound he laid-low
occubuit, et vi gladii indignantem animam exhalavit.
fell and by-the-force of-the-sword his-indignant soul breathed-out
Fertur autem inter effusionem sanguinis conjurasse ne quis
it-is-said moreover amid the-pouring-out of-blood to-have-adjured lest anyone
interficeret percussorem, dicens se congruam meriti
should-kill the-striker saying himself a-fitting of-his-desert
recepisse vicissitudinem, quod et ipse privatus ducem
to-have-received requital because also himself as-a-private-man leader
suum sollicitatus occiderat.
his solicited had-killed

Historia Gothorum §§ 44–51

44–51 · THEUDISCLUS TO LEOVIGILD

Theudisclus is killed at a banquet. Agila desecrates a martyr's tomb at Córdoba, is defeated, and is killed when Athanagild rebels with imperial help. Leovigild conquers much of Spain and the Suevi, enriches the treasury and wears royal dress, but persecutes the catholics.

Æra dlxxxvi, ann. imper. Justiniani xxiii,
Era five-hundred-eighty-six in-the-year of-the-rule of-Justinian twenty-third
interempto Theudi Theudisclus superioris principis dux
slain Theudis Theudisclus of-the-former prince the-general
Gothis præficitur, regnans ann. i, menses iii, qui
over-the-Goths is-set reigning year one months three who
dum plurimorum potentum connubia prostitutione publica
while of-very-many powerful-men the-marriages by-prostitution public
macularet, et ob hæc instrueret animum ad necem
he-defiled and for these-things prepared his-mind for the-murder
multorum, præventus conjuratorum manu Hispali inter
of-many forestalled of-conspirators by-a-band at-Seville amid
epulas jugulatur, confossusque gladio exstinguitur.
the-banquet has-his-throat-cut and-pierced by-the-sword is-destroyed
Æra dlxxxvii, imper. Justiniani xxiv, exstincto
Era five-hundred-eighty-seven of-the-rule of-Justinian twenty-fourth destroyed
Theudisclo, Agila rex constituitur regnans ann. v. Iste
Theudisclus Agila king is-appointed reigning years five he
adversus Cordubensem urbem prælium movens, dum in
against the-Cordovan city battle moving while in
contemptum catholicæ religionis beatissimi martyris Aciscli
contempt of-the-catholic religion of-the-most-blessed martyr Acisclus
injuriam inferret, hostiumque ac jumentorum cruore
injury he-inflicted and-of-enemies and of-beasts with-the-gore

sacrum sepulcri ejus locum, ut profanator, pollueret,
the-sacred of-tomb his place as a-profaner he-defiled
inito adversus Cordubenses cives certamine, pœnas dignas,
entered against the-Cordovan citizens a-contest penalties worthy
sanctis inferentibus, meruit. Nam belli præsentis ultione
the-saints inflicting he-earned for of-war present by-the-vengeance
percussus, et filium ibi cum copia exercitus interfectum
struck both his-son there with the-force of-the-army killed
amisit, et thesaurum omnem cum insignibus opibus perdidit.
he-lost and the-treasure all with notable wealth lost
Ipse victus, ac miserabili metu fugatus, Emeritam se
he-himself conquered and by-wretched fear put-to-flight to-Merida himself
recepit. Adversus quem interjecto aliquanti temporis spatio,
betook against whom interposed of-some time a-space
Athanagildus tyrannidem regnandi cupiditate arripiens, dum
Athanagild tyranny of-reigning by-desire seizing when
exercitum ejus contra se Hispali missum virtute militari
the-army his against himself at-Seville sent with-valor military
prostrasset, videntes Gothi proprio se everti
he-had-laid-low seeing the-Goths by-their-own themselves to-be-overturned
excidio, et magis metuentes ne Hispaniam milites Romani
destruction and more fearing lest Spain the-soldiers Roman
auxilii occasione invaderent, Agilanem Emeritæ interficiunt,
of-help with-the-occasion should-invade Agila at-Merida kill
et Athanagildi sese regimini tradiderunt.
and of-Athanagild themselves rule surrendered
Æra dxcii, anno imper. Justiniani xxix,
Era five-hundred-ninety-two in-the-year of-the-rule of-Justinian twenty-ninth
occiso Agilane, Athanagildus regnum quod invaserat tenuit
slain Agila Athanagild the-kingdom which he-had-invaded held
ann. xiv. Hic cum jamdudum sumpta tyrannide, Agilanem
years fourteen he when long-since taken tyranny Agila

regno privare conaretur, militum sibi auxilia ab
of-the-kingdom to-deprive he-tried of-soldiers for-himself the-help from
imperatore Justiniano poposcerat, quos postea submovere
the-emperor Justinian had-demanded whom afterward to-remove
a finibus regni molitus non potuit. Adversus quos
from the-borders of-the-kingdom having-striven not he-could against whom
hucusque conflictum est. Frequentibus antea præliis
up-to-now fought it-has-been in-frequent before battles
cæsi, nunc vero multis casibus fracti atque finiti. Decessit
cut-down now indeed by-many misfortunes broken and ended died
autem Athanagildus Toleti propria morte, vacante regno
moreover Athanagild at-Toledo by-his-own death being-vacant the-kingdom
mensibus v.
for-months five
Æra dcv, ann. ii imperii Justini Minoris, post
Era six-hundred-five in-the-year second of-the-rule of-Justin the-Younger after
Athanagildum Liuva Narbone Gothis præficitur, regnans
Athanagild Liuva at-Narbonne over-the-Goths is-set reigning
ann. iii, qui secundo anno, postquam adeptus est principatum,
years three who in-the-second year after he-gained has the-rule
Leovigildum fratrem non solum successorem, sed et participem
Leovigild his-brother not only as-successor but also as-partner
regni sibi constituit, Hispaniæque administrationi
of-the-kingdom for-himself appointed and-of-Spain to-the-administration
præfecit, ipse Galliæ regno contentus. Sicque regnum
set-over himself of-Gaul with-the-kingdom content and-so the-kingdom
duos cepit, dum nulla potestas patiens consortis sit. Huic
two took though no power tolerant of-a-partner is to-this-one
autem unus tantum annus in ordine temporum reputatur
moreover one only year in the-order of-times is-reckoned
Liuvæ regis, reliqui Leovigildo fratri annumerantur.
of-Liuva the-king the-rest to-Leovigild his-brother are-counted

Æra dcvi, ann. iii imper. Justini Minoris, Leovigildus
Era six-hundred-six in-the-year third of-the-rule of-Justin the-Younger Leovigild
adeptus Hispaniæ et Galliæ principatum, ampliare regnum
having-gained of-Spain and of-Gaul the-rule to-enlarge the-kingdom
bello et augere opes statuit. Studio quippe ejus exercitus,
by-war and to-increase his-wealth resolved by-the-zeal for his of-the-army
concordante favore, victoriarum, multa præclare sortitus
agreeing with-the-favor of-victories many-things gloriously obtained
est. Cantabros namque iste obtinuit, Aregiam iste cepit,
has the-Cantabrians for he obtained Aregia he took
Sabaria ab eo omnis devicta est, cesserunt etiam armis illius
Sabaria by him all conquered was yielded also to-the-arms his
plurimæ rebelles Hispaniæ urbes. Fudit quoque diverso prælio
very-many rebellious of-Spain cities he-routed also in-different battle
milites, et quædam castra ab eis occupata dimicando recepit.
the-soldiers and certain forts by them occupied by-fighting recovered
Hermenegildum deinde filium imperiis suis tyrannizantem,
Hermenegild then his-son to-commands his tyrannizing
obsessum exsuperavit. Postremum bellum Suevis intulit,
besieged he-overcame at-last war on-the-Suevi brought
regnumque eorum in jura gentis suæ mira
and-the-kingdom their into the-jurisdiction of-nation his with-wonderful
celeritate transmisit. Hispania magna ex parte potitus.
speed transferred of-Spain in-great from part having-gained-control
Nam antea gens Gothorum angustis finibus arctabatur,
for before the-nation of-the-Goths within-narrow borders was-confined
sed offuscavit in eo error impietatis gloriam tantæ virtutis.
but darkened in him the-error of-impiety the-glory of-so-great valor
Denique Arianæ perfidiæ furore repletus, in catholicos
finally of-Arian perfidy with-fury filled against the-catholics
persecutione commota, plurimos episcoporum exsilio relegavit.
persecution stirred very-many of-the-bishops into-exile banished

Ecclesiarum reditus et privilegia abstulit, multos quoque
of-the-churches the-revenues and privileges took-away many also
terroribus in Arianam pestilentiam impulit, plerosque sine
by-terrors into the-Arian pestilence drove very-many without
persecutione illectos auro rebusque decepit. Ausus quoque inter
persecution enticed with-gold and-goods deceived he-dared also among
cætera hæresis suæ contagia etiam rebaptizare catholicos, et
the-other of-heresy his contagions even to-rebaptize catholics and
non solum ex plebe, sed etiam ex sacerdotalis ordinis
not only from the-common-people but even from of-the-priestly order
dignitate, sicut Vincentium Cæsaraugustanum, de episcopo
the-dignity as Vincent of-Saragossa from bishop
apostatam factum, et tanquam a cœlo in infernum projectum.
an-apostate made and as-if from heaven into hell cast
Exstitit autem et quibusdam suorum perniciosus, nam
he-stood-forth moreover also to-some of-his ruinous for
quoscunque nobilissimos ac potentissimos vidit, aut capite
whomever most-noble and most-powerful he-saw either in-the-head
truncavit, aut, opibus ablatis, proscripsit, et proscriptos
he-cut-off or their-wealth taken-away proscribed and the-proscribed
in exsilium misit. Fiscum quoque primus iste locupletavit,
into exile sent the-treasury also first he enriched
primusque ærarium de rapinis civium hostiumque
and-first the-public-treasury from the-plunderings of-citizens and-of-the-enemies
manubiis auxit. Primusque etiam inter suos regali veste
spoils increased and-first also among his in-royal dress
opertus in solio resedit. Nam ante eum, et habitus et
covered on a-throne sat for before him both the-dress and
consessus communis ut populo ita et regibus erat.
seating common as for-the-people so also for-the-kings was
Condidit etiam civitatem in Celtiberia, quam ex nomine
he-founded also a-city in Celtiberia which from the-name

filii, Recopolim nominavit. In legibus quoque ea quæ
of-his-son Reccopolis he-named in the-laws also those-things which
ab Eurico incondite constituta videbantur, correxit, plurimas
by Euric disorderly established seemed he-corrected very-many
leges prætermissas adjiciens, plerasque superfluas auferens.
laws omitted adding very-many superfluous taking-away
Regnavit autem ann. xviii, defunctus propria morte Toleti.
he-reigned moreover years eighteen having-died by-his-own death at-Toledo

Historia Gothorum §§ 52–56

52–56 · RECCARED

Reccared, unlike his father, is pious and peaceful. He brings the Goths to the catholic faith, condemns Arianism at a council, defeats the Franks, restores confiscated property, and dies at Toledo after a public confession of penance.

Æra dcxxiv, ann. iii imper. Mauricii, Leovigildo
Era six-hundred-twenty-four in-the-year third of-the-rule of-Maurice Leovigild
defuncto, filius ejus Recaredus regno est coronatus,
having-died son his Reccared with-the-kingdom was crowned
cultu prædítus religionis, et paternis moribus longe
with-worship endowed of-religion and from-paternal ways far
dissimilis. Namque ille irreligiosus, et bello promptissimus,
unlike for that-one irreligious and for-war most-ready
hic fide pius et pace præclarus; ille armorum artibus
this-one in-faith pious and in-peace illustrious that-one of-arms by-the-arts
gentis imperium dilatans, hic gloriosus eamdem gentem
of-the-nation the-empire widening this-one glorious the-same nation
fidei trophæo sublimans. In ipsis enim regni sui exordiis
of-faith by-the-trophy exalting in very for of-reign his the-beginnings

catholicam fidem adeptus totius Gothicæ gentis populos,
the-catholic faith having-gained of-the-whole Gothic nation the-peoples
inoliti erroris labe deserta, ad cultum rectæ fidei revocat.
of-the-ingrown error the-stain deserted to the-worship of-right faith recalls
Synodum deinde episcoporum ad condemnationem Arianæ
a-synod then of-bishops for the-condemnation of-the-Arian
hæresis, de diversis Hispaniæ et Galliæ provinciis congregat.
heresy from diverse of-Spain and of-Gaul provinces he-assembles
Cui concilio idem religiosissimus princeps interfuit, gestaque
at-which council the-same most-religious prince was-present and-the-acts
ejus præsentia sua et subscriptione firmavit, abdicans cum
its by-presence his and by-signature confirmed renouncing with
omnibus suis perfidiam, quam hucusque Gothorum populus,
all his the-perfidy which up-to-now of-the-Goths the-people
Ario docente, didicerat, et prædicans trium personarum
Arius teaching had-learned and proclaiming of-three persons
unitatem in Deum, Filium a Patre consubstantialiter
the-unity in God the-Son from the-Father consubstantially
genitum esse, Spiritum sanctum inseparabiliter a Patre
begotten to-be the-Spirit holy inseparably from the-Father
Filioque procedere, et esse amborum unum Spiritum, unde
and-the-Son to-proceed and to-be of-both one Spirit whence
et unum sunt.
also one they-are

Egit etiam gloriose bellum adversus infestas gentes fidei
he-waged also gloriously war against hostile nations of-the-faith
suscepto auxilio. Francis enim sexaginta ferme millium
received help the-Franks for with-sixty about thousand
armatorum copiis Gallias irruentibus, misso Claudio duce
of-armed-men with-forces the-Gauls rushing-into sent Claudius as-general
adversus eos, glorioso triumphavit eventu. Nulla unquam
against them with-a-glorious he-triumphed outcome none ever

in Hispaniis Gothorum victoria, vel major in bello, vel
in the-Spains of-the-Goths victory either greater in war or
similis exstitit. Prostrati sunt enim et capti multa millia
like stood-forth laid-low were for and captured many thousands
hostium, residua vero exercitus pars, præter spem in
of-the-enemies the-remaining indeed of-the-army part beyond hope into
fugam versa, Gothis post tergum insequentibus, usque in
flight turned the-Goths behind its-back following up-to into
regni sui finibus cæsa est. Sæpe etiam et lacertos contra
of-kingdom his the-borders slain was often also also his-arms against
Romanorum insolentias et irruptiones Vasconum movit. Unde
of-the-Romans the-insolences and the-irruptions of-the-Basques he-moved whence
non magis bella tractasse, quam potius gentem, quasi in
not more wars to-have-handled than rather the-nation as-if in
palæstræ ludo, pro uso certaminis videtur exercuisse.
of-a-wrestling-school sport for practice of-contest he-seems to-have-exercised
Provincias autem quas pater bello conquisivit, iste pace
the-provinces moreover which his-father by-war acquired he by-peace
conservavit, æquitate disposuit, moderamine rexit. Fuit
preserved with-equity arranged with-moderation ruled he-was
autem placidus, mitis, egregiæ bonitatis; tantamque in vultu
moreover placid mild of-excellent goodness and-so-great in his-face
gratiam habuit, et tantam in animo benignitatem gessit, ut
grace he-had and so-great in mind kindness bore that
omnium mentibus influens, etiam malos ad affectum amoris
of-all into-the-minds flowing even the-wicked to the-affection of-love
sui attraheret. Adeo liberalis, ut opes privatorum, et
for-him he-drew so liberal that the-wealth of-private-men and
Ecclesiarum prædia, quæ paterna labes fisco associaverat,
of-the-churches the-estates which the-paternal stain to-the-treasury had-joined

juri proprio restauraret. Adeo clemens, ut populi tributa
to-right their-own he-restored so merciful that of-the-people the-tributes
sæpe indulgentiæ largitione laxaret.
often of-indulgence by-the-largesse he-relaxed
Multos etiam ditavit rebus, plurimos sublimavit honoribus.
many also he-enriched with-goods very-many exalted with-honors
Opes suas in miseris, thesauros suos in egenis
his-wealth his among the-wretched treasures his among the-needy
recondens, sciens ad hæc illi fuisse collatum regnum,
storing knowing for these-things to-him to-have-been conferred the-kingdom
ut eo salubriter frueretur, bonis initiis bonum finem
that it healthfully he-might-enjoy with-good beginnings a-good end
adeptus. Fidem enim rectæ gloriæ, quam initio regni
having-gained the-faith for of-right glory which at-the-beginning of-reign
percepit, novissime publica confessione pœnitentiæ cumulavit.
he-received at-the-last by-public confession of-penance he-crowned
Toleti fine pacifico transiit, qui regnavit annos xv.
at-Toledo in-an-end peaceful he-passed who reigned years fifteen

Historia Gothorum §§ 57–65

57–65 · LIUVA TO SUINTHILA

Liuva II is overthrown by Witteric, who is killed at a banquet. Gundemar fights the Basques and the imperial troops. Sisebut forces the Jews to convert, wins against the Romans and Asturians, and ransoms captives. Suinthila drives the Romans from Spain and subdues the Basques; Isidore praises him and his son Racimir.

Æra dcxxxix, an. imperii Mauricii xix, post
Era six-hundred-thirty-nine in-the-year of-the-rule of-Maurice nineteenth after
Recaredum regem regnat Liuva filius ejus an. ii, ignobili
Reccared the-king reigns Liuva son his years two of-an-ignoble

quidem matre progenitus, sed virtutis indole insignitus.
indeed mother begotten but of-virtue by-the-nature distinguished
Quem in primo flore adolescentiæ Wictericus, sumpta
whom in the-first flower of-adolescence Witteric taken
tyrannide, innocuum regno dejecit, præcisaque dextra
tyranny innocent from-the-kingdom cast-down and-cut-off his-right-hand
occidit anno ætatis xx; regni vero ii.
killed in-the-year of-age twentieth of-reign indeed second
Æra dcxli, an. imp. Mauricii xxi, exstincto
Era six-hundred-forty-one in-the-year of-the-rule of-Maurice twenty-first destroyed
Liuvane, Wictericus regnum, quod vivente illo invaserat,
Liuva Witteric the-kingdom which living him he-had-invaded
vindicat ann. vii. Vir quidem strenuus in armorum arte,
claims years seven a-man indeed vigorous in of-arms the-art
sed tamen expers victoriæ. Namque adversus militem
but yet without-share of-victory for against the-soldiery
Romanum prælium sæpe molitus, nihil satis gloriose
Roman battle often having-attempted nothing enough gloriously
gessit præter quod milites quosdam Segontiæ per duces
he-did except that soldiers certain at-Segontia through generals
obtinuit. Hic in vita plurima illicita fecit, in morte
he-obtained he in life very-many unlawful-things did in death
autem, quia gladio operatus fuerat, gladio periit. Mors
moreover because by-the-sword worked he-had by-the-sword he-perished the-death
quippe innocentis inulta in illo non fuit: inter epulas
for of-the-innocent unavenged in him not was amid the-banquets
enim prandii conjuratione quorumdam est interfectus, corpus
for of-dinner by-the-conspiracy of-some was killed body
ejus viliter est exportatum atque sepultum.
his meanly was carried-out and buried

Æra dcxliix, an. imp. Phocatis octavo,
Era six-hundred-forty-eight in-the-year of-the-rule of-Phocas eighth
Gundemarus post Wictericum regnat an. ii. Hic Vascones
Gundemar after Witteric reigns years two he the-Basques
una expeditione vastavit, alia militem Romanum obsedit.
in-one expedition laid-waste in-another the-soldiery Roman besieged
Morte propria Toleti decessit.
by-death his-own at-Toledo died
Æra dcl, an. imperii Heraclii ii. Sisebutus
Era six-hundred-fifty in-the-year of-the-rule of-Heraclius second Sisebut
christianissimus post Gundemarum, ad regale fastigium
most-Christian after Gundemar to the-royal summit
evocatur, regnat ann. viii; mens. vi; qui initio regni
is-summoned reigns years eight months six who at-the-beginning of-reign
Judæos ad fidem Christianam permovens, æmulationem
the-Jews to the-faith Christian moving zeal
quidem habuit, sed non secundum scientiam; potestate enim
indeed had but not according-to knowledge by-power for
compulit quos provocare fidei ratione oportuit. Sed, sicut est
he-compelled whom to-call-forth of-faith by-reason it-was-fitting but as it-is
scriptum, sive per occasionem, sive per veritatem, donec
written whether by occasion or by truth so-long-as
Christus annuntiatur. Fuit autem eloquio nitidus, sententia
Christ is-proclaimed he-was moreover in-eloquence elegant in-judgment
doctus, scientia litterarum magna ex parte imbutus. In
learned in-knowledge of-letters in-great from part steeped in
judiciis justitia et pietate strenuus ac præstantissimus,
judgments in-justice and in-piety vigorous and most-excellent
mente benignus, splendore regni præcipuus, in bellicis
in-mind kind in-the-splendor of-the-kingdom foremost in warlike
quoque documentis ac victoriis clarus.
also proofs and victories famous

Astures enim rebellantes, misso exercitu, in ditionem suam
the-Asturians for rebelling sent an-army into dominion his
reduxit. Ruccones montibus arduis undique conseptos per
he-brought-back the-Ruccones by-mountains steep on-all-sides fenced through
duces evicit. De Romanis quoque præsens bis feliciter
generals he-overcame over the-Romans also present twice happily
triumphavit, et quasdam eorum urbes expugnando sibi
he-triumphed and certain their cities by-storming to-himself
subjecit, residuas inter fretum omnes exinanivit, quas
subjected the-remaining within the-strait all he-emptied which
gens Gothorum post in ditionem suam facile redegit.
the-nation of-the-Goths afterward into dominion its easily brought
Adeo post victoriam clemens, ut multos ab exercitu suo
so after victory merciful that many by army his
hostili præda in servitutem redactos, pretio dato, absolveret,
as-hostile plunder into servitude reduced the-price given he-freed
ejusque thesaurus redemptio existeret captivorum. Hunc
and-his treasure the-redemption became of-captives him
alii proprio morbo, alii immoderato medicamenti haustu,
some by-his-own disease others by-immoderate of-medicine a-draft
alii veneno asserunt interfectum. Cujus exitus non modo
others by-poison assert killed whose end not only
religiosis, sed etiam optimis laicis exstitit luctuosus. Relicto
to-the-religious but also to-the-best laymen stood-forth mournful left
Recaredo filio parvulo, qui post patris obitum princeps
Reccared his-son a-little-one who after of-his-father the-death prince
paucorum dierum, morte interveniente, habetur.
of-a-few days death intervening is-held
Æra dclix, ann. imperii Heraclii x, gloriosissimus
Era six-hundred-fifty-nine in-the-year of-the-rule of-Heraclius tenth the-most-glorious
Suintila gratia divina regni suscepit sceptra. Iste
Suinthila by-grace divine of-the-kingdom took-up the-scepters he

sub rege Sisebuto ducis nactus officium, Romana
under king Sisebut of-a-general having-obtained the-office the-Roman
castra perdomavit, Ruccones superavit. Postquam vero
camps thoroughly-subdued the-Ruccones overcame after indeed
apicem fastigii regalis conscendit, urbes residuas quas in
the-peak of-the-summit royal he-ascended the-cities remaining which in
Hispaniis Romana manus agebat, prælio conserto obtinuit,
the-Spains the-Roman hand held in-battle joined he-obtained
auctamque triumphi gloriam præ cæteris regibus felicitate
and-increased of-triumph the-glory beyond the-other kings with-good-fortune
mirabili reportavit. Totius Hispaniæ infra Oceani fretum
wonderful brought-back of-whole Spain within of-the-Ocean strait
monarchia regni primus idem potitus, quod nulli
the-monarchy of-the-kingdom first the-same having-gained which to-none
retro principum est collatum. Auxit eo prælio virtutis
formerly of-the-princes was granted he-increased in-that battle of-valor
ejus titulum duorum patritiorum obtentus, quorum alterum
his the-title of-two patricians by-the-gaining of-whom the-one
prudentia suum fecit, alterum virtute prælii sibi subjecit.
by-prudence his made the-other by-the-valor of-battle to-himself subjected
Habuit quoque et initio regni expeditionem contra
he-had also also at-the-beginning of-the-reign an-expedition against
incursus Vasconum Tarraconensem provinciam infestantium,
the-incursions of-the-Basques the-Tarraconensian province infesting
ubi adeo montivagi populi terrore adventus ejus
where so the-mountain-roaming peoples by-the-terror of-the-arrival his
perculsi sunt, ut confestim, quasi debita jura noscentes,
struck were that at-once as-if owed rights knowing
remissis telis et expeditis ad precem manibus, supplices
sent-back weapons and freed for prayer hands as-suppliants
ei colla submitterent, obsides darent, Ologitin civitatem
to-him their-necks they-lowered hostages they-gave Ologitis the-city

Gothorum stipendiis suis et laboribus conderent, pollicentes
of-the-Goths with-expenses their and labors they-should-found promising
ejus regno ditionique parere, et quidquid imperaretur
his to-the-kingdom and-dominion to-obey and whatever should-be-commanded
efficere.
to-carry-out
Præter has militaris gloriæ laudes plurimæ in eo regiæ
besides these of-military glory praises very-many in him of-royal
majestatis virtutes, fides, prudentia, industria, in judiciis
majesty virtues faith prudence diligence in judgments
examinatio, strenua in regendo regno cura, præcipua
examination vigorous in ruling the-kingdom care special
circa omnes munificentia largus, erga indigentes et inopes
toward all in-munificence generous toward the-needy and the-poor
misericordia satis promptus. Ita ut non solum princeps
in-mercy quite ready so that not only prince
populorum, sed etiam pater pauperum vocari sit dignus.
of-the-peoples but also father of-the-poor to-be-called he-be worthy
Hujus filius Racimirus in consortium regni assumptus,
his son Racimir into partnership of-the-kingdom taken
pari cum patre solio conlætatur, in cujus infantia ita
equal with his-father on-the-throne rejoices in whose infancy so
sacræ indolis splendor emicat, ut in eo et meritis et vultu
of-sacred nature the-splendor flashes that in him both in-merits and in-face
paternarum virtutum effigies prænotetur. Pro quo exorandus
of-paternal virtues the-likeness is-foreshown for whom to-be-entreated
est cœli atque humani generis rector, ut sicut exstat
is of-heaven and of-the-human race the-ruler that as he-stands
concessu patrio socius, ita post longævum parentis imperium
by-the-grant paternal partner so after long of-his-parent the-rule
sit et regni successione dignissimus. Computatis
he-may-be also of-the-kingdom in-the-succession most-worthy reckoned

igitur Gothorum regum temporibus ab exordio Athanarici
therefore of-the-Goths kings the-times from the-beginning of-Athanaric
regis, usque ad quintum gloriosissimi Suintilæ principis
the-king all-the-way to the-fifth of-the-most-glorious Suinthila prince
annum, regnum Gothorum per annos cclvi, Deo
year the-kingdom of-the-Goths through years two-hundred-fifty-six God
favente, reperitur esse porrectum.
favoring is-found to-be extended

Recapitulatio

RECAPITULATION · IN PRAISE OF THE GOTHS

Isidore summarizes the Goths' Scythian origin and their journey to Spain, praising their swiftness, strength, and courage. Rome itself served them, the Alans were destroyed and the Suevi humbled. Strong on horseback and in war, under Sisebut they have also taken to the sea.

Gothorum antiquissima origo de Magog filio Japhet
of-the-Goths most-ancient the-origin from Magog son of-Japheth
fuit, unde et Scytharum genus exstitit. Nam iidem Gothi
was whence also of-the-Scythians the-race arose for the-same Goths
Scythica probantur origine nati. Unde nec longe a vocabulo
by-Scythian are-proved origin born whence not far from the-name
discrepant. Demutata enim ac detracta littera, Getæ, quasi
do-they-differ changed for and removed a-letter Getae as-if
Scythæ, sunt nuncupati. Hi igitur Septentrionis glacialia juga
Scythae they-were named these therefore of-the-North the-icy ridges
inhabitantes circa Scythica regna, quæque sunt ardua montium
inhabiting around the-Scythian kingdoms whatever are steep of-mountains
cum cæteris gentibus possidebant, quibus sedibus impetu
with the-other nations possessed from-which seats by-the-onset

gentis Hunnorum pulsi, transgressoque Danubio, Romanis
of-the-nation of-the-Huns driven and-having-crossed the-Danube to-the-Romans
se dederunt. Sed, dum injurias eorum non sustinerent,
themselves surrendered but when the-injuries their not they-bore
indignati, regem sibi ex sua turba legunt, Thraciam
indignant a-king for-themselves from their throng they-choose Thrace
irruunt, Italiam vastant, obsessam Urbem capiunt, Gallias
they-rush-into Italy they-lay-waste the-besieged City they-take the-Gauls
aggrediuntur, patefactisque Pyrenæis montibus, Hispanias usque
they-attack and-opened the-Pyrenean mountains to-the-Spains up-to
perveniunt, ibique sedem vitæ atque imperium locaverunt.
they-come and-there the-seat of-life and empire they-placed
Populi natura pernices, ingenio alacres, conscientiæ viribus
a-people by-nature swift in-wit keen of-conscience on-the-strength
freti, robore corporis validi, staturæ proceritate ardui, gestu
relying in-strength of-body powerful of-stature in-tallness lofty in-bearing
habituque conspicui, manu prompti, duri vulneribus, juxta
and-dress conspicuous in-hand ready hard to-wounds according-to
quod ait poeta de ipsis: Mortem contemnunt laudato
what says the-poet about them death they-scorn praised
vulnere Getæ.
a-wound the-Getae
Quibus tanta exstitit magnitudo bellorum, et tam extollens
to-whom so-great stood-forth a-greatness of-wars and so exalting
gloriosæ victoriæ virtus, ut Roma ipsa victrix omnium
of-glorious victory valor that Rome itself the-victress of-all
populorum, subacta captivitatis jugo, Geticis triumphis
peoples subdued of-captivity by-the-yoke to-the-Getic triumphs
accederet, et domina cunctarum gentium illis ut famula
acceded and the-mistress of-all nations to-them as a-maidservant
deserviret.
served

Hos Europæ omnes tremuere gentes, Alpium his cessere
these of-Europe all trembled-at the-nations of-the-Alps to-these yielded
obices. Vandalica et ipsa crebro opinata barbaries non
the-barriers the-Vandal and itself often renowned barbarism not
tantum præsentia eorum exterrita, quam opinione fugata
so-much by-presence their terrified as by-repute put-to-flight
est. Gothorum vigore Alani exstincti sunt, Suevi quoque
was of-the-Goths by-vigor the-Alans destroyed were the-Suevi also
hactenus intra inaccessos Hispaniarum angulos coarctati,
up-to-now within the-inaccessible of-the-Spains corners confined
etiam eorum armis periculum finis experti sunt, et
even their by-arms the-danger of-the-end experienced have and
regno, quod desidioso torpore tenuerunt, turpiori nunc
the-kingdom which in-slothful torpor they-held by-a-more-shameful now
dispendio caruerunt, quanquam tenuisse hucusque valde sit
loss they-have-lost although to-have-held-it up-to-now very be
mirum, quo sine experimento defensionis carere potuerunt.
wonderful which without trial of-defense to-lose they-could
Sed quis poterit tantam Gothicæ gentis edicere virium
but who shall-be-able so-great of-the-Gothic nation to-declare of-strength
magnitudinem, quandoquidem dum multis gentibus vix
the-greatness since while to-many nations scarcely
precum causa et munerum regnare licuerit, his
of-prayers for-the-sake and of-gifts to-reign it-has-been-permitted to-these
tamen libertas magis de congressione quam de petita contigit
yet liberty rather from the-encounter than from sought befell
pace, atque ubi sese necessitas bellandi opposuit, vires eos
peace and where itself the-necessity of-warring opposed strength them
potius quam preces adhibuisse? Porro in armorum artibus
rather than prayers to-have-applied further in of-arms the-arts
spectabiles satis sunt, et non solum hastis, sed et jaculis
remarkable enough they-are and not only with-spears but also with-javelins

equitando confligunt. Nec equestri tantum prælio, sed et
riding they-fight nor in-equestrian only battle but also
pedestri incedunt. Verumtamen magis equitum præpeti cursu
on-foot they-advance nevertheless more of-horsemen in-the-swift course
confidunt, unde et poeta: Getes, inquit, quo pergit equo.
they-trust whence also the-poet the-Getan says where he-goes on-horse
Exercere enim se telis ac præliis præludere maxime
to-exercise for themselves with-weapons and in-battles to-prelude most
diligunt. Ludorum certamina usu quotidiano gerunt. Hac
they-love of-games the-contests in-use daily they-wage of-this
sola tantum armorum experientia hucusque carebant, quod
alone only of-arms experience up-to-now they-were-lacking that
classica bella in mari gerere non studebant. Sed postquam
naval wars on the-sea to-wage not they-were-eager but after
Sisebutus princeps cœlesti gratia regni sumpsit sceptra,
Sisebut the-prince by-heavenly grace of-the-kingdom took the-scepters
ejus studiis ad tantam felicitatis virtutem profecti sunt,
his by-zeal to so-great of-good-fortune valor they-advanced have
ut non solum terras, sed et ipsa maria suis armis
that not only the-lands but also the-very seas their arms
adeant, subactusque serviat illis Romanus miles, quibus
they-approach and-subdued serves them the-Roman soldier whom
servire tot gentes et ipsam Hispaniam videt.
to-serve so-many nations and very Spain he-sees

Historia Wandalorum

THE VANDALS

The Vandals, Alans, and Suevi cross the Rhine, enter Spain amid famine and slaughter, and divide its provinces. Gaiseric becomes an Arian, takes Africa and Carthage, persecutes the catholics, and sacks Rome. His successors persecute or tolerate the Church until Belisarius captures Gelimer and the Vandal kingdom ends after 113 years.

Æra cdxliv, ante biennium irruptionis Romanæ
Era four-hundred-forty-four before two-years of-the-irruption of-the-Roman
urbis excitatæ per Stiliconem gentes Alanorum, Suevorum
city roused by Stilicho the-nations of-the-Alans of-the-Suevi
et Vandalorum, trajecto Rheno fluvio, in Gallias irruunt,
and of-the-Vandals crossed the-Rhine river into the-Gauls rush
Francos proterunt, directoque impetu ad Pyrenæum usque
the-Franks they-crush and-directed in-onset to the-Pyrenees up-to
perveniunt, cujus obice per Didymum et Veranianum
they-come whose barrier by Didymus and Veranianus
Romanos nobilissimos ac potentissimos fratres occupato,
Roman most-noble and most-powerful brothers occupied
ab Hispania tribus annis repulsi, per circumjacentes
from Spain for-three years repulsed through the-surrounding
Galliæ provincias vagabantur. Sed postquam iidem fratres,
of-Gaul provinces they-wandered but after the-same brothers
qui privato præsidio Pyrenæi claustra tuebantur, ob
who with-private garrison of-the-Pyrenees the-barriers guarded for
suspicionem tyrannidis, insontes, et nulla culpa obnoxii,
suspicion of-tyranny innocent and to-no fault liable

a Constantio Cæsare interfecti sunt, æra cdxlvi,
by Constantius Caesar killed were in-the-Era four-hundred-forty-six
memoratæ gentes Hispaniarum provincias irrumpunt.
the-aforesaid nations of-the-Spains the-provinces rush-into
Æra cdxlvi, Vandali, Alani et Suevi Hispanias
Era four-hundred-forty-six the-Vandals Alans and Suevi the-Spains
occupantes, neces vastationesque cruentis discursionibus
occupying murders and-devastations with-bloody raids
faciunt, urbes incendunt, substantiam direptam exhauriunt, ita
make cities they-burn the-substance seized they-drain so
ut humanæ carnes vi famis devorarentur a populis.
that human flesh by-the-force of-famine was-devoured by the-peoples
Edebant filios suos matres; bestiæ quoque morientium
ate sons their mothers the-beasts also of-the-dying
gladio, fame ac peste, cadaveribus assuetæ, etiam in
by-the-sword by-famine and by-pestilence to-the-corpses accustomed even into
vivorum efferebantur interitum, atque ita quatuor plagis
of-the-living were-borne the-destruction and so four plagues
per omnem Hispaniam sævientibus, divinæ iracundiæ
through all Spain raging of-the-divine wrath
per prophetas scripta olim prænuntiatio adimpletur.
through the-prophets written once the-foretelling is-fulfilled
Æra cdlix, post plagarum diram perniciem, quibus
Era four-hundred-fifty-nine after of-the-plagues the-dire ruin by-which
Hispania cæsa est, tandem Barbari, ad pacem ineundam,
Spain cut-down was at-last the-Barbarians to peace entering
Deo miserante, conversi, sorte in possessionem sibi
God pitying turned by-lot into possession for-themselves
ejus provincias dividunt. Gallæciam enim Vandali et Suevi
its provinces divide Gallicia for the-Vandals and Suevi
occupant; Alani Lusitaniam et Carthaginiensem provinciam;
occupy the-Alans Lusitania and the-Carthaginian province

Vandali autem, cognomine Selingui, relicta Gallæcia, et
the-Vandals moreover by-surname Silingi left Gallicia and
postquam Tarraconensis provinciæ insulas devastarunt,
after of-the-Tarraconensian province the-islands they-laid-waste
regressi, Bæticam sortiuntur. Hispani autem per civitates
having-returned Baetica obtain-by-lot the-Spaniards moreover through cities
et castella residua plagis afflicti Barbarorum dominantium
and fortresses remaining by-plagues afflicted of-the-Barbarians ruling
sese servituti subjiciunt. Primus autem in Hispania
themselves to-the-servitude subject first moreover in Spain
Gundericus rex Vandalorum successit, regnans Gallæciæ partibus
Gunderic king of-the-Vandals succeeded reigning of-Gallicia in-parts
annis xiix. Qui, dum, rupto fœdere pacis, Suevorum gentem
years eighteen who while broken the-treaty of-peace of-the-Suevi the-nation
in Erbasis montibus obsideret, relicta obsidione Suevorum,
in the-Erbasian mountains besieged left the-siege of-the-Suevi
Balearicas Tarraconensis provinciæ insulas deprædatur. Deinde,
the-Balearic of-the-Tarraconensian province islands plunders then
Carthagine Spartaria eversa, cum omnibus Vandalis, ad Bæticam
Carthago Spartaria overturned with all the-Vandals to Baetica
transit, Hispalim diruit, actaque cæde, in direptionem mittit.
crosses Seville destroys and-done slaughter into plunder sends
Qui cum auctoritate regiæ potestatis irreverenter manus in
who when by-authority of-royal power irreverently his-hands against
basilicam Vincentii martyris civitatis ipsius extendisset, mox
the-basilica of-Vincent the-martyr of-the-city itself had-stretched soon
Dei judicio in foribus templi dæmonio correptus interiit.
of-God by-the-judgment at the-doors of-the-temple by-a-demon seized perished
Æra cdlxvi. Gisericus, frater Gunderici, succedit in
Era four-hundred-sixty-six Gaiseric brother of-Gunderic succeeds into
regnum annis xl. Qui, ex catholico effectus apostata, in
the-kingdom for-years forty who from a-catholic made an-apostate into

Arianam primus fertur transisse perfidiam. Hic de Bæticæ
the-Arian first is-said to-have-passed perfidy he from of-Baetica
provinciæ littore cum Vandalis omnibus, eorumque familiis,
province the-shore with the-Vandals all and-their families
ad Mauritaniam et Africam, relictis Hispaniis, transfretavit.
to Mauretania and Africa left the-Spains crossed-the-strait
Cui Valentinianus Junior, Occidentis imperator, non valens
to-whom Valentinian the-Younger of-the-West emperor not able
obsistere, pacem mittit, et partem Africæ quam Vandali
to-resist peace sends and part of-Africa which the-Vandals
possiderent tanquam pacifice dedit, conditionibus ab eo
might-possess as-if peaceably gave conditions from him
sacramenti acceptis ne quid ultra invaderet.
of-oath received lest anything further he-should-invade
Ille autem, de cujus amicitia nihil ambigebatur, violata
he moreover about whose friendship nothing was-doubted violated
sacramenti religione, Carthaginem dolo pacis invadit, omnesque
of-the-oath the-religion Carthage by-guile of-peace invades and-all
opes ejus, excruciatis diverso tormentorum genere civibus,
the-wealth its tortured with-diverse of-torments kind the-citizens
in jus proprium vertit. Deinde Siciliam deprædatur,
into right his-own turned then Sicily plunders
Panormum obsedit, Arianam pestilentiam per totam Africam
Palermo besieged the-Arian pestilence through all Africa
intromittit, sacerdotes Ecclesiis pellit, martyres plurimos
lets-in the-priests from-the-churches drives martyrs very-many
facit, et juxta prophetiam Danielis, demutatis mysteriis,
makes and according-to the-prophecy of-Daniel changed the-mysteries
sanctorum ecclesias Christi hostibus tradidit. Nec jam
of-the-saints the-churches of-Christ to-the-enemies handed-over nor now
divini cultus loca, sed suorum esse habitacula jussit.
of-divine worship the-places but of-his to-be dwellings he-ordered

Adversus quem Theodosius Minor, Orientis imperator, bellum
against whom Theodosius the-Younger of-the-East emperor war
paravit, quod ad effectum non venit. Hunnis enim Thraciam
prepared which to effect not came the-Huns for Thrace
Illyricumque vastantibus, exercitus ad Vandalos missus,
and-Illyricum laying-waste the-army against the-Vandals sent
ad defendendos Thraces Illyrianosque, ex Sicilia revocatur.
for defending the-Thracians and-Illyrians from Sicily is-recalled
Majorianus autem imperator de Italia Hispanias veniens, cum
Majorian moreover the-emperor from Italy to-the-Spains coming when
in Carthaginiensi provincia aliquantas naves sibi ad transitum
in the-Carthaginian province some ships for-himself for the-crossing
adversus Vandalos præparasset, eas de littore Carthaginiensi
against the-Vandals he-had-prepared them from the-shore Carthaginian
commoniti Vandali per proditores arripiunt. Sicque
warned the-Vandals through traitors seize and-so
Majorianus, a sua dispositione frustratus, Italiam revertitur,
Majorian from his arrangement frustrated to-Italy returns
atque, a Ricchimiro patritio fraude circumventus, occiditur.
and by Ricimer the-patrician by-fraud circumvented is-killed
Quo comperto, Gisericus, non contentus solis Africæ
which learned Gaiseric not content with-only of-Africa
vastationibus, navibus advectus, Romam ingreditur, direptisque
devastations by-ships carried Rome enters and-plundered
per xiv dies opibus Romanorum, relictam Valentiniani,
through fourteen days the-wealth of-the-Romans the-widow of-Valentinian
et filias ejus, et multa millia captivorum secum tulit.
and daughters her and many thousands of-captives with-himself carried
Mox Carthaginem redit; et, per legatos ab imperatore
soon to-Carthage returns and through envoys from the-emperor
postulata pace, Valentiniani relictam Constantinopolim remittit,
asked peace of-Valentinian the-widow to-Constantinople sends-back

quarum unam ex filiabus suis filio suo Hugnerico jure
of-whom one of the-daughters his to-son his Huneric by-right
matrimonii copulavit. Sicque post multarum provinciarum
of-marriage joined and-so after of-many provinces
clades, Christianorumque spolia atque neces, moritur regni
the-disasters and-of-the-Christians spoils and murders he-dies of-reign
sui anno xl.
his in-the-year fortieth
Æra dvi, post Gisericum, Ugnericus, Giserici filius,
Era five-hundred-six after Gaiseric Huneric of-Gaiseric son
regnat annis vii, mensibus v, habens in conjugio Valentiniani
reigns years seven months five having in marriage of-Valentinian
filiam, quam pater ejus ex Roma cum matre captivam
the-daughter whom father his from Rome with her-mother captive
adduxerat, qui et ipse, Ariano suscitatus furore, Catholicos
had-brought who also himself by-Arian roused fury the-Catholics
per totam Africam atrocior patre persequitur, ecclesias
through all Africa more-atrocious than-his-father persecutes the-churches
tollit, sacerdotes et cuncti ordinis clericos in exsilium
takes-away the-priests and of-every order clerics into exile
mittit. Monachos quoque atque laicos quatuor circiter millia
sends monks also and laymen four about thousand
exsiliis durioribus relegavit, martyres fecit, confessoribus
into-exiles harsher banished martyrs he-made of-the-confessors
linguas abscidit, qui, linguis abscissis, perfecte usque ad
the-tongues cut-off who with-tongues cut-off perfectly all-the-way to
finem locuti sunt.
the-end spoken have
Tunc Lætus, Neptensis civitatis episcopus, gloriose martyrio
then Laetus of-the-Neptensian city bishop gloriously with-martyrdom
coronatur. Qui dum Ariani contagii labe variis pœnis
is-crowned who while of-the-Arian of-contagion by-the-stain with-various penalties

maculari non potuit, victor repente cœlos obtinuit. Ugnericus
to-be-defiled not could victor suddenly the-heavens obtained Huneric
autem inter innumerabiles suarum impietatum strages, quas
moreover amid innumerable of-his impieties slaughters which
in Catholicos exercuerat, octavo regni anno, ut Arius pater
against the-Catholics he-had-exercised in-the-eighth of-reign year as Arius father
ejus, interioribus cunctis effusis, miserabiliter vitam finivit.
his his-inward-parts all poured-out wretchedly life ended
Æra dxiv, Ugnerico succedit Guntamundus, regnans
Era five-hundred-fourteen to-Huneric succeeds Gunthamund reigning
ann. xii, qui statim Ecclesiæ pacem reformans, Catholicos
years twelve who at-once for-the-Church peace restoring the-Catholics
ab exsilio revocavit.
from exile recalled
Æra dxxvi, Guntamundo mortuo, Trasemundus
Era five-hundred-twenty-six Gunthamund having-died Thrasamund
regnat ann. xxvii, mens. iv. Iste, Ariana insania plenus,
reigns years twenty-seven months four he with-Arian madness full
Catholicos insectatur, ecclesias claudit, Sardiniam exsilio
the-Catholics pursues the-churches closes to-Sardinia into-exile
ex omni Africana Ecclesia cxx episcopos mittit,
from all the-African Church one-hundred-twenty bishops sends
Carthagine moritur. Cujus tempore Fulgentius, Ruspensis
at-Carthage dies whose in-the-time Fulgentius of-Ruspe
episcopus, in nostro dogmate claruit.
bishop in our dogma shone
Æra dliii, post Trasemundum Ildericus, Ugnerici
Era five-hundred-fifty-three after Thrasamund Hilderic of-Huneric
filius, ex Valentiniani imperatoris filia natus, regnat
son from of-Valentinian of-the-emperor the-daughter born reigns
ann. vii, mens. iii. Iste, sacramento a decessore suo
years seven months three he by-an-oath from predecessor his

Trasemundo obstrictus, ne Catholicis in regno suo aut
Thrasamund bound lest for-the-Catholics in kingdom his either
ecclesias aperiret, aut privilegia restauraret, priusquam
churches he-should-open or privileges restore before
regnaret, ne religionem sacramenti violaret, præcepit et
he-reigned lest the-religion of-the-oath he-should-violate ordered both
sacerdotes catholicos ab exsilio reduci, et ecclesias
priests catholic from exile to-be-brought-back and churches
aperiri, quem Gilimer, assumpta tyrannide, regno
to-be-opened whom Gelimer taken-up tyranny from-the-kingdom
privat, et cum filiis carceris custodiæ mancipat.
deprives and with his-sons of-prison to-the-custody delivers
Æra dlx, Gilimer regnum cum tyrannide sumpsit,
Era five-hundred-sixty Gelimer the-kingdom with tyranny took
multos nobilium Africæ provinciæ crudeliter exstinguens,
many of-the-nobles of-the-African province cruelly destroying
multorumque substantias tollens, adversus quem Justinianus
and-of-many the-substances taking-away against whom Justinian
imperator, visitatione Læti episcopi, qui ab Ugnerico
the-emperor by-the-visitation of-Laetus the-bishop who by Huneric
Vandalorum rege martyr fuerat factus, exercitum cum
of-the-Vandals king martyr had-been made an-army with
Belisario magistro militum duce mittit. Initoque idem
Belisarius master of-the-soldiers as-leader sends and-entered the-same
Belisarius prælio Guntemirum et Gebamundum regis
Belisarius battle Gunthimer and Gebamund of-the-king
fratres primo prælio superatos interficit, deinde ipsum
brothers in-the-first battle overcome kills then himself
Gilimirum in fugam versum. Africam capit nonagesimo
Gelimer into flight turned Africa takes in-the-ninetieth
septimo Vandalorum ingressionis anno.
seventh of-the-Vandals entry year

In ipso autem Belisarii occursu priusquam congressio fieret,
at very moreover of-Belisarius the-approach before the-encounter took-place
Gilimer tyrannus Ildericum regem cum quibusdam generis
Gelimer the-tyrant Hilderic the-king with certain of-race
ejus affinibus occidit. Belisarius autem Gilimirum tyrannum
his kinsmen killed Belisarius moreover Gelimer the-tyrant
capit, eumque cum divitiis ex rapinis provinciarum et
captures and-him with the-riches from plunders of-the-provinces and
Africæ conquisitis Constantinopolim Justiniano imperatori
of-Africa acquired to-Constantinople to-Justinian the-emperor
adducit. Sicque regnum Vandalorum cum populo atque stirpe
brings and-so the-kingdom of-the-Vandals with people and stock
deletur æra dlxiv, quod permansit cxiii
is-destroyed in-the-Era five-hundred-sixty-four which lasted one-hundred-thirteen
ann., a Gunderico rege usque ad Gilimiri interitum.
years from Gunderic the-king all-the-way to of-Gelimer the-death

Historia Suevorum

THE SUEVI

The Suevi hold Gallicia under Hermeric and Rechila. The catholic Rechiar is killed by Theodoric II, and rival kings follow. Under Remismund they become Arians, but Theodemir, with Martin of Dumio, returns them to the faith. Leovigild deposes the usurper Andeca, and the Suevic kingdom passes to the Goths after 177 years.

Æra cdxlvii, Suevi, principe Hermerico, cum Alanis
Era four-hundred-forty-seven the-Suevi with-prince Hermeric with the-Alans
et Vandalis simul Hispanias ingressi sunt, atque omnem
and Vandals together the-Spains entered have and all
Gallæciam cum Vandalis occupant. Vandalis autem Africam
Gallicia with the-Vandals occupy the-Vandals moreover to-Africa

transeuntibus, Gallæciam soli Suevi sortiti sunt, quibus
crossing Gallicia alone the-Suevi obtained-by-lot have over-whom
præfuit in Hispaniis Hermericus annis xxxii. Gallæci autem
ruled in the-Spains Hermeric years thirty-two the-Gallicians moreover
in parte provinciæ regno suo utebantur. Quos Hermericus
in part of-the-province kingdom their used whom Hermeric
assidua vastatione deprædans, tandem morbo oppressus, pacem
with-constant devastation plundering at-last by-disease oppressed peace
cum eis fecit, Recchilanem filium suum in regnum substituit,
with them made Rechila son his into the-kingdom substituted
qui cum magna parte exercitus missus, Andevotum Romanæ
who with great part of-the-army sent Andevotus of-Roman
militiæ ducem cum multis copiis ad Singilium Bæticæ
soldiery the-general with many forces at the-Singilis of-the-Baetic
provinciæ fluvium, inito bello, prostravit, magnis ejus auri
province river entered battle laid-low great his of-gold
argentique copiis occupatis. Inde Emeritam obsessam ingreditur,
and-of-silver stores seized thence Merida besieged enters
atque obtentam propria regno associat. Hermericus autem
and obtained to-his-own kingdom joins Hermeric moreover
pater ejus, per annos vii diuturno languore affectus, interiit.
father his through years seven by-long languor afflicted perished
Æra cdlxxix, Hermerico defuncto, Recchila, filius
Era four-hundred-seventy-nine Hermeric having-died Rechila son
ejus, regnat ann. viii, qui post obitum patris, Hispali
his reigns years eight who after the-death of-his-father Seville
obtenta, Bæticam et Carthaginiensem provincias in suam
obtained Baetica and the-Carthaginian provinces into his
potestatem reducit, atque inde Emeritæ, sub cultu, ut
power brings and thence at-Merida under the-worship as
ferunt, gentilitatis vitam finivit.
they-say of-paganism life ended

Æra cdxxcvi, Recchiarius, Recchilanis filius, catholicus
Era four-hundred-eighty-six Rechiar of-Rechila son catholic
factus, succedit in regnum annis ix, accepta in conjugium
made succeeds into the-kingdom for-years nine received into marriage
Theuderedi regis Gothorum filia. Initio regni
of-Theodoric king of-the-Goths the-daughter at-the-beginning of-the-reign
auspicatus Vasconias deprædatur; mox ad Theuderedum
having-taken-the-auspices the-Vasconias plunders soon to Theodoric
socerum suum profectus, Cæsaraugustanam regionem remeans,
father-in-law his having-set-out the-Caesaraugustan region returning
Gothis auxiliantibus, vastat. Tarraconensem provinciam,
the-Goths helping lays-waste the-Tarraconensian province
quæ Romano imperio deserviebat, invadit. Carthaginienses
which to-the-Roman empire was-subject invades the-Carthaginian
regiones, quas Recchila pater ejus Romanis reddiderat,
regions which Rechila father his to-the-Romans had-returned
in prædam mittit. Ad ultimum, dum Theudericus rex
into plunder sends at the-last while Theodoric king
Gothorum in Hispaniam ingrederetur, inito prælio adversus
of-the-Goths into Spain entered entered battle against
eum, primo fugatur, deinde captus occiditur.
him first is-put-to-flight then captured is-killed
Æra cdxcv, exstincto Recchiario, Suevi, qui
Era four-hundred-ninety-five destroyed Rechiar the-Suevi who
remanserant in extrema parte Gallæciæ, Maldram Massilæ
had-remained in the-farthest part of-Gallicia Maldras of-Massila
filium regem sibi constituunt. Mox bifariam divisi, pars
son as-king for-themselves appoint soon in-two divided part
Frantanem, pars Maldram regem appellant. Nec mora. Frantane
Frantane part Maldras king they-call nor delay Frantane
mortuo, Suevi, qui cum eo erant, Recchimundum sequuntur,
having-died the-Suevi who with him were Remismund follow

et, cum Maldra pace inita, pariter partes Lusitaniæ deprædantur.
and with Maldras peace entered together the-parts of-Lusitania plunder
Maldra autem tertio regni anno a suis jugulatur.
Maldras moreover in-the-third of-reign year by his-men has-his-throat-cut
Æra cdxciix. Maldra interfecto, inter Frumarium et
Era four-hundred-ninety-eight Maldras killed between Frumarius and
Remismundum oritur de regni potestate dissensio; sed
Remismund arises about of-the-kingdom the-power dissension but
Frumarius cum manu Suevorum, quam habebat, Flaviensis
Frumarius with the-band of-the-Suevi which he-had of-the-Flavian
urbis conventum gravi evertit excidio. Remismundus
city the-district with-grievous overturns destruction Remismund
autem vicina sibi pariter Auregensium et Lucensis
moreover neighboring to-himself together of-the-Auregenses and of-the-Lucensian
conventus maritima populatur.
district the-maritime-parts ravages
Æra dii, Frumario mortuo, Remismundus, omnibus
Era five-hundred-two Frumarius having-died Remismund all
Suevis in suam ditionem regali jure revocatis, pacem cum
the-Suevi into his dominion by-royal right recalled peace with
Gallæcis reformat, legatos fœderis ad Theudericum regem
the-Gallicians restores envoys of-a-treaty to Theodoric king
Gothorum mittit, a quo etiam per legatos, et arma, et
of-the-Goths sends from whom also through envoys both arms and
conjugem, quam haberet, accepit. Inde ad Lusitaniam transit.
a-wife whom he-might-have received thence to Lusitania crosses
Conimbriam pace deceptam diripit. Olyssipona quoque ab
Conimbriga by-peace deceived plunders Lisbon also by
eo occupatur, cive suo, qui illi præerat, tradente Lusidio.
him is-occupied citizen its who over-it was-set handing-it-over Lusidius
Hujus tempore Ajax, natione Galata, effectus apostata
his in-the-time Ajax by-nation a-Galatian made an-apostate

Arianus, inter Suevos, regis sui auxilio, hostis catholicæ
Arian among the-Suevi of-king their with-the-help an-enemy of-the-catholic
fidei et divinæ Trinitatis emergit, de Gallicana Gothorum
faith and of-the-divine Trinity emerges from the-Gallic of-the-Goths
regione hoc pestiferum virus afferens, et totam gentem
region this pestilential poison bringing and the-whole nation
Suevorum lethalis perfidiæ tabe inficiens. Multis deinde
of-the-Suevi of-deadly of-perfidy by-the-corruption infecting many then
Suevorum regibus in Ariana hæresi permanentibus, tandem
of-the-Suevi kings in the-Arian heresy remaining at-last
regni potestatem Theudemirus suscepit.
of-the-kingdom the-power Theodemir took-up
Qui confestim, Arianæ impietatis errore destructo, Suevos
who at-once of-Arian impiety the-error destroyed the-Suevi
catholicæ fidei reddidit, innitente Martino, monasterii
to-the-catholic faith restored supporting-him Martin of-the-monastery
Dumiensis episcopo, fide et scientia claro, cujus studio et
Dumian bishop in-faith and in-knowledge famous whose by-zeal both
pax Ecclesiæ ampliata est, et multa in Ecclesiasticis
the-peace of-the-Church enlarged was and many-things in ecclesiastical
disciplinis Gallæciæ regionibus instituta. Post Theudemirum
disciplines of-Gallicia in-regions established after Theodemir
Miro Suevorum princeps efficitur, regnans ann. xiii. Hic
Miro of-the-Suevi prince is-made reigning years thirteen he
bellum secundo regni contra Ruccones intulit. Deinde
war in-the-second of-reign against the-Ruccones brought then
in auxilium Leovigildo Gothorum regi adversus rebellem
in help to-Leovigild of-the-Goths king against the-rebellious
filium expugnandum Hispalim pergit, ibique terminum vitæ
son to-be-stormed to-Seville goes and-there the-end of-life
clausit Huic Heboricus filius in regnum succedit, quem
closed to-him Eboric his-son into the-kingdom succeeds whom

adolescentem Andeca, sumpta tyrannide, regno privat, et
a-youth Andeca taken-up tyranny of-the-kingdom deprives and
monachum factum in monasterio damnat, pro quo non diu
a-monk made in a-monastery condemns for which not long
est dilata sententia. Nam Leovigildus, Gothorum rex, Suevis
was deferred the-sentence for Leovigild of-the-Goths king on-the-Suevi
mox bellum inferens, obtento eodem regno, Andecanem
soon war bringing obtained the-same kingdom Andeca
dejecit, atque detonsum, post regni honorem, presbyterii
cast-down and shorn after of-the-kingdom the-honor of-the-presbyter
officio mancipavit. Sic enim oportuit ut quod ipse regi
to-the-office delivered so for it-was-fitting that what he-himself to-king
suo fecerat, rursus idem congrua vicissitudine pateretur.
his had-done again the-same by-fitting requital he-should-suffer
Regnum autem Suevorum deletum in Gothos transfertur,
the-kingdom moreover of-the-Suevi destroyed to the-Goths is-transferred
quod mansisse clxxvii annis scribitur.
which to-have-remained one-hundred-seventy-seven years is-written

---